

GRAMMATICA LATINA  
IN  
USUM SCHOLARUM  
ADORNATA.

*Grammatices Lillana* verbis ( quantum  
fieri licuit) retentis; multis ejus erroribus  
emendatis; minus-necessariis amputa-  
tis; pluribus, quæ deficerent, suppletis; &  
omnibus Methodo faciliiori ad renel-  
le ætatis aptum conformata dispositis.

Opera & Studio CAROLI HOOLE A. M.  
è C. L. Oxon. Scholarchæ olim Rotherba-  
miensis in agro Ebor.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit)  
in juventutis gratiam, in adversâ paginâ, Angli-  
cana interpretatio.

---

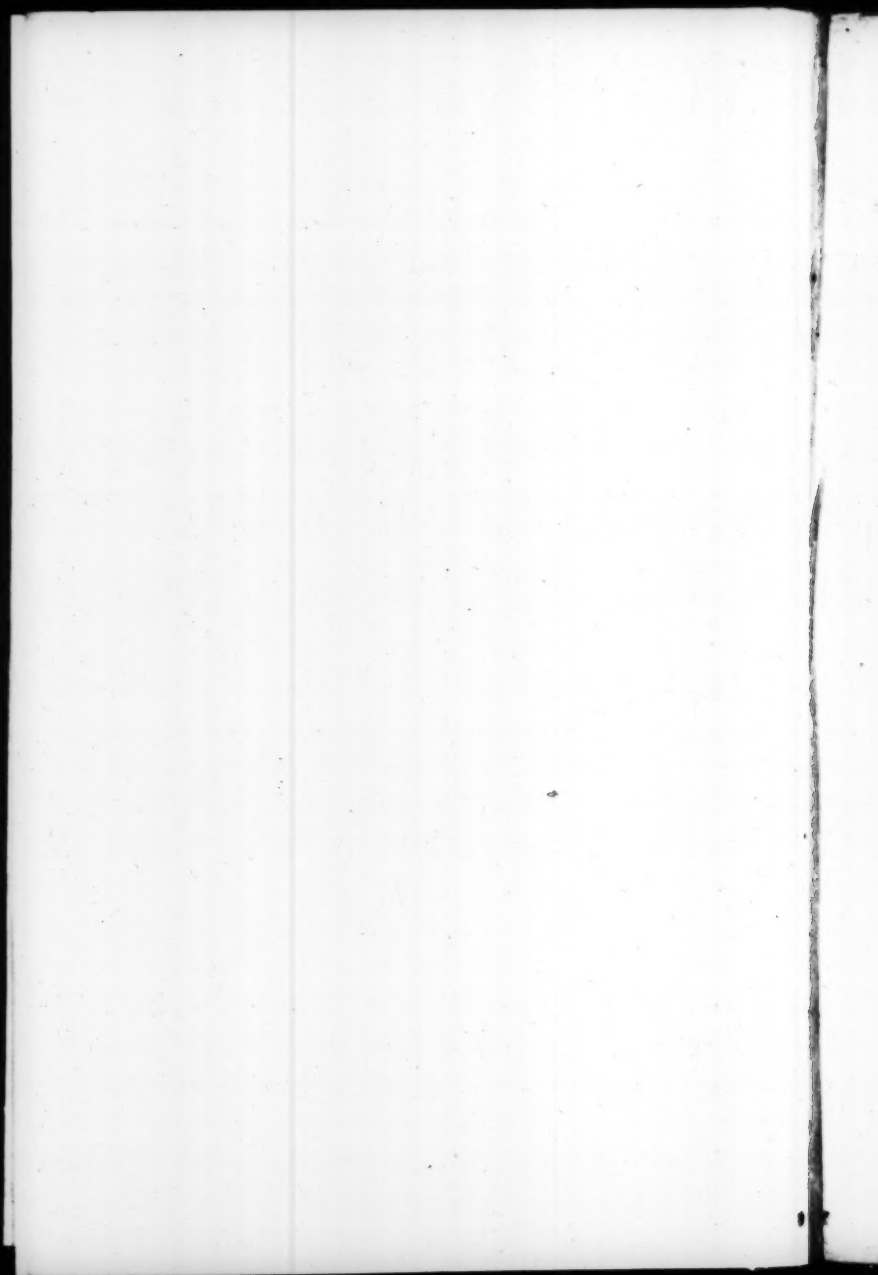
*Editio quarta prioribus emendatior.*

---

FRANC. PATRI.  
*Grammatica est omnium-Disciplinarum Fundamentum.*

---

LONDINI,  
Excudebat R. I. pro F. Smith, ad Castellum &  
Elephantum extra Temple-Bar. 1665





v. Loughams 2<sup>nd</sup> Tale

Not in the Bodleian Catalogue 1843.

115  
11



—



Imprimatur,

*Joh. Hall: R. P. D.  
Episc. Lon. a sac. Do-  
mest. Feb. 26. 1663.*




A

Dr. *Saunderson*  
(late Bishop of Lincoln)

HIS

Approbation of this  
**GRAMMAR.**

I Have perused this present *Work*, which  
the Author, to his great Commenda-  
tion, hath contrived with so much care  
and judgement, that I cannot but very wel  
approve of it, as being the *shortest, orderliest,*  
and *plainest*, for the ease both of Master  
and Scholar, and with the least variation  
from the **COMMON GRAMMAR**, of  
any Book that I have seen published in  
*this kind.*

 **ROBERT SANDERSON.**

*Ita testor* **Edvardus Silvester.**

Adjectiva in inus à rebus animatis sensitivis deducuntur; item, Nomina Cognationum, item, Propriam Gentilia penultimam producant: ut, Caro asinina; Pinguedo anatina; Stercus equinum; Syrupus Byzantinus; Sena Alexandrina; Mons Calabrinus, &c.

Adjectiva in inus à Rebus non-animatis, (viz. plantis, lapidibus, aliisque materialibus; (qualia sunt permulta à Græcis vocibus formata:)) item adjectiva ab Adverbis temporalibus, aut Substantivis quatuor Anni tempora notantibus, derivata, penultimam corripunt: ut, Acacinus, amaracinus, cedrinus, cypressinus, aginus, glaucinus, adamantinus, amathustinus, yacinthinus, diutinus, crassinus, pristinus, pindinus, hornotinus, rotinus, carinus, thirinus, oporinus, chimerinus, &c. Matutinus autem & vespertinus, quia à nominibus Matutinus & Vespere flectuntur, penultimam habent longam.

*Lily (W.) R* THE  
LATINE GRAMMAR  
FITTED FOR  
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

WHEREIN

The Words of *Lilie's* GRAMMAR are (as much as might be) retained; many errors thereof amended; many needless things left out: many necessities that were wanting, supplied; and all things ordered in a Method more agreeable to Childrens capacitie.

By *Charles Hoole*, Mr. of Arts of Lincoln-Colledge in *Oxford*, sometimes School-master of *Rotherham* in *York-shire*.

And (that nothing might be wanting to the purpose) The English Translation is set down on the contrarie page for the benefit of Young-learners.

---

The fourth Edition more exact, Corrected than the former Impressions.

---

FRANC. PATRI.

*Grammar is the Foundation of all Disciplines.*

---

LONDON,

Printed by *R. f.* for *F. Smith* at the *Castle and Elephant* without *Temple-Barre*.  
1665.



GRAMMATICA LATINA  
IN  
USUM SCHOLARUM  
ADORNATA.

*Grammatices Lillana* verbis ( quantum  
fieri licuit) retentis; multis ejus erroribus  
emendatis; minus-necessariis amputa-  
tis; pluribus, quæ deficerent, suppletis; &  
omnibus Methodo faciliiori ad tene-  
læ ætatis caput conformata dispositis.

Opera & Studio CAROLI HOOLE A. M.  
è C. L. Oxon. Scholarchæ olim Rotherba-  
miensis in agro Ebor.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit)  
in juventutis gratiam, in adversâ paginâ, Angli-  
cana interpretatio.

---

*Editio quarta prioribus emendatior.*

---

FRANC. PATRI.  
*Grammatica est omnium Disciplinarum Fundamentum.*

---

LONDINI,  
Excudebat R. I. pro F. Smith, ad Castellum &  
Elephantum extra Temple-Bar. 1665



## To the Lovers and Professors of GRAMMAR-LEARNING:

Especially, the School-Masters of his acquaintance, either in  
City or Country.

Gentlemen,

**I** Have lately published some Helps towards  
grounding little ones in the Latine-tongue:  
and finding them (by my own and others pra-  
ctice) to become successful; I more willingly go  
on to prosecute my begun design: viz. to con-  
trive (at vacant times) such necessary Subfidi-  
aries for every Classis in a Grammar-School,  
as may much facilitate the good (though  
with some tedious) old way of teaching by  
Grammar, Authors, and Exercises.

And because our greatest cumber hitherto  
hath been Grammar, I have first begun with  
it, and endeavoured to bring the Rules of that  
Art to the reach of Childrens apprehensions;  
that in daily reading, writing, and speaking  
Latine, they may clearly see, and at once un-  
derstand the Reason of what they do.

What I have done herein I most humbly  
submit to your candid judgements, and if, in  
your Opinions, I but seem to effect any thing,  
that may make our School-labour less trou-  
blesome, I have what I desire, and therefore  
rest,

Your truly devoted Friend,  
and humble servant,

CHARLS HOOLE.

**W**Hereas it hath been generally desired, that a readier way might be devised for the bringing on of children with more speed and delight, to the attainment of the *Latine tongue*, than that of the *Common-Grammar*: Whereupon sundry learned men, & those well exercised in the Art of Teaching, have bestowed much pains to remedy such defects, and remove such inconveniences as they had observed in the foresaid *Grammar*. And whereas Mr. *Tho. Hayne*, late *School-master* of *Christ-Church-Hospital*, London, and Mr. *Simon Humphreys*, now *School-master* of *Stamford*, have for divers years past, well-experienced, and under their hands attested, the Abilities of this Author, Mr. *Charls Hool*, *Mr. of Arts* of *Linc. Col. in Oxon.* for a *Work* of this Nature; whereby he was encouraged to frame a *Latine Grammar*, which might bee more fit for the *Publique* use. VVee whose names are under written, having diligently perused this *Grammar*, do conceive the same to be very conducing to the end and purpose for which it was designed and intended. It being a *Work* which (in our opinion) hath marvellously wel accommodated the *Precepts* of *Grammar*, to the capacity of the weakest Learner.

John Edwards, Dr in Phys. Profes.

28 MR 5. Nat. Philos. Oxon. Late Mr.  
of Merch-Sch London.

Edvardus Silvester, School-master in Oxon

M. FAB.



**H**EC Professio—plus habet in recessa quam in fronte promittit. —Quò minus sunt ferendi, qui hanc *Artem* ut tenuem ac jesuam cavillantur : quæ nisi Oratori futuro fundamenta fideliter jecerit, quicquid superstruxeris, corruet : & quæ vel sola omnium studiorum genere plus habet operis, quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa; non quia magna sit opera, consonantes à vocalibus discernere, ipsasque eas in semivocalium numerum, mutarumque parti-ri : sed quia interiora velut sacri hujus aduentibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modò acutere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem, ac scientiam possit.

CICERO de Oratore lib. 3.

**P**Recepta latinè loquendi puerilis doctrina tradit, & subtilior cognitio, ac ratio literarum aliorum; aut consuetudo sermonis quotidiani ac domesticæ libri confirmant, & lectio veterum Oratorum & Poëtarum.

Desid. ERASMUS Roterodamus.

**P**ROCLIVINUS est vel in triplici jure Doctoris nomen, quam semel boni Grammatici titulum promeruisse.

GRAM-

# THE LATINE GRAMMAR.

## Of Grammar, and its Parts.

The Latine  
Grammar  
contains  
Rules of  
right speak-  
ing Latine.  
It hath four  
Parts.

**G**rammar is the Art of Writing and Speak-  
ing aright.

*With the Latines in Latine.*

There bee four	1	Orthographie.	Lib. I.
Parts of Gram-	2	Etymologie.	Lib. II.
mar.	3	Syntaxis.	Lib. III.
	4	Prosodia.	Lib. IV.

Grammar hath its name from *letters*, which the  
Greeks call *Grammata*, and implies as much as *litera-  
ture*; as if you should call it the *Letter-Art*, or *Skill in  
letters*: for this Art begins with *letters*, of which *sylla-  
bles* are made; and of syllables, *words*; and of words,  
a *speech*; which is either *Prose* or *Verse*.

*Orthographie* is spent about *Letters*; *Prosodia* about  
*Syllables*; *Etymologie* about *Words*; and *Syntaxis* a-  
bout a *Speech*. The natural order therefore requires,  
that *Prosodia* should be ranked in the second place;  
But we, following the method of the Common-Gra-  
mar (because indeed the quantity of *Syllables*, cannot  
so well be perceived before *Words* be understood) )  
thought good to set *Prosodia* in the last place.

### Book I. ~~Lib. I.~~ Of Orthographie.

*Orthogra-  
phie*, which

**O**rtographie is the first part of Grammar, which  
teacheth with what letters any word is to bee  
spelled; as, *lectio* not *lexio*.

teacheth.

Orthographie	Of Letters.	Chap. 1.
teacheth	Of Syllables.	Chap. 2.
	Of Right utterance.	Chap. 3.
	Of Points of Sentences.	Chap. 4.

# GRAMMATICA LATINA.

## De Grammaticâ, & ejus partibus.

**G**rammatica est rectè Scribendi atque Lo-  
quendi Ars.  
*Latinis Latinè.*

Grammatica  
Latina rectè  
loquendi Ar-  
tis præcep-  
ta continet.  
Ejus quatuor  
sunt partes.

Grammaticæ qua-  
tuor sunt partes.

1 Orthographia.	Lib. I.
2 Etymologia.	Lib. II.
3 Syntaxis.	Lib. III.
4 Prosodia.	Lib. IV.

Nomen *Grammatica* imposuimus est à *literis*, quas *Grammata* Græci vocant, sonantque idem quod *litera-  
tura*, quasi *Artem Literariam* dicas: *litera* enim sunt  
prima hujus Artis initia, ex quibus fiunt *syllabæ*; ex  
*syllabis*, *diſtiones*; & è diſtionibus, *oratio*; quæ soluta  
vel ligata est.

*Orthographia* versatur in *Literis*, *Prosodia* in *Syl-  
labis*, *Etymologia* in diſtionibus, & *Syntaxis* in Ora-  
tione. Ordo igitur naturalis postulat, ut *Prosodia* in  
secundo loco collocetur. Nobis autem methodum  
Vulgaris Grammatices observantibus (quippe, *Sylla-  
barum* quantitas ante *Vocum* intelligentiam non tam  
facilè percipi queat) ultimum *Prosodia* locum affig-  
nare, visum est.

### Lib. I. De Orthographia.

**O**ρθογραφία est prima pars Grammatices, quâ  
docemur quibus quæque dictio sit formanda li-  
teris, ut *lectio* non *lexio*.

*Orthographia*  
autem agit

De Literis.	Cap. 1.
De Syllabis.	Cap. 2. agit
De Orthoëpia.	Cap. 3.
De Sententiarum punctionis.	Cap. 4.
	Cap.



# The Latine Grammar.

## Chap. 1. Of Letters.

Of Letters

which are

**A** Letter is the least part of a word.  
There be 23 Latine Letters, A B C D E F  
G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U X Y Z.

Which are all contained in this verse.

*Gaza frequens Lybicos duxit Karthago triumphos.*

Three things } 1 The *Name*, whereby it is called.  
belong to c- } 2 The *Figure* or Character whereby  
very Letter. } it is known, or noted.  
3 The *Force*, or power, whereby it  
is pronounced or uttered.

Letters are distinguished, } *Vowels*,  
according to their } and  
sound into } *Consonants*.

Vowels

A *Vowel* is a letter which soundeth by it self, and  
they be five, *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y* the Greek one: of  
which, being diversely placed, are made as many Diph-  
thongs, *a, au, ei, eu, æ*, and *y*, as *Harpyia*.

and

A *Consonant* is a letter which soundeth not, except  
it be joyned with a vowel, as *B, C, D, &c.* Likewise  
*J* and *V* become consonants, when they are set be-  
fore themselves; or other vowels in the same syllable,  
as *Juno, Jovis, Voluntas, Vulcanus*.

Consonants

Of Con-  
sonants  
some are

1 *Mutes*, which have no sound of them-  
selves, and they are nine, *b, c, d, f, g, h, p,*  
*q, t*, in which the sound of the vowel fol-  
lows after.

For *f* answereth to *phi* the Greek letter,  
and *q* to make it sound takes *u* to it.

2 *Semivowels*, which have some sound of  
themselves, and they are seven, *l, m, n, r, s,*  
*x, z*, in which the sound of the vowel go-  
eth before.

Semi-



# Grammatica Latina.

## Cap. I. De Literis.

**L**itera est minima pars Dictionis.  
Literæ Latinæ sunt Viginti tres, A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U X Y Z. I De Literis

Quæ omnes in hoc versiculo continentur.  
*Gaza frequens Lybicos duxit Karthago triumphos.*

Tria accidunt { 1 Nomen, quo appellatur.  
unicuique  
literæ  
2 Figura, quâ notatur.  
3 Potestas, quâ pronuntiatur.

Distinguuntur Litæ { Vocales,  
&  
Consonantes. quæ sunt  
ræ secundum sonum in

*Vocalis* est litera quæ per se sonat; & sunt quinque, *a, e, i, o, u,* & *y* Græca: ex quibus variè dispositis totidem sunt Diphthongi, *a, au, ei, eu, æ,* & *y;* ut, *Harpyia.* Vocales

*Consonans* est litera, quæ non, nisi cum vocali juncta, sonatur, B, C, D, &c. I etiam & V. consonantes sunt, cum vel sibi, vel aliis vocalibus in eadem syllabâ præponuntur; ut, *Juno, Jovis, Voluntas, Voluntas.*

{ 1 *Mutæ,* quæ sonum nullum à seipsis habent; & sunt novem, *b, c, d, f, g, h, p, q, t,* in quibus sonus vocalis sequitur.

Consonantium aliz { Nam *f* responder *ph* Græcorum, & *q* ut sonet semper sibi adsciscit *u.* Consonantes  
sunt

{ 2 *Semivocales,* quæ aliquid soni à seipsis habent; & sunt septem, *s, m, n, y, x, z,* in quibus sonus vocalis præcedit.

Semi-

## The Latine Grammar.

Semi-vowels are some of them } Liquids, which do melt, or lose their force after a Mute in the same Syllable; as, *l, m, n, r*.  
 } Double Consonants, which have the force of two letters, as, *x, z*, and *j* between two vowels in single words. For in the word *jejunium*, the first *j* seems to be a single consonant, the second a double consonant, and the third a vowel.

*S* is neither a Liquid nor a Mute, but a letter of its own power or pronunciation; which some therefore call *Monadicon*, or a letter, of whose sort there is but that one.

*H* is not properly a letter, but a note of aspiration; as in *pulcher, homo, biator*, which before is in Hebrew words is seldome pronounced, for we say *Hjeremias, Hjerosolyma*, as though they begun with *j* consonant; but Greek words are pronounced as if they begun with *h* vowels, as, *Hierarchia*.

Great

and

Small

Letters according to their shape are } *Great* } which are *A, B, C*.  
 } or } written with  
 } *Small* } *Small Characters*, as *a, b, c*.

- Great letters are written in the beginning of
- 1 Sentences; as, *Deum time, Fear God. Regem honora, Honour the King.*
  - 2 Proper names; as, *Carolus Charles, Londinum London, Thamisis the Thames.*
  - 3 The more eminent words in a sentence; as, *Religionis Christianae fundamentum est Fides.*  
Faith is the Foundation of Christian Religion.
  - 4 Every verse in a Poem; as,  
*attendum est aetate; cito pede praeiterit aetas,  
 Nec bona tam saepe, quam haec prima fuit,  
 Improve the time; time passeth quickly on,  
 No good so good succeeds, as that that's gone.*

Small

**Liquide**, quæ post Muram in eadem Syl-  
laba liqueſcunt, ſive vim ſuam amittunt;  
ut, *l, m, n, r*.  
**Semi-**  
**voca-**  
**lium** } **Duplices**, quæ duarum literarum vim ha-  
aliz ſunt } bent; ut, *x, z, & j* inter duas vocales in  
vocibus ſimplicibus. Nam in *jejunium*,  
primam *j* videtur eſſe conſona ſimplex,  
ſecundum duplex, & tertiam vocale.

**S** nec Liquida eſt, nec Mura, ſed ſux poteſtatis,  
( ſive pronunciationis ) **litera**; quam id circo non-  
nulli *Monadicon* appellarunt.

**H** propriè quidem non eſt litera, ſed aspirationis  
nota; ut, *puſcher, homo, hiatus*; ſed ante *ie* in Hebraï-  
cis diſtinctionibus raro pronunciantur; dicere enim ſole-  
mus *Hjeremias, Hjerofolyma*, quaſi ab *j* conſona in-  
ciperent; ſed Græcæ voces pronunciantur tanquam in-  
ciperent ab *I* vocali, ut *Hierarchia*.

**Litteræ** quo- } **Majuscula**, quæ Majusculis chara-  
ad formam ſu- } teribus ſcribuntur, ut, *A, B, C*.  
am ſupr; } **Minuscula**, quæ minusculis chara-  
 } teribus ſcribuntur, ut, *a, b, c*.

Majusculis inchoantur

- 1 Sententiæ; ut, *Deum time. Regem honoræ.*
- 2 Propria nomina; ut, *Carolus, Londinium, Thami-  
ſi.*
- 3 Diſtiones quælibet in oratione notatu digniores;  
ut,  
*Religionis Chriſtiane fundamentum eſt Fides.*
- 4 In Carminibus verſus ſinguli; ut,  
*utendum eſt ætate; cito pedè præterit ætas;  
Nec bona tam ſequitur, quàm bona prima ſuit.*

Small letters are commonly written in all other places, whereof those are chiefly to be minded which have a double character as *i* and *s*; for *i* and *u* be vowels, but *j* and *v* be consonants, which some call *ja* and *va*. Likewise long *s* is alwaies written in the beginning or middle of a word, but short *s* in the end of it, as *scripsimus*.

which stand  
for

A word,

or

A Number,

When  
great  
letters  
be set  
alone,  
or but  
a few  
together,  
they  
do signify  
or  
stand  
sometimes  
for

whole words; as, *M.T.C.* Mark Tully Cicero.  
*S.P.D.* Salutem plurimam dicit, sendeth  
much greeting. *A.M.* Anno mundi. In  
the year of the world. *A.D.* Anno Domini,  
In the year of our Lord. *R.P.* Res-  
publica, the Common-wealth. *P.C.* Pa-  
tres Conscripti, the Senators. *HS* or *LLS*,  
*Dua libra & semis*, two pound and a half  
(the note of a Silver coin worth 1 d. ob.  
4 q.) *N.B.* nota bene, mark well.

A number; as, *I* one, *V* five, *X* ten, *L* fifty,  
*C* an hundred, or *CC* two hundred, *lxx*  
or *D* five hundred, or *Cli* or *M* a thou-  
sand, *lxxx* five thousand, *CClxxx* ten thou-  
sand, *lxxxli* fifty thousand, *CCClxxx*  
an hundred thousand, *lxxxlii* five hun-  
dred thousand, *CCClxxxli* ten  
hundred thousand or a Million.

The lesser number set before takes away so much as  
it self is from the greater; but being set after it, adds  
so much to it; as, *IV* makes four, but *VI* six, *IX* nine,  
but *XI* eleven.

A cross line made over a numeral letter implieth  
it to signifie so many thousands, as otherwise it would  
contain lesser sums; as, *III* three thousand, *X* ten thou-  
sand, and so of the rest.

## Chap. 2. Of Syllables.

2 Of Sylla-  
bles.

**A** Syllable, is a taking letters together, and utte-  
ring them with one breath; as, *vir-tus*.

And

In reliquis locis maximâ ex parte Minusculæ scri-  
buntur, & quibus istæ sunt præcipuè notandæ, quæ du-  
plicem obtinent characterem, ut *i* & *u*; nam *i* & *u*  
vocales sunt; *j* verò & *v* sunt consonæ, quas aliqui *ja*  
& *va* nominarunt, s longum semper in principio, vel  
medio dictionis pingitur, sed *s* breve in fine; ut *scripsi-*  
*mus*.

Integra vocabula; ut, *M. T. C. Marcus*  
*Tullius Cicero. S. P. D. Salutem plu-*  
*rimam dicit. A. M. Anno mundi. A.*  
*D. Anno Domini. R. P. Respublica;*  
*P. C. Patres Conscripti. HS. aut*  
*LLS. Duæ librae & semis* (nota  
*nummi sesteritii valentis asses du-*  
*os cum semisse) N. B. Nota bene.*

Quæ signifi-  
cant Voca-  
bulum.

aut

Litteræ majus-  
culæ cum so-  
læ aut pauce  
scribuntur,  
significanc  
aliquando.

Numerum; ut, *I* unum, *V* quinque, *X*  
*decem; L* quinquaginta, *C* centum,  
*CC* vel *CC* ducenti, *LX* vel *D* quin-  
*genti, M* vel *CI* vel *M* mille;  
*I* *CCCC* quinque millia, *CC* *CCCC* de-  
*cem millia, I* *CCCC* quinquaginta  
millia, *CCC* *CCCC* centena mil-  
lia, *I* *CCCC* quingenta millia,  
*CCCC* *CCCC* decies centena  
millia.

Numerum.

Minor numerus præpositus, tantundem demit ma-  
jori sequenti; postpositus verò tantundem addit;  
ut, *IV* valet quatuor, *VI* verò sex, *IX* valet novem, ac  
*XI* undecim.

Linea transversa notis numericis superposita, eas-  
dem tot millia continere innuit, quor al- qui minores  
numeros continerent, ut *III* tria millia, *X* decem mil-  
lia, & sic de cæteris.

## Chap. 2. De syllabis.

**S**yllaba est comprehensio literarum uno spiritu  
prolata; ut, *vir-tus*.

2. De Syl-  
labis.

Estque

# The Latine Grammar.

and

And it is { *Improper*, which consisteth of one only vowel or diphthong; as, *A-a-cus*.  
*Proper*, which consisteth of one or more consonants taken together with a vowel or diphthong; as, *Cæ-le-stis*.

Of parting  
and putting  
them toge-  
ther.

Hee that would write rightly, must learn as hee writes, *to part syllables, and put them together.*

Note therefore that

1. A Syllable in Latine doth not exceed the number of six letters; as, *Stirps, Scorb.*
2. In words of many syllables a consonant set between two vowels belongs to the latter; as, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. If a consonant be doubled, the first belongs to the foregoing, and the latter to the following syllable; as, *An-nus*.
4. Consonants which cannot bee joyned in the beginning of a word, must be parted in the middle of it; as, *Sul-cus*.
5. Consonants which can be joyned in the beginning of a word, must not be parted in the middle, as, *no-ster*.

	[ bd ]	[ He-bdomas ]	[ Bdelium. ]
	cn	Te-chna.	Cneus.
	ct	Do-ctus.	Etesipho.
6. In	gn	A-gnus.	Gnatus.
simple	mn	A-mnis.	Mnemosyne
words	phth	Na-phtha.	Phthisis
these	ps	Scri-psi.	Pstittacus
letters	pt	A-ptus.	Ptolomæus
always	sb	Ic-sbia.	Sbesis
belong	sc	Pi-scis.	Scamnum.
to the	sm	Co-smus.	Smaragdus
follow-	sp	A-sper.	Spero.
ing	sq	Te-squa.	Squalor.
vowel,	st	Pa-flor.	Sterto.
viz.	tl	A-tlas.	theptolemus
	tm	La-tmius.	Tmolus.
	tn	A-tna.	Thnesko.

because we say

# Grammatica Latina.

11

Estque { *Impropria*, quæ constant ex solâ vocali vel diphthongo; ut, *A-a-cus*.  
{ *Propria*, quæ constant ex consonante unâ vel pluribus, cum vocali vel diphthongo comprehensis; ut, *Cæ-le-stis*.

Rectè scripturo discendum est syllabas, inter scribendum, aptè distinguere, atque connectere.

Notandum igitur quod

1. Syllaba apud Latinos numerum senarium literarum non excedit; ut, *Stirps*, *Scorbs*.
2. In Polysyllabis consonans inter duas vocales posita ad posteriorem pertinet; ut, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. Si consonans geminetur, prior ad præcedentem, posterior ad sequentem syllabam pertinet; ut, *An-nus*.
4. Consonæ, quæ in initio vocis conjungi non possunt, in medio sunt distinguendæ; ut, *Sul-cus*.
5. Consonæ quæ in initio vocis conjungi possunt, in medio non sunt distinguendæ; ut, *No-ster*.

earundem  
distinctione  
vel  
connexionē

6. In	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>bd</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>He-bdomas</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Edellium</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
simpli-	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>cn</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Te-chna</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Cneus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
cibus	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>ct</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Do-ctus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Ctesipho</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
voci-	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>gn</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>A-gnus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Gnatus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
bus hæ	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>mn</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>A-mnia</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Mnemosyne</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
literæ	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>phth</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Na-phtha</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Phthisis</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
vocali	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>ps</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Scri-ps</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Psittacus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
le-	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>pt</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>A-ptus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Ptolomæus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
quenti	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>sb</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Le-sbia</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Sbesis</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
sem-	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>fc</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Pi-scis</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Scammum</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
per ad-	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>fm</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Co-smus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Smaragdus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
hæ-	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>sp</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>A-sper</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Spero</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
rent,	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>sq</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Te-squa</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Squalor</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
est.	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>st</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Pa-stor</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Sterto</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>tl</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>A-tlas</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Tleptolemus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>tm</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>La-tinus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Tmolus</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>tn</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>A-ina</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	<span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Tmesia</i> <span style="font-size: 1.5em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>

quia dicitur



7. In words compounded every part must bee separated from another; as, *Abs-con-do*.
8. In words compounded with a preposition, wee must respect the ear and good sound; as, *Aufere*, not *Absfere*; and *Abstuli*, not *Auctuli*: and therefore it is that consonants are often times put in; as *Redamo*, for *Reamo*; *Ambigo* for *Amigo*.
9. *S* is rightly written after *X* in compound words, whose simples begin with *s*; as *Exscribo*, of *ex* and *scribo*, *exsul* of *ex* and *solum*: but not in others, as, *Exoro* of *Ex* and *oro*, *Exigo* of *Ex* and *ago*.
10. *Ti* before a vowel is pronounced like *fi*; as, *Oratio*. Except,
  1. In the beginning of a word, as, *Tiara*.
  2. When *s* goeth immediately before it; as, *Questio*.
  3. In poetical Infinitive Moods; as, *mitti*, for *mitti*.
  4. In words borrowed from other languages; as, *Politia*.

### Chap. 3. Of Right Utterance.

3. Of Right Uttering and amending the faults in Pronouncing.

**O** *Rthoepe*, or Right Utterance, is the manner of right speaking our; as, *Homo*, not *omo*.

Boyes must neither over-hasten their speech, nor pause between every word; but must bee made to avoid the usual faults in pronouncing; such as are,

1. *Traulism*, when one stutthereth or stammereth; as *Cacacanit*, for *canit*, which fault may bee amended by quickly pattering over some ribble rabble made hard to pronounce on purpose; as,

*Arx, tridens, rostris, sphinx, praefter, torrida, seps, strix,*

2. *Pla-*



7. In compositis quæque pars ab alterâ separanda est; ut, *Abs-con-do*.
8. In compositis cum præpositione auribus & *Euphonia* serviendum est; ut, *Aufero* non *Absfero*, & *ab-fuli* non *autuli* : ideòque Consonantes non raro interseruntur; ut, *Redamo* pro *Reamo*, *Ambigo* pro *Amigo*.
9. Post *X* in compositis, quorum simplicia incipiunt ab *S* rectissime scribitur *s*; ut, *Ex-scribo*, ab *ex* & *scribo*; *exsul*, ab *ex* & *solum*, sed non in aliis; ut *exoro* ab *ex* & *oro*; *exigo*, ab *ex* & *ago*.
10. *Ti* ante vocalem liquescit *si*; ut, *Oratio*.  
Nisi,
1. In initio dictionis; ut, *Tiara*.
2. Quando *s* præcedit; ut, *Questio*.
3. In poetiis infinitivis; ut, *mittere*.
4. In dictionibus mutuatitiis; ut, *Politia*.

### Cap. 3. De Orthoëpia.

**O** Rthoëpia est rectè Enunciandi ratio; ut, *Homo* non *Omo*.

Pueri nec sermonem præcipitent, nec ad singulas quasque voces consilescant. Deterrendi sunt autem à vitiis sermonis vulgò propriis, cujusmodi sunt.

1. *Traulismus*, qui est hæsitantia vel titubantia oris ut, *Cacacant* pro *Canit*. Cui vicio facile succurritur, si centones quosdam affectatæ difficultatis, quàm citissime volvant; ut,

*Arx, tridens, voftris, sphinx, præster, torrida, seps, strix.*

3. De Orthoëpia, & vitiis sermonis emendandis.

2. *Plateasm*, when one speaketh too broadly; as, *Argo* for *Ergo*. *Montes* for *Montes*, *Taihai* for *Tibi*.

3. *Ischnotes*, when one speaketh too mincingly; as, *Nunc* for *nunc*. *Eliquis* for *Aliquis*. Or too lispingly; as, *Apuh* for *Apud*. *Amath* for *Amat*.

## Chap. 4. Of Points in Sentences.

4. Of points in sentences.

**A** Point or Pause is a note of distinction, signifying the space of breathing, or how long one may stay his breath. There bee eight of these especially to bee noted.

1. Comma,

1. A *Comma* is an half circle, which stayeth a sentence a little, by distinguishing its shorter parts; as, *Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Græculus esuriens, in Cælum, jussuris, ibit.*

2. Colon:

2. A *Colon* is two pricks, which suspends a sentence somewhat long, by dividing it in the midst; as, *utendum est atate: cito pede præterit ætas.*

3. Semi-colon.

3. A *Semicolon* is a prick with a *Comma* under it, staying a sentence longer than a *Comma*, and not so long as a *Colon*; as, *Tu, quid divitiæ possunt, consideras; quid virtus, non itens.*

4. Period.

4. A *Period* is a full prick after a perfect sentence, as, *Deum time. Regem honora.*

5. Parenthesis ( )

5. A *Parenthesis* is two half Moons including a sentence, which, though it be taken away, the speech nevertheless will be whole; as,

———— *Princeps (quia bella minantur Hostes,) militibus urbes premunit & armis.*

6. Interrogation?

6. An *Interrogation* marks a question with two pricks, whereof the higher hath a tail upward: as, *Quomodo vales?*

7. Exclamation!

7. An *Exclamation* is marked with two pricks, whereof the upper is a line coming down upon a point as, *O tempora! O mores!*

8. Hyphen

2. *Plateasmus*, est iusto crassior pronuntiatio : ut, *Argó* pro *Ergó*. *Mountes* pro *Montes*. *Taibai* pro *Tibi*.  
 3. *Ischnotes*, est iusto exilior pronuntiatio; ut, *Nync* pro *Nunc*. *Eliquis* pro *Aliquis*. Aut *blæfior*, ut, *Apuh* pro *Apud*. *Amath* pro *Amat*.

## Cap. 4. De Sententiarum Punctis.

**P**unctum sive Pausa est nota distinctionis, respirandi intervallum significans. Horum octo sunt præcipuè notanda.

1. *Comma* est semi-circulus, sententiam sustinens, breviores ejus clausulas distinguendo : ut,  
*Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, victor, aliptes,*  
*Græculus esuriens, in Cælum, jusseris, ibit.*
2. *Colon* sunt duo puncta, quæ sententiam diutius suspendunt, medias ejus partes dirimendo : ut,  
*utendum est etate : cito pede præterit ætas.*
3. *Semicolon* est punctum cum Commata subjecto, sententiam diutius paulò sustinens quàm Comma : minùs diu verò quàm Colon : ut, *Tu, quid divitiæ possent, consideras; quid virtus, non item.*
4. *Periodus* est punctum plenum post perfectam sententiam : ut, *Deum time. Regem honora.*
5. *Parenthesis* sunt duæ semilunulæ sententiam includens, quæ remota sermo tamen manet integer : ut,  
*Princeps (quia bella minantur*  
*Hofes) militibus urbes præmunat, & armis.*
6. *Interrogatio* signat questionem duobus punctis, quorum superius est caudatum; ut, *Quomodo va-*  
*les?*
7. *Exclamatio* item notatur duobus punctis, quorum superius est hincola in punctum descendens; ut,  
*O tempora! O mores!*

4. De Sententiarum Punctis, quæ sunt, 1. Comma,

2. Colon :

3. Semicolon ;

4. Periodus.

5. Parenthesis ( )

6. Interrogatio?

7. Exclamatio!

8. Hyphen.

8. *Hyphen* is a little stroke interposed in a word divided at the end of a line; as, *Humanissimé*: or, in words that are united, but not compounded; as, *Res-publica*, a Common wealth.



## BOOK. II.

## Of Etymologia.

Etymologie

**E**TYMOLOGIE is the second part of Grammar, which teacheth how to know the difference of words, duly considering the properties or things belonging to every one of them.

teacheth

Now, a word is a part or peice of a Speech, which it self doth signifie something, but cannot bee divided into parts that signifie: as, *Pi-e-tas*, Godliness.

## Chap. I.

## Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents.

Of the eight  
Parts of  
Speech;  
which are

**T**Here  
bee  
eight sorts  
of words:

- |                            |           |
|----------------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>A Noun.</i>          | Chap. 2.  |
| 2. <i>A Pronoun.</i>       | Chap. 23. |
| 3. <i>A Verb.</i>          | Chap. 24. |
| 4. <i>A Participle.</i>    | Chap. 39. |
| 5. <i>An Adverb.</i>       | Chap. 40. |
| 6. <i>A Conjunction.</i>   | Chap. 41. |
| 7. <i>A Preposition.</i>   | Chap. 42. |
| 8. <i>An Interjection.</i> | Chap. 43. |

And

8. *Hyphen* est lineola interposita voci 8. *Hyphen*.  
 dissectæ in fine lineæ ; ut, *Humanif-*  
*simè* : aut in vocibus unitis, sed non compositis ;  
 aut *Res-publica*.



## LIB. II.

## De Etymologia.

**E**TYMOLOGIA est secunda pars Gram- Etymologia  
 maticæ, quæ docet dictionum discrimina,  
 singularum proprietates, sive Accidentia  
 diligenter expendens.

Est autem dictio sive vox, pars ora- agit  
 tionis, quæ ipsa aliquid significat, sed in partes signi-  
 ficantes dividi non potest : ut, *Pi-e-tas*.

## Cap. I.

De octo Partibus Orationis, & earum  
 Accidentibus generalibus.

**O**cto  
 sunt  
 vocum ge-  
 nera :

1. *Nomen.*
2. *Pronomen.*
3. *Verbum.*
4. *Participium.*
5. *Adverbium.*
6. *Conjunctio.*
7. *Præpositio.*
8. *Intersectio.*

Cap. 2.

Cap. 23.

Cap. 24.

Cap. 39.

Cap. 40.

Cap. 41.

Cap. 42.

Cap. 43.

Atque

De octo  
 Partibus  
 Orationis ;  
 quæ sunt

And these bee commonly called *Parts of Speech*, because of them every speech is made; though they are seldome all to bee found in one Speech.

Declined or Undeclined.	The four	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{first} \\ \text{better} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{of these} \\ \text{are} \end{array} \right\}$	Declined, which change their
				endings.
				Undeclined, which change not their endings.

There belongs to every Part of Speech

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Species,} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{Kinde,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{according to which} \\ \text{a word is} \end{array} \right\}$	1 <i>Species,</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Primitive, which is not derived of} \\ \text{any other word; as, } \textit{Arbor, Amo.} \\ \text{Derivative, which is derived from} \\ \text{another word; as, } \textit{Arbustum} \\ \textit{Amicus.} \\ \text{Simple, or single; which is not com-} \\ \text{pounded with another; as, } \textit{Ami-} \\ \textit{cus, Amo.} \\ \text{Compound, or mixt; which is made} \\ \text{of two or more words; as, } \textit{Inimi-} \\ \textit{cus, Redamo.} \end{array} \right\}$
		or	
		Kinde,	
$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Figure,} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{Form,} \end{array} \right\}$		2 <i>Figure,</i>	
		or	
Form,			

There belong to words Declined

To which belong,

1. *Analogie*, when a word agrees with a Common Rule; as, *Musa, Amo.*
2. *Anomalie*, when a word swerves from the Common Rule; as, *Filia, Fero.*

3. Two Numbers, whereof
 

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{The Singular speaketh but of one;} \\ \text{as, } \textit{Lapis a Stone.} \\ \text{The Plural of more than one; as,} \\ \textit{Lapides Stones.} \end{array} \right\}$

Two Numbers, Singular, and Plural.  
Three Persons, The first, The second, The third.

4. Three Persons
 

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{The first speaketh of himself; as, } \textit{Ego nu-} \\ \textit{gans puer ludo. I trifling boy do play.} \\ \text{The second is spoken to; as, } \textit{Tu nugans} \\ \textit{puer ludis. Thou trifling boy playest.} \\ \text{The third is spoken of; as, } \textit{Ille nugans puer} \\ \textit{ludit. He trifling boy playeth.} \end{array} \right\}$	

*Ego* and *Nos* be alwaies of the First Person.

*Tu* and *vos*, and every Vocative case of the Second.

All

Atque hæc vulgò vocantur *Partes Orationis*, quòd ex hisce omnis oratio conficiatur : et si omnes in una oratione rarò admodum occurrant.

Harum quatuor	Priores	sunt	Declinabiles, siue variabiles, quæ in <i>sine</i> possunt variari.	Declinabiles.
	posteriores		Indeclinabiles, siue invariabiles, quæ in <i>sine</i> non possunt variari.	

Accidunt cuique Parti Orationis.

1. *Species*, secundum quam vox dicitur
- Primitiva*, quæ aliunde non trahitur; ut, *Arbor*, *Amo*.
  - Derivativa*, quæ aliunde formatur; ut, *Arbustum*, *Amicus*.
  - Simplex*, quæ cum alia non componitur; ut, *Amicus*, *Amo*.
  - Composita*, quæ à duabus vel pluribus fit; ut, *Inimicus*, *Redamo*.
2. *Figura*,

Accidunt vocibus Declinabilibus

1. *Analogia*, cum dictio convenit *Communi Regulæ*; ut, *Musa*, *Amo*. Quibus accidunt.

2. *Anomalia*, cum dictio recedit à *Communi Regulâ*; ut, *Filia*, *Fero*.

3. *Numeri*
- |            |          |                                   |  |
|------------|----------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Singularis | loquitur | de uno; ut, <i>Lapis</i> ,        | Numeri duo, Singularis, & Pluralis. Personæ tres, Prima. |
|            |          | de pluribus; ut, <i>Lapides</i> . |  |
| Pluralis.  |          |                                   |  |
- Prima*, quæ loquitur de se; ut, *Ego nugans puer ludo*.

4. *Personæ*
- |       |  |          |
|-------|--|----------|
| tres, | <i>Secunda</i> , ad quam loquimur; ut, <i>Tu nugans puer ludis</i> . | Secunda, |
|       | <i>Tertia</i> , de quâ loquimur; ut, <i>Ille nugans puer ludit</i> . |          |
|       |  |          |

*Ego* & *nos* sunt semper *Primæ Personæ*.

*Tu* & *Vos*, & omnes *Vocativi*, *Secundæ*.

All other Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles bee of the Third, unless *Ego* or *Nos*, *Tu* or *Vos* be exprest or understood.

## Chap. 2.

## Of a Noun, and its proper Accidents.

A Noun  
nameth a  
thing,  
and is  
Substant.

or

Adjective.

**A** Noun is a part of Speech which nameth a thing without any difference of Time or Person; as, *Manus* a Hand, *Domus* a House.

And it is  
either

*Substantive*, which may stand by it self in a Speech, and requireth nothing to be added to declare its signification; as, *Homo* a Man.

*Adjective*, which stands in need of a Substantive to declare its signification; as, *Bonus* good.

A Substantive sheweth what a thing is; as, *Equus* a Horse.

An Adjective sheweth what alike the thing is; as, *Albus* White.

Proper,

or

Common.

Both  
which  
are

*Proper*, which is spoken of some one thing only; as, *Carolus* Charles, *Londinum* London, *Thamisis* the Thames, *Anglus* English, *Scotus* Scotch.

*Common*, which signifieth a thing common to many; as, *Homo* a Man, *Urbs* a City, *Fluvius* a River, *Regio* a Country, *Magnus* Great.

It hath

There belong to a  
Noun, Pronoun, and  
a Participle.

Case.  
Gender.  
Declension.  
Comparison.

Chap. 3.

Chap. 4.

Chap. 11.

Chap. 17.

Chap. 31.



# Grammatica Latina.

21

Cætera Nomina, Pronomina, & Participia sunt  
tertiæ personæ, nisi Ego vel Nos, Tu vel Vos expri-  
mantur vel subintelligantur.

## Cap. 2.

### De Nomina, & ejus Accidentibus specialibus.

**N**omen est Pars Orationis quæ rem nominat, Nomen rem  
sine ulla Temporis aut Personæ differentia; ut, nominat,  
*Manus, Domus.*

**Substantivum**, quod per se in Oratione sub-  
sistit, & nihil addi postulat ad suam sig-  
nificationem exprimendam; ut, *Homo*,  
**Estque** **Adjectivum**, quod Substantivo indiget ad  
suam significationem exprimendam; ut,  
*Bonus*.

Substantivum indicat quid sit rei; ut, *Equus*.  
Adjectivum indicat quale sit rei; ut, *Albus*.

**Quorum** **utrumque** **est** **Proprium**, quod rem uni individuo propri-  
am significat; ut, *Carolus, Londinum,*  
*Thamisis, Anglus, Scotus*.  
**Commune**, sive Appellativum, quod rem  
multis communem significat; ut, *Homo,*  
*Urbs, Fluvius, Regio, Magnus*.

Accidunt Nomini,  
Pronomini, &  
Participio.

Casus.  
Genus.  
Declinatio.  
Comparatio.

Cap. 3.  
Cap. 4.  
Cap. 11.  
Cap. 17.  
Ejus sunt.  
Cap. 3.

## Chap. 3. of Case.

**A** Case is the special ending of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle.

There be *Six Cases* in both numbers.

Six Cases,  
The Nominative,

1. The *Nominative Case* is the first word whereby we name any thing, and it goeth before the Verb, and answereth to the question, *Who*, or, *What*? as *Magister Docet*; The Master teacheth.

Genitive,

2. The *Genitive case* signifies whose a thing is, and answereth to the question, *Whose*, or *Whereof*? as *Doctrina Magistri*, the learning of the Master, or the Master's learning.

Dative,

3. The *Dative* attributes, or gives something to one, and answereth to the question, *to whom*, or *to what*; as, *Do librum Magistro*, I give a book to the Master.

Accusative,

4. The *Accusative case* follows the Verb, and signifies whereunto the Action of the Verb referreth; and answereth to the question, *Whom*, or *What*? as *Amo Magistrum*, I love the Master.

Vocative,

5. The *Vocative case* is used in calling or speaking to; as, *O Magister*, O Master.

Ablative.

6. The *ablative case* is commonly joyned with a Preposition that serveth thereunto; and answereth to the question, *from whom*, or *from what*? and the like; as, *Accepi librum à Magistro*, I received a book from the Master.

The *Nominative case* is sometimes called the *right* or *streight case*, and the rest *oblique* or *'thwart cases*, because their endings swerve from the *Nominative*.

## Chap. 4. of Gender.

**G**ender is the differencing of Sex in respect of speech,

For

Cap. 3. De Casu.

**C**asus est specialis, Nominis, Pronominis, aut Participii terminatio.

Sunt autem *Sex Casus* in utroque numero.

1. *Nominativus* est prima vox, quæ rem aliquam nominamus : præcedit autem Verbum, & respondet questioni *Quis*, aut *Quid* ? ut, *Magister docet.*

*Sex Casus*  
*Nominativus,*

2. *Genitivus* significat cujus sit res quæpiam, & respondet questioni *Cujus* ? ut, *Doctrina Magistri.*

*Genitivus,*

3. *Dativus* quid cuiquam attribuit, & respondet questioni *Cui* ? ut, *De libro Magistro.*

*Dativus,*

4. *Accusativus* sequitur Verbum, utpote in quem actio Verbi immediate transit, & respondet questionibus, *Quem*, vel *Quid* ? ut *Amo Magistrum.*

*Accusativus,*

5. *Vocativus* vocandis compellandisque personis accommodatur; ut, *O Magister.*

*Vocativus,*

6. *Ablativus* conjungitur seipsum præpositioni Ablativo inservienti; & respondit questionibus à quo; & similibus, ut, *Accepi librum à Magistro.*

*Ablativus.*

Nominativus aliquando *Rectus Casus* dicitur: ceteri vero *Obliqui*, quod eorum terminationes flectant à Nominativo.

Cap. 4. De Genere.

**G**enus est Sexus discretio ratione sermonis.

Discernit

# The Latine Grammar.

For it makes a difference betwixt Nouns that are used as *Hees* or *Shees*, thereby to know the agreement of the Substantive or Adjective,

Seven Gen-  
ders.

Genders of Nouns be seven; whereof the three first may not unfitly be termed *Simple*, and the four last *Compound* Genders.

They are known by their Articles (or notes) which are borrowed of the Pronoun, and bee thus declined.

Singulariter		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
	Nom.	Hic	Hæc	Hoc		Hi	Hæc	Hæc
	Gen	Huius	Huius	Huius		Horum	Harum	Horum
	Dat.	Hui	Hui	Hui		His	His	His
	Acc.	Hunc	Hanc	Hoc		Hos	Has	Hæc
	Voc.							
	Abl.	Hoc	Hæc	Hoc		His	His	His

Masculine.

1. The *Masculine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Hees*; and is declined with *Hic*; as, *Hic vir*, a man.

Feminine.

2. The *Feminine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Shees*; and is declined with *Hæc*; as, *Hæc mulier*, a Woman.

Neuter.

3. The *Neuter* is of Nouns which are given to things that are accounted neither *Hees* nor *Shees*; and is declined with *Hoc*; as, *Hoc saxum*, a Stone.

Common of two.

4. The *Common of two* is made of the Masculine and the Feminine joynd together; and is declined with *Hic* and *Hæc*; as, *Hic & Hæc Parens*, a Parent.

Common of three.

5. The *Common of three* is made of all three simple Genders.

Discernit enim inter ea nomina, quæ tanquam mares aut fœminæ construuntur, propter convenientiam Substantivi & Adjectivi cognoscendam.

Genera Nominum sunt septem: quorum tria prima non ineptè *Simplicia*, quatuor vero postrema *Composita* dici quæant. Genera septem.

Dignoscuntur autem suis Articulis (sivi notis) qui à Pronominibus accipiuntur, & in hunc modum variantur.

Singulariter		Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
	Nom.	Hic	Hæc	Hoc		Hi	Hæ	Hæc
	Gen.	Huius	Huius	Huius		Horum	Harum	Horum
	Dat.	Huius	Huius	Huius		His	His	His
	Acc.	Hunc	Hanc	Hoc		Hos	Has	Hæc
	Voc.							
	Abl.	Hic	Hæc	Hoc		His	His	His

1. *Masculinum* genus maribus attribuitur; cuius nota est *Hic*; ut, *Hic vir*. Masculinum.

2. *Fœmininum* fœminis attribuitur; cuius nota est *Hæc*; ut, *Hæc mulier*. Fœmininum.

3. *Neutrum* nec maribus, nec fœminis attribuitur; cuius nota est *Hoc*; ut, *Hoc saxum*. Neutrum.

4. *Commune duorum* ex Masculino & Fœminino componitur; cuius nota est *Hic & Hæc*; ut, *Hic & Hæc Parens*. Commune duorum.

5. *Commune trium* ex omnibus simplicibus generibus trium.

Genders joyned together; and is declined with *Hic*, *Hac*, and *Hoc*; as, *Hic*, *hac* & *Hoc* *Felix*, Happy.

Doubtful.

6. The *Doubtful* may be either the Masculine or the Feminine; and is declined with *Hic* vel *Hac*; as, *Hic* vel *Hac* *Dies*, a Day.

Epicene.

7. The *Epicene* comprehendeth both Sexes under one Article; as, *Hic* *Passer*, a Sparrow. And in this Gender, to avoid ambiguity, we use to express the Sex by He, or She; as, *Passer* *mas* a He, or Cock-sparrow: *Passer* *femina* a She, or Hen-sparrow.



*Propia qua Marribus :*

OR,

*WILLIAM LILIE'S* Rules,  
OF THE  
GENDERS of NOUNS.

Rules of the  
Genders of  
Nouns are

I. General.

I. Of Sub-  
stantives

proper.

I. Proper  
names.

1. Of Gods.

2. Of Men.

3. Of Rivers.

4. Of months

5. Of winds

are of the

Masculine

Gender.

Chap. 5.

Of the General Rules of Proper Names.

I. **P**roper Names which are given to Males, or  
Hees, are Masculines: As 1. Of Gods; as  
*Bacchus*, *chi*. *Mars*, *tis*. *Apollo*, *inis*. 2. Of Men,  
as, *Caro*, *tōnis*. *Virgilius*, *lii*. 3. Of Rivers; as,  
*Tybris*, *bris*. *Orontes*, *tis*. 4. Of Months; as, *Octo-*  
*ber*, *bris*. 5. Of winds; as, *Lybs*, *ybis*. *Norus*, *ti*.  
*Auster*, *stri*, the South-wind.

II. Pro-

bus componitur; cuius nota est *Hic, Hec & Hoc*; ut, *Hic, Hec & Hoc Felix*.

6. *Dubium* aut Masculinum aut Fœmininum Articulum indifferenter assumere potest; cuius nota est *Dubium*.  
*Hic vel Hec*; ut, *Hic vel Hec Dies*.

7. *Epicœnum* sub uno Articulo utrumque sexum *Epicœnum*.  
complectitur; ut, *Hic Passer*. Hoc autem in genere, ad vitandam ambiguitatem, sexum exprimere solemus per marem & fœminam; ut, *Passer mas, Passer fœmina*.



*Propria quæ Maribus :*

VEL,

**GULIELMILILII Regulæ,  
DE  
GENERIBUS NOMINUM**

**Cap. 5.**

**De Regulis Generalibus Propriorum.**

**P**ropria, quæ Maribus tribuuntur, Mascula dicas;  
ut sunt, 1. *Divorum*, Mars, Bacchus, Apollo. 2.

*Virorum;*

ut, Cato, Virgilius. 3. *Fluviorum*; ut, Tiberis, Orontes.

4. *Mensium*; ut, October, 5. *Ventorum*; ut, Lybs, Norus,

(Auster.

Regulæ de  
generibus  
nominum.

1. Generales

1. Substan-

tivorum

propriorum.

2. Propria,

1. Deorum.

2. Virorum.

3. Fluviorum.

4. Mensium.

5. Ventorū

mascula

sunt.



- 2 Proper Names,  
 1 Of Goddesses,  
 2 Of Women,  
 3 Of Cities.  
 4 Of Regions,  
 5 Of Islands  
 are Feminines.

II. **P**roper Names shewing the female kinde are Feminines, as, 1. Of Goddesses, as Juno, nōnis, Venus, nēris. 2. Of Women, as, Anna, ~~ne~~ Philotis, lotidis. 3. Of Cities, as, Elis, līdis, Opus, pūntis. 4. Of Regions, as, Græcia, æ. Persis, īdis. 5. Of Islands, as, Creta, æ. Britannia, niæ. Cyprus, pri.

But some names of Cities are excepted, as, 1. These Masculines, Sulmo, mōnis. Agragas, gantis. 2. Some Neuters, as, Argos, gi. Tibur, būirs. Prænestē, stis, and 3. Anxur, xūris, which is both of the Masculine and Neuter Gender.

## Chap. 6.

### Of the General Rules of Common Names.

- II. General of Common Names,  
 1 Common names of Trees are Feminines.

**C**ommon names of Trees are of the Feminine gender, as, *Alnus*, ni, an Alder. *Cupressus*, si, a Cypress. *Cedrus*, dri, a Cedar. But *Pinus*, ni, a Pine. *Oleaster*, stri, a wild Olive, are Masculines. *Siler*, lēris, an Olier. *Suber*, bēris, a Cork tree. Thus, *uris*, the Frankincense tree. *Robur*, ōris, an Oak, and *Acer*, cēris, a Maple, are Neuter.

- 2 Common names of Birds, Beasts and Fishes  
 be Epicenes.

II. **T**he names of Birds, as, *Passer*, ēris, a Sparrow. *Hirundo*, dīnis, a Swallow. Of Beasts, as, *Tigris*, grīdis, a Tyger. *Vulpis*, sis, a Fox. And of Fishes, as, *Ostrea*, æ, an Oyster. *Cetus*, ti, a whale, are of the Epicene gender.

- 3 All that end in *um*, and that change not their ending are Neuters.

III. But here is to bee noted, that of all the Nouns afore-mentioned, every Noun (except proper name of Men, and Women) in *um* is of the Neuter Gender. And so are nouns that change not their ending.

But



**P**ropria *fæmineum* referentia nomina *sexum*,  
*Fæmineo* generi tribuuntur: sive 1. *Dearum*  
*Sunt*; ut, Juno, Venus. 2. *Mulierum*; seu, Anna, Philoris.  
 3. *urbium*; ut, Elis, Opus. 4. *Regionū*; ut, Græcia, Persis.  
 5. *Insulæ* item *nomen*; seu, Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.

2 Propria,  
 1 Dearum,  
 2 Mulierum  
 3 Urbium,  
 4 Regionum  
 5 Intularum  
 Fæminina  
 sunt.

*Excipiendæ* tamen *quædam* sunt *urbium*; ut ista  
 1. *Maseula*, *Sulmo*, *Agragas*: 2. *quædā neutralia*, ut, *Ar-*  
*gos*.  
*Tybur*, *Preneste*: & *genus*. 3. *Anxur* quod dat *utrumq;*.

## Cap. 6.

## De Regulis Generalibus Appellativorum.

I. **A**ppellativa arborū erunt *muliebria*; ut, *Alnus*,  
*Cupressus*, *Cedrus*, *Mas pinus*, *mas oleaster*.  
*Et sunt neutra*, *filer*, *suber*, *thus*, *robur*, *acerque*.

II. Generales  
 Appellativo-  
 rum.  
 I Appellativa  
 Arborū sunt  
 fæminina.

II. **S**unt etiam *volucrum*; seu, *passer*, *hirundo*, *fera-*  
*rum*.  
*ut*, *Tygris*, *Vulpes*: & *piscium*; ut, *ostrea*, *cetus*,  
*Dicta Epicæna*: quibus *vox ipsa genus feret aptum*.

2 Appellativa  
 volucrum,  
 ferarum, &  
 Piscium I pi-  
 cæna sunt.

III. Attamen ex cunctis, quæ diximus ante notandū,  
*Omne* quod exit in *um* (si hominum modō *Propria* tollas)  
*Esse genus neutrum*: sic *invariabile nomen*.

3 Omne in  
 um, & inva-  
 riabile sunt  
 Neutra.

2. Special  
Rules of  
common  
Names are  
three.

But now will I speak in order touching all other  
Common names, or which are as Common names;  
for in these the Gender is alwaies known by the Geni-  
tive case; as the three special rules following wil shew.

### Chap. 7.

#### Of the First Special Rule.

I.  
A Noun not  
encreasing,  
is Feminine.

**A** Noun not encreasing in the Genitive case sin-  
gular, is of the Feminine Gender; as, *Caro, carnis*  
*Flesh. Capra, caprae, a she Goat. Nubes, nubis a cloud.*

Except  
Masculines.

I. **M** Any Names belonging to Men, ending in *a*,  
are of the Masculine gender; as, *Scriba, bae,*  
*a Scribe. Affecta, clae, a Page. Schyrra, ra, a Scot-*  
*ter. Rabula, lae, a Brawler. Lixa, xae, a Scullion.*  
*Lanista, rae, a fencer.* 2. Such as come from the  
first Greek Declension, and ends in *as*; as, *Satrapas,*  
*pa, a Deér.* Or in *es*; as, *Athletes, tae, a Wrestler.*  
And such as are made of them in *a*; as, *Satrapa, pa,*  
*Athleta, tae.* 3. Likewise, *Verres, ris, a Boar-pig. Na-*  
*talis, lis, a Birth-day. Aqualis, lis, an eel.* 4. Words  
that are compounded of *as* (and signifie more than *as*)  
*a pound weight; as, centussis, sis, an hundred poun-*  
*weight.* 5. Add to these, *Lienis, nis, the mill. Orbis,*  
*bis, a roundle. Callis, lis, a path. Caulis, lis, a stalk,*  
*fallis, lis, a pair of bellows, collis, lis, a little Hill,*  
*mensis, sis, a month, ensis, sis, a sword, fustis, sis, a cloth,*  
*funis, nis, a rope, panis, nis, bread, penis, nis, a mane*  
*yard, crinis, nis, hatt, ignis, nis, fire, cassis, sis, a net,*  
*fascis, cis, a faggot, torris, ris, a firebrand, sentis, tis,*  
*a thorn, piscis, cis, a fish, unguis, guis, a nail. or hoof,*  
*vermis, mis, a worm, vectis, tis, a doze-bar, postis, sis,*  
*a post, and axis, xis, an axle tree.* 6. Nouns ending

1. *er,* } *Venter, tris, a belly;* } are of the  
in *os,* } *as, Logos, gi, a word;* } Masculine  
2. *us,* } *Annus, ni, a year;* } gender.

Yer

*Sed nunc de reliquis, quæ Appellativa vocantur  
Aut quæ sunt tanquam Appellativa ordine dicam  
Nam genus his semper dignoscitur ex Genitivo:  
Infra ut monstrabit Specialis Regula triplex.*

Regulæ spe-  
ciales Appellativorum  
sunt tres,

Cap. 7.

De Prima Regula Speciali, & ejus  
Exceptionibus.

**N**omen non crescens Genitivo, ceu, caro, carnis;  
Capra, capræ, nubes, nubis; genus est muliebre.

I.  
Nomen non  
crescens, est  
Muliebre.

1. **M**ascula nomina in a, dicuntur multa virorum;  
ut, Scriba, affecta, scurra, & rabula, lixa, lanista,

Excipiuntur  
Masculina.

2. Mascula Græcorum quot Declinatio prima

Fundit in as & in es, & ab illis quot per a fiunt;

ut, Sarrapás, Sarrapa, Athletes, Athleta. 3. Leguntur

Mascula item verres, natalis, aqualis. 4. Abesse

Nata; ut, centussis. 5. Coniunge, lienis & orbis,

Callis, caulis, foliis, collis, mensis, & ensis,

Fustis, funis, panis, penis, crinis, & ignis,

Cassis, fassis, torris, sentis, piscis, & unguis,

Et vermis, vectis, postis, societas, & axis.

6. Mascula in i, ex, seu venter; in us, vel 2. us; ut,

(logos, annus.  
Famini

**Y** Et these are Feminines. 1. *Mater, tris*, a mother. 2. *Humus, mi*, the ground: *domus, mi, mūs*, an house or home: *Alnus, vi*, a panch: *colus, li, lūs*, a distaff: *ficus, ci, cūs*, a fig: *acus, cūs*, a needle: *porticus, cūs*, a gallery: *tribus, būs*, a tribe: *socrus, eri*, a mother in law: *nurus, rūs*, a daughter in law: *manus, nūs*, a hand: *idus, iduum*, the Ides of the month: *anus, nūs*, an old woman: *vannus, ni*, a van. 3. To these you may add Greek words which turn *os* into *u*, as, *paperius, ri*, paper: *antidotus, ti*, an antidote: *costus, sti*, the herb cost: *Marp: diphthongus, gi*, a diphthong: *byssus, fi*, fine flax: *abyssus, fi*, an abyss: *cristallus, li*, cristal: *Synodus, di*, a Synod: *sapphirus, ri*, a Sapphire: *eremus, mi*, a wilderness: *arctus, eti*, Chariswain: with many more, which would be long to set down.

Neuters.

**II.** **N**ouns ending in *e*, whose Genitive makes *is*, are of the Neuter gender; as, *mare, is*, the sea: *rete, is*, a net. And 2. Nouns that end in *on*; as, *barbitor, ti*, a Lute: or in *um*; as, *ovum, vi*, an egg. 3. *Hippomanes, nis*, Mare-poison: *casoëthes, this*, an evil custome: *virus, poison*: *pelagus, gi*, the sea. But 4. *Vulgus, gi*, the common people, is sometime Masculine, sometime Neuter.

Doubtfuls.

**III.** **T**hese Nouns are of the Doubtful Gender; *Talpa, pe*, a mole: *dama, me*, a felloe deer: *canalis, lis*, a Channel: *Balanus, ni*, mast: *finis, nis*, an end: *clunis, nis*, a buttock: *restis, stis*, a rope: *peneus, ni, nūs*, victuals: *amnis, amnis*, a river. *Pampinus, ni*, a vine-leaf: *corbis, bis*, a basket: *linter, tris*, a cockboat: *torquis, quis*, a gold-chain: *specus, cūs*, a den: *anguis, guis*, a snake: *ficus, ci*, a pile: *phaselus, li*, a barge: *Lecythus, tbi*, an oil-glass: *pharus, ri*, a watch-tower: and *Paradisus, fi*, Paradise.

IV. Nouns

**F**eminei generis sunt, 1. Mater, 2. humus, domus, (alvus,

Et colus, & quarta pro fructu ficus, acilque,

Porticus, atque tribus, socrus, nurus, & manus, idus,

Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.

3. His jungas os in us vertentia Graca, Papyrus,

Antidorus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,

CrySTALLUS, Synodus, sapphirus, eremus & arctus,

Cum multis aliis quae nunc perscribere longum est.

II. **N**eutrum nomen in e, si gignit is; ut, mare, rere. Neutra.

2. Et quot in on vel in um fiunt; ut, barbiton, ovum.

3. Est neutrum hippomanes, genus & neutrū cacoëthes,

Et virus, pelagus. 4. Neutrum modò; mas modò vulgus.

III. **I**ncerti generis sunt talpa & dama, canalis, Dubia.

Et balanus, finis, clunis, restis, penus, amnis.

Pampinus, & corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,

Pro morbo ficus, fici dans; atque Phaselus,

Lecythus, ac atomus, grossus, pharus, & Paradisus.

Commons  
of two.

IV. **N**Ouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *a*, are of the Common of two Gender; as, *Graji-ga-na*, *a*, a Grecian born; *ui gigno* to beget; *Agricola*, *a*, an husband-man; *col* to till; *advena*, *a*, a stranger; of *venio* to come. To these Add *Senex*, *nis*, an old man; *auriga*, *a*, a waggoner; *verna*, *a*, a bondslave; *sodalis*, *lis*, a companion; *vates*, *tis*, a Prophet; *extorris*, *ris*, a banished man; *patrueilis*, *lis*, an Uncles son; *Perduellis*, *lis*, an enemy in war; *Affinis*, *nis*, a kinsman; *juvenis*, *nis*, a youth; *testis*, *tis*, a witness; *civis*, *vis*, a citizen; *canis*, *nis*, a dog; *hostis*, *stis*, a foe, or enemy.

### Chap. 3.

Of the second special Rule, and it's Exceptions.

#### II.

A noun en-  
creasing  
long is Fe-  
minine.

If the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular encreasing, sound long, a noun is of the Feminine gender; as, *Pietas*, *pietatis*, godliness; *virtus*, *tutis*, virtue.

Except  
Masculines.

I **C**ertain nouns of one syllable are Masculine; as *Sal*, *salis*, salt; *sol*, *solis*, the Sun; *ren*, *renis*, the kidney; *splen*, *splenis*, the spleen; *Car*, *caris*, a man of Caria; *Ser*, *Seris*, a man of Seres; *vir*, *vir*, a man; *vas*, *vadis*, a surety; *as*, *assis*, a pound weight; *mas*, *maris*, a male; *Bes*, *beffis*, right ounces; *prae*, *pradis*, a surety; *pes*, *pedis*, a foot; *glis*, *gliris*, a dormouse; *mos*, *moris*, a manner; *flos*, *floris*, a flower; *ros*, *roris*, dew; *Tro*, *troris*, a Trojan; *mas*, *muris*, a mouse; *dens*, *dentis*, a tooth; *mons*, *montis*, a mountain; *pons*, *ponsis*, a bridge; *fons*, *fontis*, a spring; *Seps*, *septis*, a serpent; *gryps*, *gryphis*, *agrypsion*, *thrac*, *thracis*, a Thracian; *Rex*, *Regis*, a king; *grex*, *gregis*, a flock; and *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian. 2. Nouns of many syllables in *a*; as, *Acarnan*, *nanis*, one of Acarnania; *lichen*, *chenis*, lichen; *liber*, *libris*, a book; *delphin*, *phinis*, a dolphin. 3. Nouns that end in *o* and signifie a body; as, *Leo*, *onis*, a lion; *curculio*, *onis*, a weevil; *senio*, *onis*, size; *ternio*, *onis*, tree; *fermo*, *monis*, speech.

4. Nouns

IV. **C**ompositum à verbo dans à commune duorum

Communia

Grajugena, à gigno, agricola, à colo, id advenā monstrat

Excipe hæc  
Puerpera.

A venio : adde senex, auriga, & verna, sodalis,

Vates, erroris, patruelis, perque duellis,

Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis.

Cap. 3. De secundâ Speciali Regula, &  
ejus Exceptionibus.

**N**omen, crescentis penultima si gentivi  
Syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc pietas, pietatis.

Virtus, virtutis, monstrat genas est muliebre.

II.  
Nomen a-  
cute cre-  
scens est  
muliebre.

I. **M**ascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina que-

(dam

Sal, sol, ren, & splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas, vadis, as, mas,

Excipiuntur  
Masculina

Bes, Cres, præ, & pes, glis, gliris habens genitivo,

Mos, Hos, ros, & Tres, imis, dens, mons, pons,  
simul & fons.

Seps, pro serpente, gryps, Thrax, Rex, grex gregis, &  
Phryx.

1. Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in n, ut, Acarnan,

Lichen, & delphin : 3. & in o, signantia corpus,

ut leo, curculio, sic senio, ternio, sermo.

4. Mascula



4. Nouns *ser* } *crater, tēris* a goblet } are  
 that } or } as } *conditor, tōris* a builder } mascu-  
 end in } or } *Heros, rōis* a Nobleman. } line.

5. So are also *torrens, rentis*, a brook: *nefrens, entis*, and *dis* a pig: *Oriens, entis*, the East: with many in *dens*, as *bidens, dentis*, a two grain'd fork. 6. Add to these *gigas, gantis*, a giant: *Elephas, phantis*, an Elephant: *adamas, mantis*, an adamant: *Garamas, wantis*, one of Garamatia: *tapes, pētus, tapestry*: *lebes, bētis*, a cauldron: *Cures, rētis*, one of Cures: *Magnes, nētis*, a loadstone: *meridies, diei*, noon. 7. Nouns compounded of *as*, and signifie part of *as*; as, *adrians, antis*, nine ounces: *semis, issis*, half a pound: 8. To these add *Samnis, nitis*, a Samnite: *hydrops, drōpis*, the droppe: *niēti- corax, rācis*, a night-raven: *vervex, vēcis*, a wether: *phoenix, nicis*, a Phenix: *bombyx, bycis*, a silk-worm. Yet of these *Syren, rēnis*, a mermaid: and also *foror, bris*, a sister: and *uxor, bris*, a wife, are feminines.

Neuters,

II. **T**Hese nouns of one syllable bee of the Neuter gender, *mel, mellis*, honey: *fel, fellis*, gall: *lac, lactis*, milk: *far, farris*, bread-corn: *ver, veris*, the spring: *cor, cordis*, a heart: *vas, vasis*, a vessel: *os, ossis*, a bone: and *os, oris*, a mouth: *rūs, ruris*, the country: *ebus, thuris*, frankincense: *iūs, juris*, right: *crūs, cruris*, the leg: *pus, puris*, corrupt matter. 2. Nouns in *al*, as *capital, salis*, a quail. And in *ar*, as, *laquear, aris*, a bank. 3. *Halec, lecis*, an herrin, is of the feminine and Neuter gender.

III. These



4. *Mascula in er, or, & os; cen crator, conditor, heros.*

5. *Sic torrens, nefrens, oriens, cum pluribus in dens,*

*Quale bidens, quando pro instrumento reperitur.*

6 *Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamasque, rapésque,*

*Atque lebes, Cures, magness, utramque meridi-*

*Es, nomen quinta. 7. Et quæ componuntur ab affe,*

*ut dodrans, semis. 8. Jungantur Mascula Samnis,*

*Hydrops, nycticorax, thorax, & mascula vervex,*

*Phoenix, & bombyx, pro vermiculo. Attamen ex his*

*Sunt muliebre genus, Syren, nec non soror, uxor.*

II. **S**unt neutralia & hæc monosyllaba nomina, mel, Neutr.  
(fel,

Lac, far, ver, cor, xs, vas vasis, os-ossis, & oris,

Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus, Et in al polyssyllaba, in arque,

Ut capital, laquear: Neutrum hæc, & muliebre,

III. Sunt

Doubtfuls.

III. **T** Hese nouns be of the Doubtful gender. *Pytho, bnis*, a spirit of Propheſſe, *ſcorbs, bu,* a ditch: *ſerpens, pentis* a ſerpent: *bubo, bnis* an owl: *rudens, dentis*, a cable: *grus, gruis*, a crane: *Perdix, dicis* a partridge: *lynx, cis*, a ſpotted beaſt: *limax, matris* a ſnail: *ſtirps, pis*, a ſtock: *calx, cis* an hee, *dies, diis* a day, is only maſculine in the plural number.

Commons.

IV. **T** Hese nouns be of the Common of two genders: *Parens, rentis* a parent: *autor, toris* an author: *infantis, fantis*, a babe: *adolescens, ſcentis*, a youth: *dux, ducis*, a leader: *illex, legis*, a lawleſſe perſon: *heras, rédis*, an heir: *exlex, legis*, an outlaſt. Words compounded of *frons, tis*, a forehead: *as, biſfrontis*, one having two foreheads: *cuſtos, ſtodis*, a keeper: *bar, boris* a neat: *fur, furis*, a thief: *ſus, ſuis*, a ſwine: *ſacerdos, dotis* a prieſt.

## Chap. 9.

Of the third Special Rule, and it's Exceptions.

III.  
A noun encreaſing ſhort is of the Maſculine gender. Except Feminines.

**A** Noun is of the maſculine gender, if the laſt ſyllable but one of the genitive caſe ſingular increaſing, ſound ſhort; as, *ſanguis, ſanguinis*, blood.

I. **A** Noun of more than two ſyllables, ending in *do*, which makes *dinis*; as, *dulcèdo, dinis*, ſweetneſſe; and in *go*, which makes *ginis*; as, *compago, ginis*, a joint; are of the feminine gender. 2. Add, *Virgo, ginis* a maid; *grando, dinis*, hail; *fides, dei*, faith; *compens, pedis*, letters; *teges, getis*, a mat; *seges, getis*, ſtanding coyn; *arbor, boris*, a tree; *hyems, emis*, winter; *bacchar, charis*.

III. **S**unt dubia haec Python, scorps, serpens, bubo, Dubia.  
rudens, grus.

Perdix, lynx, lymax, stirps, pro trunco, pedis & calce;

Adde dies numero tantum, nam esto secundo.

IV. **S**unt Commune, parent, aut & que, infans, adole- Communia  
scens.

Dux, illex, hæres, exlex; à fronte creata,

ut bifrons; custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos.

Cap. 9.

De tertia Speciali Regula, & ejus  
exceptionibus.

**N**omen, crescentis penultima si genitivi,  
Sit gravis, ut sanguis, genitivo sanguinis; est  
(ma.) Nomen gra-  
viter cre-  
scens, est  
masculinū.

I. **F**æ minei generis sit hyperdissyllabon in do.  
Quod dinis; atque in go, quod dat ginis in geni.  
Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis, idque (tuo  
Monstrat compago, compaginis. 2. Adjice Virgo,  
Grando, fides, compes, reges, & seges, arbor, hyemsque:  
Sic

Excipiuntur  
Fæminina,

charis, the herb Ladies-globe, or cloven-spikenard  
 findon, dōnis, fine linnen: Gorgon, gōnis, the monster  
 Gorgon: icon, cōnis, an image: Amazon, zōnis, an A-  
 mazon. 3. Greek nouns ending in as, as, lampas, pūdis,  
 a lamp. Or in is, as, jaspis, spādis, jasper: cassis, sēdis,  
 an helmer: cuspi, spīdis, a spear-point. 4. One word  
 in us, as, pecus, cādis, small-cattle. 5. To these add  
 forfex, ficis, a pair of shears, pellex, licis, an harlot  
 Carex, ricis, sedg: supellex, lectilis, household-stuff: ap-  
 pendix, dicis, an appendix: Histrix, stricis, an hedge-  
 hog: coxendix, dictis, an hip: filix, licis, fern. 6. Halcy-  
 on, ovis, a Kings fisher: and mulier, liēris, a woman  
 may be put in this rank, or rule.

## Neuters.

II. **A** Noun signifying a thing without life, is of  
 the neuter gender, if it end in a; as, Problem  
 mātis, a problem: In en; as, omen, ominis, luck. In an  
 as, jubar, bāris, the sun-beam. In ur; as, jecur, cōris,  
 the liver. In us; as, onus, uēris, a burden. In put  
 as, occiput, cipitis, the hinder part of the head. 2. Ye  
 of these, pecten, ctinis, a comb: furfur, furis, bran, are  
 masculines. 3. These are neuters, Cadaver, vērīs, a car-  
 cass: verber, bēris, a stripe: iter, tēivis, a journey: sube-  
 bēris, cork: tuber, bēris, a toad-stool: uber, bēris, a dug-  
 ging-iber, bēris, ginger: laser, seris, the herb Benjamin  
 cicer, aeres, a betch: piper, pēris, pepper: papaver, vērīs,  
 poppy: sifer, seris, a parsnip: filer, levis, an officer.  
 4. Aquor, vērīs, the sea: marmor, vērīs, a marble: and  
 alor, dōris, wheat, are neuters. 5. And so is pecus, cat-  
 tle, when it makes pecōris, in the Genitive Case.

## Doubtfuls.

III. **T** Hese nouns are of the Doubtful gender  
 cardo, dānis, the hing of a doo: margo, gō-  
 nis, a margent: cinis, vērīs, ashes: obex, bicis, a bolt  
 pulvis

*Sic bacchar, sindon, Gorgon, icon, & Amazon.*

3 *Græcula in as vel in is finita; ut, Lampas, Jaspis,*

*Et cassis, cuspis. 4 Vox una pecus pecudis dans.*

5 *His forfex, pellex, carex, simul atque supellex,*

*Appendix, histrix, coxendix, adde filixque.*

6 *Halcyon, & mulier, possunt hâc classe reponi.*

II. **E** *St neutrale genus signans rem non animatam, Neutra.*

*Nomen in a; ut, probléma; en, ut, omen; ar, ut jubar;*  
*ur dans,*

*ut jecur; us, ut onus; put, ut occiput. 2 Attamen ex his*

*Mascula sunt pecten, fursur. 3 Sunt neutra cadaver,*

*Verber, iter, suber, pro fungo tuber, & uber,*

*Gingiber, & lascer, cicor, & piper, atque papaver,*

*Et fiser, atque filer. 4 Neutra æquor, marmor, adorque.*

5 *Atque pecus, quando pecoris facit in Genitivo.*

III. **S** *unt dubii generis cardo, margo, cinis, obex, Dubia.*

D

Pulvis

*pulvis, veris, dust* : *adeps, dipis, fat* : *forceps, cipis, a pair of tongs* : *Pumex, micis, a pumice-stone* : *ramex, micis, burrsness* : *anas, nat is, a duck* : *imbrex, bricis, a gutter-tile* : *culex, licis, a gnat* : *natrix, tricis, a water-snake* : *onyx, nicis, the nail of ones hand*, with its compounds, and *flex, licis, a flint*, though these be rather used as Masculines.

## Commons,

IV. **T**Hese nouns be of the common of two gender, *vigil, gil is, a watchman*, *pugil, gil is, a champion*, *exsul, sul is, a banished man*, *praesul, sul is, a super-intendent*, *Homo, minis, a man*, *nemo* wants the Genitive case, and in the Dative makes *nemini*, no body, *martyr, tyris, a martyr*. *Ligur, gur is, one of Liguria*, *augur, gur is, a southsayer*, *Arcas, cad is, an Arcadian*, *Antistes, sit is, a President*, *miles, lit is, a soldier*, *pedes, dit is, a footman*, *interpres, pret is, an interpreter*, *comes, mit is, a companion*, *hospes, spit is, an host*, or *guest*, *ales, lites, a bird of wing*, *Prases, fid is, a President*, *Princeps, cip is, a Prince*, *avceps, cup is, a Fowler*, *eques, quit is, an horseman*, *obfes, fid is, an hostage*.  
2. And many other nouns derived of verbs; as, *conjug, jug is, an husband* or *a wife*, *iudex, dicis, a judge*, *vindex, dicis, a rebenger*, *opifex, fic is, a workman*, and *aruspex, spic is, a southsayer*.

## Chap. 10.

## Of the Genders of Adjectives.

II. General Rules of Adjectives,  
1 Of one termination,  
2 Of two terminations

I. **A**Djectives of one termination are of all the three genders; as, *hic, haec, & hoc felix, licis, happy*, *hic, haec & hoc audax, dacis, bold*.

II. Adjectives, if they have two terminations, the first is of the Common of two gender; the second, is of the Neuter; as, *hic & haec omnis, & hoc omne, all*.

III. But

Pulvis, adeps, forceps, pumex, ramex, anas, imbrex,

Adde culex, natrix, & onyx, cum prole, filéxque.

Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula dici et usus.

IV. **C**ommunis generis sunt ista, vigil, pugil, exsul, Communia

Præsul, homo, nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, & Arcas,

Antistes, miles, pedes, interpretes, comes, hospes,

Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obsec,

2. Atque alia à verbis quæ nomina multa creantur,

ut, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, & aruspex.

Cap. 10.

De Generibus Adjectivorum.

I. **A**djectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem,

ut felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub unâ.

II. Sub geminâ si voce cadant, velut omnis, & omne,

Vox commune duâ prior est, Vox altera neutrum.

II. Regula  
generales  
Adjectivorum.  
I Unius vo-  
cis.

2 Geminæ  
vocis.

3 Of three terminations,

Except  
1 Adjectives  
like Substantives.

2 Of Adjectives that are declin'd by *er* and *is*.

III. But if Adjectives do vary three Terminations; as, *Sacer, sacra, sacrum*, **holy**: the first termination is Masculine, the second is Feminine, and the third is Neuter.

1 But some are by declining, almost Substantives, yet by nature and use, rather Adjectives: such are *Pauper, peris*, **poor**: *puer, beris*, **of ripe age**: *degeneris*, **one that goes out of kinde**: *uber, beris*, **plentiful**: *dives vitis*, **rich**: *locuples plētis*, **wealthy**: *sospes spētis*, **safe**: *comes mitis*, **a companion**: *superstes stitis*, **a survivor**, and some others, which due reading will teach.

2 These Nouns have a certain manner of declining proper to themselves; *Campester*, **of the plain field**: *volucer, swift in flight*: *celeber, famous*: *celer, swift*: *saluber, wholesome*. To which add *Pedester*, **of a footman**: *equester*, **of an horseman**: *acer, sharp*, *Paluster*, **of a fen**: *alacer, cheerful*: *sylvester*, **of a wood**. And these you shall decline thus; *Hic celer, hæc celeris, hoc celere, swift*: or, *Hic* and *Hæc celeris* and *hoc celere, swift*, &c.

## Chap. II.

### Of the first Declension.

**D** Declension is the variation of a word by Cases. There be five declensions of nouns.

There be five Declensions,

A Noun is known of what Declension it is by the ending of the Genitive case singular; for the Ge-

nitive case of the		1 <sup>st</sup>		2 <sup>d</sup>		3 <sup>d</sup>		4 <sup>th</sup>		5 <sup>th</sup>	
ends in		<i>a</i>		<i>i</i>		<i>is</i>		<i>us</i>		<i>ei</i>	

The



III. *At si tres variant voces, sacer, ut sacra, sacrum ;*

*Vox prima est mas, altera fœmina, tertia neutrum.*

1 *At sunt quæ flexu propè Substantiva vocares ;*

*Adjectiva tamen naturâ usque reperta.*

*Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber,*

*Et dives, locuples, sospes, comes, atque superstes ;*

*Cum paucis aliis quæ lectio iusta docebit.*

2 *Hæc propriū quendā sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent,*

*Campester, volucer, cèleber, celer, atque saluber :*

*Junge pedester, equester, & acer, junge paluster,*

*At alacer sylvester : At hæc tu sic variabis,*

*Hic celer, hæc céleris, nentro hoc célere, aut aliter sic,*

*Hic atq. hæc céleris, rursum hoc célere est tibi nentri.*

Adjectiva  
trium vocis,  
in prima  
sunt Mascu-  
lini in secun-  
da fœminini  
in terti  
neutrius ge-  
neris.

Excipe  
1 Adjectiva  
propè Sub-  
stantiva.

2 Adjectiva  
quæ per *er* &  
*is*, variantur

Cap. II.

*De Declinatione primâ.*

**D**eclinatio est variatio dictionis per Casus.  
Sunt autem Declinationes nominum quinque.

Declinatio-  
nes sunt  
quinque.

Dignoscitur nomen cujus sit Declinationis ex  
Terminatione genitivi singularis ; desinit enim  
genitivus || 1<sup>mæ</sup> || 2<sup>dæ</sup> || 3<sup>tiæ</sup> || 4<sup>tæ</sup> || 5<sup>tæ</sup> ||

*in || æ || i || is || ns || ei ||*

D 3

Ge-

The Genitive case is formed of the Nominative, (which is the first word) by changing the Termination; and other cases are formed of the Genitive.

The Vocative in the singular number; is, for the most part, like the Nominative; and in the plural alwaies.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the Nominative, the Accusative, and Vocative cases alike in both numbers, which three cases end in *a* in the plural.

The Dative and Ablative plural are alwaies alike.

The Genitive plural in many words, admits a Syncope, i. e. the loss of a middle letter or syllable.

Nouns of the first be declined like *Musa*.

The first declension is of Latine nouns (for the most part Feminines) not encreasing, ending in *a*; which are declined like *Musa*, a Song.

The Terminations of the first Declension are	Singularly in the	Nominative	} case,	a	Musa
		Genitive		æ	Musæ
		Dative		æ	Musæ
		Accusative		am	Musam
		Vocative		a	Musa
		Ablative		a	Musâ
	Plurally in the	Nominative	} case,	æ	Musæ
		Genitive		arum	Musarum
		Dative		is	Musis
		Accusative		as	Musas
		Vocative		æ	Musæ
		Ablative		is	Musis
The Example or Type thereof is					

Genitivus fit à Nominativo, qui est prima vox mutatâ Terminatione; alii autem casus à Genitivo formantur.

Vocativus singularis *plerumque* similis est Nominativo; pluralis semper.

Nomina neutrius generis habent nominativum, accusativum, & vocativum similes in utroque numero; qui tres casus in plurali desinunt in *a*.

Dativus, & Ablativus plurales semper sunt similes.

Genitivus plurales in complurimus *Syncopen* admittit.

Prima declinatio est nominum Latinorum (plerumque foeminarum) non crescentium in *a*; quæ variantur sicut *Musa*.

Nomina primæ variantur ut *Musa*.

Primæ Declinationis Terminationes sunt	Singulariter,	Nominativo	casu,	<i>a</i>	Typus est	<i>Musa</i>
		Genitivo		<i>e</i>		<i>Musæ</i>
		Dativo		<i>e</i>		<i>Musæ</i>
		Accusativo		<i>am</i>		<i>Musam</i>
		Vocativo		<i>a</i>		<i>Musa</i>
		Ablativo		<i>â</i>		<i>Musâ</i>
	Pluraliter,	Nominativo	casu,	<i>e</i>	Eius Exemplum sive Typus est	<i>Musæ</i>
		Genitivo		<i>arum</i>		<i>Musarum</i>
		Dativo		<i>is</i>		<i>Musis</i>
		Accusativo		<i>as</i>		<i>Musas</i>
		Vocativo		<i>e</i>		<i>Musæ</i>
		Ablativo		<i>is</i>		<i>Musis</i>

*As* is found in the Genitive case singular in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Pater-familias*, **the good man of the house.**

The antients dissolved *a* into *aī*; as, *aulaī*, for *aula*.

*Filia, nata, dea, equa*, with some few others; make their Dative and ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from their Masculines, *filii, natus, Deus equus*, which follow the form of the second declension.

This Declension is also of Greek Nouns, viz. Masculines in *as* and *es*, and feminines in *a* and *e*.

Nouns in *as* and *a* make their accusative in *am*, and *an*, sometimes in the Poets; as.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accu.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Aneas</i>	<i>Anea</i>	<i>Anea</i>	<i>Anea, an</i>	<i>Anea</i>	<i>Anea</i>
<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiæ, an</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maiâ</i>

Greek words in the plural number are declined like Latine.

*Es* makes in the accusative case *en*, in the Vocative and Ablative *e*, or *a*.

Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Acc. | Voc. or Abl.

*Anchises* | *Anchisæ* | *Anchisæ* | *Anchisen* | *Anchise, vel Anchisæ*

*E* makes the Genitive in *es*, the Dative in *e*, the Accusative in *en*, the Vocative and Ablative in *e*; as,

Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Accu. || Voc. & Abl

*Penelope* || *Penelopes* || *Penelope* || *Penelopen* || *Penelope*

Some add hereunto Hebrew words in *am*, as *Adam Ada*, which are better reduced to the second Declension by putting to us, as *Adamus, Adami, Adam*.

Chap.

As in Genitivo reperitur ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, *Pater-familias*.

Prisci dissolvebant *e* in *ai*; ut, *aulai* pro *aulæ*.

*Filia, nata, dea, equa*, cum paucis aliis Dat. & Ablativum pluralem mittunt in *abus*, ut distinguantur à suis Masculinis, *Filius, natus, Deus, equus*, quæ sequuntur formam secundæ Declinationis.

Est etiam hæc declinatio Græcorum Masculinorum in *as*, & *es*, & Femininorum in *a*, & *e*,

*As* & *a* accusativum *am* faciunt, & *an* aliquando apud Poëtâs; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accu.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Aneas</i>	<i>Æneæ</i>	<i>Æneæ</i>	<i>Æneam, an</i>	<i>Æneæ</i>	<i>Æneâ</i>
<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maie</i>	<i>Maie</i>	<i>Maïam, an</i>	<i>Maïa</i>	<i>Maïâ</i>

Græca in plurali declinantur ut Latina.

*Es* in accusativo *en* sumit, in vocativo vel ablativo *e*, vel *a*; ut,

Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Accu. | Voc. & Abl.

*Anchises* | *Anchisa* | *Anchisa* | *Anchisen* | *Anchise*, vel *Anchis*

*E* Genitivum in *es*, mittit, dativum in *e* accusativum in *en*, vocativum & ablativum in *e*; ut,

Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Accu. || Voc. & Abl.

*Penelope* || *Penelopes* || *Penelope* || *Penelopen* || *Penelope*

Sunt qui huc addunt Hebræa quædam in *am*; ut, *Adam Ade*, quæ tamen melius ad secundam declinationem reducuntur, addendo *us*; ut, *Adamus, Adami*.

Cap.

## Chap. 12.

## Of the second Declension.

Of the Second like  
Magister,  
Dominus, or  
Regnum.

The second Declension is (for the most part) of Masculines in *us*, as *Magister*, *a Master*, *Dominus*, *a Lord*, or of Neuters in *um*, as *Regnum*, *a kingdom*.

The Terminations of this Declension are

Singularly,	N.	<i>r, us, um</i>
	G.	<i>i</i>
	D.	<i>o</i>
	A.	<i>um,</i>
	V.	<i>e, um</i>
	A.	<i>o</i>

Plurally,	N.	<i>i, a</i>
	G.	<i>orum</i>
	D.	<i>is</i>
	A.	<i>os, a</i>
	V.	<i>i, a</i>
	A.	<i>is</i>

The Examples or Types of it are

<i>Magister</i>	<i>Dominus</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regni</i>
<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
<i>Magistrum</i>	<i>Dominum</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
<i>Magister</i>	<i>Domine</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>

<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
<i>Magistorum</i>	<i>Dominorum</i>	<i>Regnorum</i>
<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominiis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>
<i>Magistros</i>	<i>Dominos</i>	<i>Regna</i>
<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominiis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>

When the Nominative endeth in *us*, the Vocative endeth in *e*; but *Deus* **God**, maketh *o Deus*, and *Filius* **a son**, maketh *o fili*.

Proper names of Men in *ius*, make their Vocative in *i*; as, Nom. *Georgius*, **George**, Voc. *o Georgi*.

*Agnus*, **a lamb**; *lucus*, **a grove**; *chorus*, **a quire**; *fluvius*, **a river**, do make their Vocative case in *e* and in *us*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
We read	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divorum</i>	<i>Divis</i>	<i>Divos</i>	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divis</i>
in the Plural number	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Deorum</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Dios</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>gous</i>
		<i>Deum</i>				<i>Diu</i>
						Greek

S  
rum  
noru

Terminationis hujus Declinationis sunt

in e

P  
No

e &

Leg  
pli

Cap. 12.

De secunda Declinatione.

Secunda Declinatio est (plerumque) Masculinorum in *us*, *er*, *ut* *Magister* Neutorum in *um*; *ut*, *Secundæ*; *ut*, *Magister*, *Dominus*, *Regnum*.

Terminationis hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter,	N.	<i>us, um,</i>	five Typi sunt	<i>Magister</i>	<i>Dominus</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		G.	<i>i</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regni</i>
		D.	<i>o</i>		<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
		A.	<i>um</i>		<i>Magistrum</i>	<i>Dominum</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		V.	<i>us, e, um,</i>		<i>Magister</i>	<i>Domine</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		A.	<i>o</i>		<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>i, a</i>	Ejus Exempla,	<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		G.	<i>orum</i>		<i>Magistorum</i>	<i>Dominorum</i>	<i>Regnorum</i>
		D.	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>
		A.	<i>os, a</i>		<i>Magistros</i>	<i>Dominos</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		V.	<i>i, a</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		A.	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>

Quando Nominativus exit in *us*; Vocativus exit in *e*; sed *Deus* format *ô Deus*, & *Filius*, *ô fili*.

Propria Hominum in *ius*; faciunt Vocativum in *i*, *ut*, Nom. *Georgius*, Voc. *ô Georgi*.

*Agnus*, *lucius*, *chorus*, *fluvius*, formant Vocativum in *e* & in *us*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ablat.
Legimus plurali	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divorum</i>	<i>Divis</i>	<i>Divos</i>	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divis</i>
	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Deorum</i>	<i>Diis</i>	<i>Deos</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Diis</i>
		<i>Deum</i>				

Nemina

Greek Nouns of this declension, have three Terminations: *eus* of the Masculine, *os* of the Masculine and Feminine, and *on* of the Neuter Gender.

*Eus* makes the Genitive case in *ei*, or *eos*, the dative in *ei*, the accusative in *ea*, the vocative in *eu*, the ablative in *eo*.

|| Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Acc. || Voc. || Abl. ||

|| Orpheus || Orphei, pheos || Orphei || Orphea || Orpheu || Orpheo ||

*Os* makes the accusative case in *on*; as, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Delo*, Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Abl. *Delo*.

But Attick Nouns in *os* make the Genitive in *o*; as *Androgeos* and *ogeo*, &c. And nouns contracted in *us*, make their Vocative in *u*; as, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

*On* is declined like other Neuters; as, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilii*, Dat. *Ilio*, Accus. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Abl. *Ilio*.

### Chap. 13. Of the third Declension.

Of the third,  
like *Lapis*,  
or *Caput*,

**T**he third declension is very diverse. For it contains all Genders, and (at the least) eleven Terminations in the Nominative case singular: in *a*, *e*, *i*, *is*, *o*, *us*, *us*, *us*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singular.	Nom.	diverse.	The Examples or Types of it are	<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Gen.	<i>is</i>		<i>Lapidis</i>	<i>Capitis</i>
		Dat.	<i>i</i>		<i>Lapi di</i>	<i>Capiti</i>
		Acc.	<i>em</i>		<i>Lapidem</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Voc.	diverse.		<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Abl.	<i>e</i>		<i>Lapide</i>	<i>Canire</i>
	Plural.	Nom.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Gen.	<i>um</i>		<i>Lapidum</i>	<i>Capitum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Voc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>



Nomina Græca hujus declinationis tres habent terminationes; viz. *eus* Masculini, *os* Masculini & Feminini, & *on* Neutrus.

*Eus* Genitivum facit in *ei*, vel *eos*, dativum in *ei*, accusativum in *ea*, vocativum in *eu*, ablativum in *eo*.

|| Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Acc. || Voc. || Abl. ||

|| *Orpheus* || *Orphei*, *phos* || *Orphei* || *Orphæa* || *Orpheu* || *Orphæo* ||

*Os* accusativum in *on* mittit; ut, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Abl. *Delo*.

Sed Attica in *os*, Genitivum in *o* mittunt; *Androgeos* *Androgeo*, & c. Et contracta in *us* formant vocativum in *u*; ut, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

*On* formatur more aliorum Neutorum; ut, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilîi*, Dat. *Ilîo*, Acc. *Ilîon*, Voc. *Ilîon*, Abl. *Ilîo*.

### Cap. 13. De tertia Declinatione.

**T**ertia Declinatio est admodum varia. Continet enim omnia genera, & undecim (ad minimum) Terminationes in Nominativo singulari; *a, e, ei, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x*.

Tertia ut, *Lapis*, aut *Caput*.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter	Nom.	varia	Hujus exempla five Typi sunt	<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Gen.	<i>is</i>		<i>Lapidis</i>	<i>Capitis</i>
		Dat.	<i>i</i>		<i>Lapidi</i>	<i>Capiti</i>
		Acc.	<i>em</i>		<i>Lapidem</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Voc.	varia		<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Abl.	<i>e</i>		<i>Lapide</i>	<i>Capite</i>
	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Gen.	<i>um</i>		<i>Lapidum</i>	<i>Capitum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Voc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>

What Nouns  
make the  
Accusative  
in *im*.

in *im* and *em*

The Abl. in *i*

The Accusative cases of some words are declined only in *im*; as, *vis*, **Strength**: *ravis*, **hoariness**: *sitis*, **thirst**: *tussis*, **a cough**: *maguderis*, **the stalk of the herb Benjamin**: *Charybdis*, **a gulf**: and *amussis*, **a Carpenters line**: To which we may add the names of Rivers; as, *Aravis*, **the Doan in France**: *Tybris*, **Tybris by Rome**.

Some make their accusative in *im* and *em* indifferently; as, *Pelvis*, **a Basin**: *turris*, **a tower**: *buris*, **a plow-stilt**: *puppis*, **a poop of a ship**: *torquis*, **a chain to wear about ones neck**: *securis*, **an ax**: *restis*, **a rope**: *febris*, **an Ague**: *clavis*, **a key**, *bipennis*, **a twi-ble**: *aqualis*, **a water-pot**: *navis*, **a ship**.

Their Ablative ends in *i* only, whose Accusative ends only in *im*; as, *tussim*, Abl. *tussi*.

Names of months in *er* and *is*, do make their Ablative in *i* only; as, *September*, Abl. *bri*, *Aprilis*, Abl. *li*.

Neuters, ending in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, for the most part make their Ablative in *i*;

as,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Vestigal, Abl. li, toll.} \\ \text{Calcar, Abl. \acute{a}ri, a spur.} \\ \text{Rete, Abl. ti, a net.} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{For Rete in the Ab-} \\ \text{lative, is of Retis.} \end{array} \right.$

Yet these Nouns in *ar*, and *e*, keep *e*, in their Ablative case; as, *Fav*, **bread-corn**: *hepar*, **the liver**: *jubar*, **the sun beam**: *nectar*, **sweet wine**: *gausape*, **a frize**: *praesepe*, **a stall**: *Soracte*, **a hill in Italy**: *Praeneste*, **the city Palestrina**: *Reate*, **the city Reati in Italy**.

Adjectives, having the Nominative common in *is*, or *er*, and the Neuter in *e*, make their Ablative in *i* only; as, *Fortis*, *ti*, **strong**: *Acer*, or *Acris*, *eri*, **sharp**.

Nouns, which take on them the nature of Adjectives, make their Ablative case for the most part in *i*, as *Sodalis*, *li*.

Except

Quorundam Accusativi flectuntur tantum in *im*, Que nomina  
formant Ac-  
cusativa in  
*im*.  
ut, *Vim, ravim, sitim, tussim,*  
*Maguderim, Charybdim, & amussim.*  
Quibus addas & Fluviorum nomina; ut, *Avayim,*  
*Tybrim.*

Quædam Accusativos flectunt in *im*, & *em* com- in *im* & *em*,  
muniter, ut,  
*Pelvis, turris, buris,*  
*Puppis, torquis, securis,*  
*Restis, febris, clavis,*  
*Bipennis, aqualis, navis.*

Quorum Accusativus in *im* tantum definit, *iis* Ab- Ablat. in *i*.  
lativus exit in *i*, ut, *tussim*, Abl. *tussi*.

Mensium nomina in *er*, & *is*, Ablativum in *i* so-  
lùm mittunt, ut, *September*, Abl. *bri*, *Aprilis*, Abl. *li*.

Neutra desinentia in *al*, *ar*, & *e*, Ablativum magna  
ex parte mittunt in *i*,

ut,  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Vestigal, Abl. li.} \\ \text{Calcar, Abl. ári,} \\ \text{Rete, Abl. ti.} \end{array} \right\} \text{Nam Rete in Ablativo}$   
est à Retis.

Hæc tamen in *ar* & *e* retinent *e* in Ablativo; *Far,*  
*hepar, jubar, nectar, gausape; præsepe, Soraeste, Præne-*  
*ste, Reate.*

Adjectiva, quæ Nominativum communem in *is* vel,  
*er* & *e* Neutrum habent, Ablativum mittunt in *i*; ut,  
*Fortis, forti; Acer vel acris, acri.*

Quæ Adjectivorum naturam induunt, majori ex  
parte mittunt Ablativum in *i*, ut, *Sodalis, li.*

in *e* and *i*.

Except Proper names; as, *Clemens, tis, Clement.*  
Nouns whose Accusative cases end in *em* or *im*,  
make their Ablative in *e*, and *i*; as, *Puppis, Accus.*  
*pem vel pim, Abl. pe vel pi.*

*Par* also, with its compounds, makes both *e* and *i*.  
All nouns of the Comparative degree; as, *melior,*  
**better**, and the rest of the *Adjectives*, except those  
above mentioned in *er* or *is*. But *Pauper, poor;* *de-*  
*gener, out of kinde;* *uber, plentiful;* *hospes, safe,* and  
*hospes, an host,* make their Ablative in *e* only.

Some Substantives, as, *Ignis, fire, amnis, a river,*  
*anguis, a snake, supellex, household-stuff, vectis, a*  
*bow-bar, unguis, a nail, or hoof:* Gentiles, as, *Arpi-*  
*nas, one of Arpinum;* and Verbals in *trix*; as, *Victrix,*  
**a Conqueress**, make their Ablative in *e* and *i*.

Nom. plural  
in *ia*.

Neuters whose Ablative ends in *i*, or in *e* and  
*i*, make their Nominative plural in *ia*; as, *Fortis, tia,*  
**Strong, felix, libia, happy.**

Except Comparatives; as, *fortiora, stronger,* but  
*Plus* makes *plura* and *pluria, more.*

Is &amp; eis,

Some Nouns make their Nominative & Accusative  
plural in *es* or *eis* the diphthong; as, *Omnes, or omnesh*  
**all**, and *eis* is sometimes contracted into *is*; as, *Sardis.*

Gen. in *ium*.

Of Ablatives in *i* only, or in *e* or *i*, the Genitive  
case plural ends in *ium*; as, *utili utilium, profitable;*  
*puppi vel pe, puppium, Except Comparatives, as, meliorum.*

And

[ <i>Supplicum,</i> ]	[ <i>Supplex, a suppliant.</i>
[ <i>Complicum,</i> ]	[ <i>Complex, a partner.</i>
[ <i>Strigilum,</i> ]	[ <i>Strigil, an host-coß</i>
[ <i>Artificum,</i> ]	[ <i>Artifex, an artificer</i>
{ <i>Veterum,</i> }	{ <i>Vetus, old.</i>
[ <i>Vigilum,</i> ]	[ <i>Vigil, a watchman</i>
[ <i>Memorum,</i> ]	[ <i>Memor, mindful.</i>
[ <i>Inopum,</i> ]	[ <i>Inops, poor.</i>
[ <i>Pugilum,</i> ]	[ <i>Pugil, a champion.</i>

But *plus* maketh *plurimum*.

When

Excipe propria; ut, *Clemens, se.*

Nomina quorum Accusativa per *em* & *im* finiunt, formant Ablativos in *e* & *i*; ut, *Puppis*, Acc. *pem* vel *pim*, Abl. *pe* vel *pi*.

in *e* & *i*;

*Par*, quoque cum compositis *e* & *i* habet. Comparativa etiam, ut *melior*, & reliqua Adjectiva, præter ea quæ suprà dicta sunt in *er* & *is*. Sed *Pauper*, *degener*, *uber*, *sospes*, *hospes*, in *e* tantum faciunt Ablativum.

Substantiva quædam; ut,

*Ignis*, *amnis*, *anguis*,

*Supellex*, *vestis*, *unguis*.

Gentilia; ut, *Arpinās* : & Verbalia in *trix*; ut *Victrix*, Ablativum mittunt in *e* & *i*.

Neutra, quorum Ablativus exit in *i*, vel in *e* & *i*, Nom. pl. in *ia*.  
Nominativum pluralem mittunt in *ia*; ut, *fortis*, *fortia*, *felix*, *felicia*.

Præter Comparativa; ut, *fortiora*; *Plus* habet *plura* & *pluria*.

Nonnulla Nominativum & Accusativum pluralem mittunt per *es* & *eis* Diphthongum; ut, *Omnes* vel *omnes*. *Eis* autem aliquando contrahitur in *is*; ut, *Sardis*.

Es & eis.

Ex his Ablativis in *i* tantum, vel in *e* & *i*, fit pluraliter Genitivus in *ium*; ut, *utili*, *utilium*; *puppi* vel *puppe*, *puppium*. Præter Comparativa; ut, *meliorum*.

Gen. in *ium*.

Item præter ista;

*Supplicum*, *complicum*, *strigilum*;

*Artificum*, *veterum*, *vigilum*;

*Memorum*, *inopum*, *pugilum*.

At *plus*, *plurimum* format.

When the Nominative cases singular end with two Consonants, the Genitives plural end in *ium*; as, *Par s, Partium*.

Except	{	<i>Hyemum</i>	}	of	<i>Hyems</i> winter.
		<i>Principum</i>			<i>Princeps</i> a Prince.
		<i>Forcipum</i>			<i>Forceps</i> a pair of tongs
		<i>Municipum</i>			<i>Municeps</i> a free-man.
		<i>Inopum</i>			<i>Inops</i> poor.
		<i>Cœlibum</i>			<i>Cœlebs</i> a single-man.
		<i>Clientum</i>			<i>Clients</i> a Client.
		<i>Participum</i>			<i>Particeps</i> a Partner.

When like syllables are found in the Nominative and Genitive cases singular, the Genitive case plural ends in *ium*; as, *collis*, a hill, makes *collum*.

To which add, { *Virium*, } of { *Vis* strength.  
 { *Salium*, } { *Sal* salt.  
 { *Ditium*, } { *Dis* rich.

{ *Manium* } of { *Manes* spirits.  
 { *Penatium* } { *Penates* household-gods.  
 { *Litium* } { *Lis* controverſie.

Yet except, { *Vatum* } of { *Vates* a Poet.  
 { *Juvenum* } { *Juvenis* a youth.  
 { *Canum* } { *Canis* a dog.

{ *Opum* } of { *Opes* wealth.  
 { *Apum* } { *Apes* a Bee.  
 { *Panum* } { *Panis* bread.

As a pound makes *assum*, *mas* a male, *mayum*,  
*vas-vadis* a surety *vadum*, *nox* night *noctium*, *nix*  
*snow* *nivium*, os a bone *ossium*, *faux* a jaw *fauci-*  
*um*, *mus* a mouse *murium*, *caro* flesh *carnium*, *cor* a  
 heart *cordium*.

*Uum*.

*Ales* a bird makes *alituum*, and *cœlites* the hea-  
 venly inhabitants *cœlituum*, by taking to them *u*.

BONN

Quando Nominativi singulares duabus consonantibus finiuntur, genitivi plurales excut in *ium*; ut, *Pars, partium.*

Excipe,

*Hyemum, principum, forctum, municipum;*  
*Inopum, cœlibum, clientum, participum.*

Ubi in Nominativis & Genitivis singularibus reperiuntur pares syllabæ, Genitivus pluralis exit in *ium*; ut, *Collis, collium.*

His adde;

*Virium, salium, ditium,*  
*Maxium, penatium, litium.*

Excipe tamen,

*Vatum, juvenum, canum;*  
*Opum, apum, panum.*

*As* format *assium; mas, marium; vas-vadis, vadium;*  
*nox, noctium; nix, nivium; os, ossium; faux, fancium;*  
*mas, murium; caro, carniū; cor, cordium.*

*Ales* facit *alitiū; & cœlites, cœlitium; assumen-*  
*do, u.* *Uum.*

*Bovum* of *bos*, *bovis*, an *Or*, is an irregular word, as also *lobus* and *bubus*, for *bovibus*.

*Orum* & *ium*

The Names of Feasts, which are only plural, make their Genitive case sometimes in *orum*; as, *Agonalia, liorum*: sometime in *ium*; as, *Floralia, lium*: and sometimes both in *orum*, and *ium*; as, *Saturnalia, liorum*, and *lium*.

*Abl* in *is* & *ibus*

Neuters singular in *a*, make the Dative and Ablative plural in *is* or *ibus*; as, *Problema, tis*, vel *matibus*. So also *Quinquatria, triis*, vel *tribus*.

Words derived from the Greek, when they are declined after their own manner, imitate these examples.

Sing.	Nom	Gen	Dat.	Acc.	V.	Abl.
<i>Titan</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>mos</i>	<i>ani</i>	<i>ana</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ane</i>
<i>Arcas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ados</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>adz</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ade</i>
<i>Phyllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>idos</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ide</i>
<i>Genesis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>us, or</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>antos</i>	<i>unti</i>	<i>anta</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>unte</i>
<i>Terbys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>yos</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
<i>ach: les</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>

Some of these make the Genitive plural in *us* and *ium*.

## Chap. 14.

### Of the fourth Declension.

Of the fourth like *Manus*, or

*Corvus*

**T**He fourth Declension hath only two terminations in the Nominative case singular,

{ *us*, Masculine and Feminine, } as { *Manus*,  
{ *n*, Neuter, } { *Corvus*.

The



*Bovum* à *bos*, *bovis*, anomalum est; ut etiam *bobus* vel *bubus*, pro *bovibus*.

Festorum nomina quæ tantum pluralia sunt, Genitivum aliquando in *orum*; ut, *Agonalia*, *liorum*: aliquando in *ium*; ut, *Floralia*, *lium*: aliquando tam in *orum*, quam in *ium* mittunt; ut, *Saturnalia*, *liorum*, & *lium*.

*orum* & *ium*

Neutra Græca singularia in *a*, faciunt dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *is* & *ibus*; ut *Problema*, *matibus*, vel *matīs*. Sic etiam *Quinquatria*, *triis*, vel *tribus*.

Abl. in *i* & *bus*.

Græco fonte derivata, quando juxta linguæ suæ morem variantur, hæc exempla imitantur.

Sing.	N.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc	V.	Abl.	
<i>Titan</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>anos</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>ana</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ine</i>	Horum nonnulla formant Genitivum pluralem in <i>orum</i> vel <i>ium</i> .
<i>Arcas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ado</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ado</i>	
<i>Phyllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ios</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ido</i>	
<i>Geacſe</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is, eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>m, in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>untos</i>	<i>unti</i>	<i>unta</i>	<i>ut</i>	<i>unte</i>	
<i>Tethys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>yos</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>	
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	
<i>achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	

Cap. 14.

De quarto Declinatione.

Quarta Declinatio duas tantum sortitur terminationes in Recto singulari,

Quarta, ut  
*Manus* aut

{ Masculinorum & Fæmininorū in *us*, } ut { *Manus*; } Cor. II.  
{ Neutrorum in *u*, } { *Cornu*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,	Nom.	us, u	The Examples, or Types of it are	Manus	Cornu
		Gen.	ūs, u		Manūs	Cornū
		Dat.	ui, u		Manui	Cornū
		Acc.	um, u		Manum	Cornū
		Voc.	us, u		Manus	Cornū
		Abl.	u, u		Manu	Cornū
	Plurally	Nom.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Gen.	uum		Manuum	Cornuum
		Dat.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus
		Acc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Voc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Abl.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus

Antiently the Genitive singular ended in *i*, and *ūs*, thence the Antients said *fructi* for *fructūs*; and *anūs* for *anūs*.

The most holy name *Jesus*, makes *Jesum* in the Accusative, and in other cases *Jesu*.

The Dative case hath sometimes *u*; as, *fructu* for *fructui*.

These words make their Dative and Ablative plural in *ibus*; viz. *Artus*, a joint: *arcus*, a bow: *tribus*, a stock: *acus*, a needle: *ficus*, a fig: *specus*, a hole: *quercus*, an oak: *lacus*, a lake: *partus*, young; *veru*, a spit: *genu*, a knee.

All other Nouns make *ibus*.

### Chap. 15.

#### Of the fifth Declension.

Of the fifth,  
like *Facies*.

**T**He fifth Declension hath one only termination in *es*; as, *Facies*, a face.

All nouns of this Declension are Feminines; except *Dies*, a day, and *Meredies*, noon-day.

The

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt			
Singulariter,	Nom.	us, u	Ejus Exempli, sive Typi sunt
	Gen.	ūs, u	
	Dat.	ui, u	
	Acc.	um, u	
	Voc.	us, u	
	Abl.	u, u	
Pluraliter,	Nom.	us, ua	Ejus Exempli, sive Typi sunt
	Gen.	uum	
	Dat.	ibus	
	Acc.	us, ua	
	Voc.	us, ua	
	Abl.	ibus	

Olim Genitivus singularis exhibet in *i* & *ūs*; indē Veteres dixerunt *fructi* pro *fructūs*, & *anūs* pro *anūs*.

Sacro-sanctum nomen *Jesus* habet in Accusativo *Jesum*, in reliquis verò casibus *Jesu*.

Dativus interdum *u* habet; ut, *fructu* pro *fructui*.

Hæc Dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *ibus* formant; viz. *Artus, arcus, tribus, acus*;  
*ficus, specus, quercus, lacus*;  
*partus, veru, genu.*

Cætera omnia in *ibus*.

### Cap. 15.

#### De quinta Declinatione.

**Q**uinta Declinatio unicam habet terminationem in *es*; ut, *Facies*. Quinta, ut *Facies*.

Omnia nomina hujus Declinationis sunt fœminina, exceptis *Dies*, & *meridies*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly	Nom.	es	The Example or Type is	<i>Facies</i>	The Genitive singular once ended in <i>es, ii,</i> and <i>e,</i> & the Dative sometimes in <i>e.</i> Some Nouns of the third Declension were declined after this; as, <i>plebs, plebeī.</i> No nouns of this Declension have the Gen. Dat. and Ablative plural, except <i>Res,</i> a thing; <i>Species,</i> a kinde; <i>facies, a face; acies, an edg; dies, a day; meridies, mid-day, or noon:</i>
		Gen.	ei		<i>Faciei</i>	
		Dat.	ei		<i>Faciei</i>	
		Acc.	em		<i>Faciem</i>	
		Voc.	es		<i>Facies</i>	
		Abl.	e		<i>Facie</i>	
	Plurally	Nom.	es		<i>Facies</i>	
		Gen.	erum		<i>Facierum</i>	
		Dat.	ebus		<i>Faciebus</i>	
		Acc.	es		<i>Facies</i>	
		Voc.	es		<i>Facies</i>	
		Abl.	ebus		<i>Faciebus</i>	

Chap. 16. Of the declining of *Adjectives.*

Adjectives of three Terminations, are declined like *Bonus.*

**A**djectives are declined with three Terminations, or three Articles.

Adjectives of three Terminations are varied after the first and second Declension; viz. The termination *r*, like *Magister*; *us*, like *Dominus*; *a*, like *Musa*; *um*, like *Regnum.*

Their Example or Type is,	Singulariter,	Nom.	<i>Bonus</i>		<i>Bona</i>		<i>Bonum</i>
		Gen.	<i>Boni</i>		<i>Bonae</i>		<i>Boni</i>
		Dat.	<i>Bono</i>		<i>Bonae</i>		<i>Bono</i>
		Acc.	<i>Bonum</i>		<i>Bonam</i>		<i>Bonum</i>
		Voc.	<i>Bone</i>		<i>Bona</i>		<i>Bonum</i>
		Abl.	<i>Bono</i>		<i>Bona</i>		<i>Bono</i>
	Pluraliter,	Nom.	<i>Boni</i>		<i>Bonae</i>		<i>Bona</i>
		Gen.	<i>Bonarum</i>		<i>Bonarum</i>		<i>Bonarum</i>
		Dat.	<i>Bonīs</i>		<i>Bonīs</i>		<i>Bonīs</i>
		Acc.	<i>Bonos</i>		<i>Bonas</i>		<i>Bona</i>
		Voc.	<i>Boni</i>		<i>Bonae</i>		<i>Bona</i>
		Abl.	<i>Bonīs</i>		<i>Bonīs</i>		<i>Bonīs</i>

Terminationes hujus Declinat.	Singular.	Nom.	es	Tijus Exemplum sive Typus est.	Facies	Genitivus singularis olim etiam in <i>es, ii, &amp; e</i> , exhibat, & Dativus aliquando in <i>e</i> .
		Gen.	ei		Faciēi	
		Dat.	ei		Faciēi	
		Acc.	em		Faciem	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	e		Facie	
	Plural.	Nom.	es	Tijus Exemplum sive Typus est.	Facies	Quædam nomina tertiæ declinationis juxta hanc hæstebantur; ut, <i>plebs, plebei</i> .
		Gen.	erum		Faciērum	
		Dat.	ebus		Faciēbus	
		Acc.	es		Facies	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	ebus		Faciēbus	

Hæc declinatio Genit. Dat. & Ablativum pluralem in nullis sortita est, præter *Res, species, facies, aries, dies, & meredies*.

### Cap. 16. De flexione Adjectivorum.

**A**djectiva flexuntur tribus Terminationibus, Adjectiva vel tribus Articulis. trium Terminationū variantur sicut *Pons*.  
 Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur ad formam primæ & secundæ Declinationis, viz. *r*, sicut *Magister*; *us*, sicut *Dominus*; *a*, sicut *Musa*; *um*, sicut *Regnum*.

Terminatio Exemplum, sive Typus est	Singulariter,	Nom.	Bonus		Bona		Bonum
		Gen.	Boni		Bonæ		Boni
		Dat.	Bono		Bonæ		Bono
		Acc.	Bonum		Bonam		Bonum
		Voc.	Bone		Bona		Bonum
		Abl.	Bono		Bonâ		Bono
	Pluraliter,	Nom.	Boni		Bonæ		Bona
		Gen.	Bonorum		Bonarum		Bonorum
		Dat.	Bonis		Bonis		Bonis
		Acc.	Bonos		Bonas		Bona
		Voc.	Boni		Bonæ		Bona
		Abl.	Bonis		Bonis		Bonis

*unus, one; totus, whole; solus, alone; ullus, any*  
*alter, another; uter, whether,* and their compounds  
 make their Genitive in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*.

So also doth *alius, alia, aliud*, Gen. *alius*, Dat. *alii*  
 &c.

*Ambo both, duo two*, are irregular, and make  
 their Neuter gender in *o*, and be thus declined.

Plu- ra- li- ter.	Nom.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Gen.	<i>Amborum</i>	<i>Ambarum</i>	<i>Amborum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>
	Acc.	<i>Ambos</i>	<i>Ambas</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Voc.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Abl.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>

Of three  
 Articles  
 like *Felix*  
 or *Tristis*.

Adjectives of one or two Terminations follow the  
 rule of the third declension, and are declined with  
 three Articles,

Their Examples, or Types be	Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, hæc, &amp; hoc, Felix</i>	Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, &amp; hæc, Tristis,</i> & <i>hoc Triste</i>
		G.	<i>Hujus, Felicis</i>		G.	<i>Hujus, Tristis</i>
		D.	<i>Huic, Felici</i>		D.	<i>Huic, Tristi</i>
		A.	<i>Hunc, &amp; hanc, Felicē</i> & <i>hoc Felix</i>		A.	<i>Hunc, &amp; hanc Tri-</i> <i>stem, &amp; hoc Triste</i>
		V.	<i>Felix</i>		V.	<i>Tristis, &amp; Triste</i>
		A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, &amp; hoc Feli-</i> <i>ce vel Felici.</i>		A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, &amp; hoc Tristi</i>
	Plurally,	N.	<i>Hi, &amp; hæ, Felices,</i> & <i>hæc, Felicia</i>	Plurally,	N.	<i>Hi, &amp; hæ, Tristes, &amp;</i> <i>hæc Tristia</i>
		G.	<i>Horum, harum, &amp;</i> <i>horum, Felicium</i>		G.	<i>Horum, harum, &amp;</i> <i>horum, Tristium</i>
		D.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		D.	<i>His, Tristibus</i>
		A.	<i>Hos, &amp; has, Feli-</i> <i>ces, &amp; hæc Felicia</i>		A.	<i>Hos, &amp; has, Tristes,</i> & <i>hæc, Tristia</i>
		V.	<i>Felices, &amp; Felicia</i>		V.	<i>Tristes, Tristia</i>
		A.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		A.	<i>Tristibus</i>

*unus, totus, solus, nullus, alter, uter, & eorum composita, formant Genitivum in *i*us, & Dativum in *i*.*

*Sic & alius, alia, aliud, Gen. alius, Dat. alii, &c.*

*Ambo & duo sunt anomala, & formant neutrum genus per o: sic autem variantur.*

Pluraliter.	Nom.	Ambo	Ambæ	Ambo
	Gen.	Amborum	Ambarum	Amborum
	Dat.	Ambobus	Ambabus	Ambobus
	Acc.	Ambos	Ambas	Ambo
	Voc.	Ambo	Ambæ	Ambo
	Abl.	Ambobus	Ambabus	Ambobus

Adjectiva  
trium Ar-  
ticulorum  
variantur,  
ut, *tristis*  
aut *tristis*.

*Adjectiva unius vel duarum Terminationum sequuntur formam tertiæ Declinationis, & flectuntur tribus Articulis.*

Singular.	N.	Hic, hæc, & hoc, Felix	Singular.	N.	Hic, & hæc, Tristis, & hoc, Triste.
	G.	Huius, Felicis.		G.	Huius, Tristis.
	D.	Huic, Felici.		D.	Huic, Tristi.
	A.	Hunc & hanc, Felicē, & hoc, Felix.		A.	Hunc, & hanc Tristem, & hoc Triste.
	V.	Felix.		V.	Tristis, & Triste.
	A.	Hoc, hæc, & hoc Felice, vel Felici.		A.	Hoc, hæc, & hoc Tristi.

Plural.	N.	Hi, & hæ, Felices, & hæc Felicia.	Plural.	N.	Hi, & hæ, Tristes, & hæc Tristia.
	G.	Horum, harum, & horum, Felicium		G.	Horum, harum, & horum, Tristium.
	D.	His Felicibus.		D.	His, Tristibus.
	A.	Hos, & has, Felices, & hæc Felicia		A.	Hos, & has, Tristes, & hæc Tristia.
	V.	Felices, & Felicia.		V.	Tristes, & Tristia.
	A.	Felicibus.		A.	His, Tristibus.

Nomina



Nouns compounded of a Substantive and Adjective are declined in both; as, *Res-publica*, *Rei-publica*, *Jus-jurandum*, *Juris-jurandi*.

But such as are compounded of two Substantives, are declined only in the former; as, *Pater-familias*, *Patris-familias*.

## Chap. 17.

## Of Comparison.

There be  
three de-  
grees of  
Compari-  
son.

**N**Ouns, whose signification may encrease or be diminished, do form Comparison.

Comparison is the varying of a word by degree.

There be three Degrees of Comparison, { The Positive.  
The comparative.  
The Superlative.

The Positive

The Positive degree is the first word signifying a thing Simply, and without Excess; as, *Tristis*, **sad**; *durus*, **hard**.

The Com-  
parative,

The Comparative somewhat exceeds the signification of his Positive by **more**; as, *Tristior* **sadder**, or **more sad**; *durior*, **harder**, or **more hard**.

The Super-  
lative.

The Superlative exceedeth far above the Positive by **very**; or **most**; as, *Tristissimus*, **very sad**, *durissimus*, **most hard**.

The Com-  
parative

is formed of the first case of the Positive, that endeth in *i*, by putting thereto { *or*, and *us*; as of *Tristi* is made *Tristior*, and *tristius*; of *Duri*, *durior*, and *durius*.

But the  
Comparison  
of some  
words is Ir-  
regular,

The Su-  
perlative

{ *ssimus*; as of *Tristi*, is made *tristissimus*; of *Duri*, *durissimus*.

Positives in *r*, make their Superlative by putting to *rimus*; as, *Pulcer*, **fair**, *pulcerimus*.

But



Nomina Composita à duobus rectis declinantur in utrisque; ut, *Res-publica, Rei-publica, Jus-jurandum, Juris-jurandi.*

Composita verò à recto & obliquo, declinantur tantum ex parte recti; ut, *Pater-familiàs, Patris-familiàs.*

## Cap. 17.

## De Comparatione.

Comparantur nomina, quorum significatio au-  
geri, minuique potest.

Comparatio est variatio dictionis per Gradus.

Gradus Comparationis sunt tres. Comparati-  
onis Gradus  
sunt tres.

*Positivus.*  
*Comparativus.*  
*Superlativus.*

*Positivus* Gradus est primo vox quæ rem simpliciter, & sine excessu significat; ut, *Tristis, durus.* Positivus.

*Comparativus* Positivi significationem per magis auget; ut, *Tristior, durior.* Comparativus,

*Superlativus* supra Positivum cum Adverbio valde vel maxime significat; ut, *Tristissimus, durissimus.* Superlativus,

Comparativus. { fit regulariter à primo Positivi casu in *i*, addendo

Superlativus. { or, & *us*; ut, à *Tristi* fit *tristior*, & *tristius*; à *Duri*, *durior*, & *durius*. *ssimus*; ut, à *Tristi*, fit *tristissimus*; à *Duri*, *durissimus*.

Positiva in *r*, formant Superlativum assumendo *rimus*; ut, *Pulcer, pulcerimus.*

Quorundam verò Comparatio est Irregularis.

But *dexter*, on the right hand, *dexterior*, more on the right hand, *dextimus*, most on the right hand; and *sinister*, on the left hand, *sinisterior*, more on the left hand, *sinistimus*, most on the left hand, as the ancients formed them, are excepted.

These six ending in *lis*, do make their Superlative by changing *lis* into *llimus*; viz. *Dociles*, *docillimus*, **docible**: *agilis*, *agillimus*, **nimble**: *gracilis*, *gracillimus*, **slender**: *humilis*, *humillimus*, **humble**: *similis*, *simillimus*, **like**: *facilis*, *facillimus*, **easy**.

Such as are derived of *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, are compared as Positives, in *ens*; as, *Maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, **curling**: *magniloquus*, *magniloquentior*, *magniloquentissimus*, **brag**: *benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, **kinde**: *magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentissimus*, **stately**.

If a vowel come before *us* in the end, the Comparative degree is made by *magis*, and the Superlative by *maximè*; as, *Pius*, **godly**: *magis Pius*, **more godly**: *maximè Pius*, **most godly**.

These also are excepted from the General Rule aforegoing.

<i>Bonus</i> good, <i>melior</i> , <b>better</b> , <i>optimus</i> the best.	<i>Multus</i> much, <i>plus</i> more, <i>plurimus</i> the most.
<i>Malus</i> bad, <i>pejor</i> worse, <i>peffimus</i> the worst.	<i>Vetus</i> old, <i>veterior</i> older, <i>veterrimus</i> oldest.
<i>Magnus</i> great, <i>major</i> greater, <i>maximus</i> the greatest.	<i>Maturus</i> ripe, <i>maturior</i> , <i>riper</i> , <i>maturimus</i> , & <i>maturrissimus</i> very ripe.
<i>Parvus</i> little, <i>minor</i> less, <i>minimus</i> , the least.	<i>Nequam</i> naught, <i>nequior</i> naughtier, <i>nequissimus</i> the naughtiest.

And many such like, whose Positives are derived of Adverbs and Prepositions; as,

*Citer* **hitherly**, *citerior*, *citimus*, of *citra* on this side.

*Exterius*

Excipiuntur autem *Dexter*, *dexterior*, *dextimus*; et *sinister*, *sinisterior*, *sinistimus*, pro ut antiqui formabantur.

Sex ista in *lis*, formant Superlativum mutande *lis* in *limus*; viz. *Docilis*, *docillimus*; *agilis*, *agillimus*; *gracilis*, *gracillimus*; *humilis*, *humillimus*; *similis*, *simillimus*; *facilis*, *facillimus*.

Que derivantur à *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, comparantur tanquam à Positivis in *ens*; ut,

*Maledicus*, *Maledicentior*, *Maledicentissimus*.

*Magniloquus*, *Magniloquentior*, *Magniloquentissimus*.

*Benevolus*, *Benevolentior*, *Benevolentissimus*.

*Magnificus*, *Magnificentior*, *Magnificentissimus*.

Si vocalis præcedit *us* finale, fit gradus Comparativus per *magis*, & Superlativus per *maximè*; ut, *Pius*, *magis Pius*, *maximè Pius*.

Hæc etiam à Regula Generali præcedente excipiuntur.

*Bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*. *Multus*, *plurimus*, *multa*, *plurima*; *multum* plus *plurimum*.

*Malus*, *pejor*, *peffimus*. *Vetus*, *Vetrior*, *veterrimus*.

*Magnus*, *major*, *maximus*. *Maturus*, *maturior*, *maturissimus*, & *matrissimus*.

*Pavus*, *minor*, *minimus*. *Nequam*, *nequior*, *nequissimus*.

Et istiusmodi multa, quorum Positivi ad Adverbiis & Præpositionibus derivantur; ut,

*Citer*, *citerior*, *citimus*, à *citra*.

*Externus*

*Externus*, outerly, { *extimus*, } of extra without.  
*exterior* { *extremus* }

*Inferus*, netherly, inferior, *infirmus*, of *infra* beneath

*Posterus*, afterly, posterior, *postremus*, of *post* after.

*Superus*, oberly, { *supremus*, } of *supra* above.  
*superior*; { *summus*, }

To which are wont to be added, *ultra*, beyond, *ulterior*, farther, *ultimus*, furthest; *Prope*, near, *propior*, nearer, *proximus*, the next; *Pridem*, long ago, *prior*, former; *primus*, the first; and *Diu*, long, *diutior*, longer, *diutissimus*, very long.

Unusual,

These words are very seldome met withall in reading Authors, and therefore seldome to be used, *vir*, *Affidus*, more daily: *Strenuus*, more stout: *Egregius*, very excellent: *Mirificus*, very wonderful: *Pientissimus*, vel *piissimus*, very goodly: *ipissimus*, the very hee: *perpetuus*, most perpetual: *tuissimus*, most yours: *exiguus*, the least that may be: *multissimus*, the most: *proximior*, nearer than the nearest.

Defective.

Some want the Positive; *Ocyor*, swifter: *ocysimus*, very swift: *potior*, better able: *potissimus*, the best able: *deterior*, worse, *deterimus*, the worst: *penitior*, inner: *penitissimus*, most innerly.

Some want the Comparative; *Novus*, new, *novissimus*, the newest: *inclutus*, famous, *inclutissimus*, most famous: *invitus*, unwilling, *invitissimus*, most unwilling: *meritus*, deserved, *meritissimus*, most deserved: *sacer*, holy, *sacerrimus*, most holy: *falsus*, false, *falsissimus*, very false: *fidus*, trusty, *fidissimus*, most trusty: *nuper*, nuperus, late, *nuperrimus*, very late: *diversus*, diverse, *diversissimus*, very diverse.

Some want the Superlatives; as, *Opimus*, wealthy, *optimior*, more wealthy: *juvenis*, young, *junior*, younger: *senex*, old, *senior*, older: *declivus*, down-hill, *declivior*, more down-hill: *longinquus*, afar off, *longin-*  
*gin-*

*Exterus, exterior, {extimus, } ab Extra.*  
*{extremus, }*

*Inferus, inferior, infimus, ab Infra.*

*Posterus, posterior, postremus, à Post.*

Superus, superior { supremus, } à Supra.  
                                  { summus, }

Quibus addi solent, *ultra, ulterior, ultimus. Propē, propior, proximus. Pridem, prior, primus, & Diu, diutior, diutissimus.*

Hæc in legendis authoribus raro occurrunt, raro igitur sunt-usurpanda, viz. *Affiduor, Strenuor, Egregiissimus, Mirificissimus, Pientissimus, vel piiſſimus, ipſiſſimus, Perpetuiſſimus, tuiſſimus, exiguiſſimus, multiſſimus, proximior.*

### Inufitiora.

Quædam carent Positivo; Ocyor,ocyssimus, Potior,  
potissimus, Deterior,deterrimus,Penitior,penitissimus.

Defectiva.

Quædam carent Comparativo; *Novus, novissimus; Inclytus, inclytissimus; Invitus, invitissimus; Meritus, meritissimus; Sacer, sacerrimus; Falsus, falsissimus; Fidus, fidissimus; Nuper, nuperus, nuperrimus; Diversus, diversissimus.*

Quædam carent Superlativo; ut, *Opimus, opimior; juve-*  
*na, junior; Senex, senior; Declivis, declivior, longinquus,*  
*F longinquior;*

longinquior, further off: *salutaris*, wholesome: *salutarior*, more wholesome: *supinus*, careless: *supinior*, more careless: *adolescens*, youthful: *adolescencior*, more youthful: *ingens*, huge: *ingencior*, more huge: *satur*, full: *saturior*, fuller: *antè*, before: *anterior*, more before: *infinitus*, infinite: *infinitior*, more infinite: *taciturnus*, silent: *taciturnior*, more silent: *communis*, common: *communior*, more common.

*Licentior*, more licentious, is only the Comparative.

Improper

Sometimes also Comparison is made of Substantives, but abusively; as, *Nero*, *Neronior*, more cruel than *Nero*; *Pænius*, *Pænior*, more perfidious than a *Carthaginian*.



*Quæ Genus :*

OR,

ROB. ROBINSON'S Rules of Nouns  
*Heteroclites*, or Irregular.

### Chap. 18. Of varying *Heteroclites*.

*Heteroclites*  
are,

**N**ouns which 1. vary or change their Gender or Declining. 2. Those which want of any new fashion. 3. And those which have too much, are *Heteroclites*.

These nouns change their Gender and Declining, which are,

I  
Variant

1. Feminines in the singular number, and Neuters in the plural; as,

*Pergæ.*

longinquior; salutaris, salutarior; supinus, supinior;  
adolescens, adolescentior; ingens, ingentior; satur, satur-  
vior; ante, anterior; infinitus, infinitior; taciturnus,  
taciturnior; communis, communior.

Licentior est solus Comparativus :

Interdum etiam à Substantivis fit Comparatio Abusiva,  
sed abusivè; ut, Nero, Neronior; Paenns, Paenior.



Quæ Genus :

SIVE,

ROB. ROBINSONI Regulæ de  
Heteroclitis, seu Anomalis.

Cap. 18.

De Heteroclitis variantibus.

1 Quæ genus aut flexum variant, 2. quæcunq; no- Heteroclitæ  
(vato) sunt.

Ritu deficiunt, 3. superantve, Heteroclitæ sunt.

Hæc genus ac partim flexum variantia cernis,

Variant.

1 *Pergamus, vi, the town* Pergamus, makes *Pergama, morum* : *Supellex, leſtilis, houſhold=ſuff*, makes *ſupelleſtilia*, unless it want the plural.

2 Neuters in the ſingular, and maſculines and neuters in the plural; as, *Raſtrum, ſtri, a rake*, makes *raſtri, & raſtra, ſtrorum* : *frænum, ni, a bitſle*, makes *fræni, & fræna, norum* : *filum, li, a thread*, makes *ſili, & ſila, lorum*. *Capitrum, ſtri, an halter*, makes *capitri, & ſtra, ſtrorum*.

3 Neuters in the ſingular, and maſculines only in the Plural; as, *Argos, gi, the city of Argos*, makes *Argi, gorum* : *cælum, li, heaven*, makes *cæli, lorum*.

4 Neuters in the ſingular, and feminines in the plural; as, *Nundinum, ni, a fair*, makes *nundinae, narum* : *epulum, li, a banquet*, makes *epulae, larum* : *balneum, nei, a bath*, makes *balneae, nearum*, though JUVENAL hath *balnea* in the plural number.

5 Maſculines in the ſingular, and neuters in the plural; as, *Manalus, li, a hill in Arcadia*, makes *Manala, lorum* : *Dindymus, ni, the top of Ida*, makes *Dindyma, morum* : *Iſmarus, vi, a hill in Thrace*, makes *Iſmara, rorum* : *Tartarus, vi, Hell*, makes *Tartara, rorum* : *Táygëtus, ti, a hill in Lacedemonia*, makes *Táygêta, torum* : *Tenarus, vi, a hill in Laconia*, makes *Tenara, yorum* : *Maſſicus, ci, a hill in Italy*, makes *Maſſica, corum* : *Gargarus, vi, a top of Ida*, makes *Gargara, yorum*.

6 Maſculines ſingular, and maſculine and Neuters in the plural; as, *Sibilus, li, an hiſſing*, makes *ſibili, & ſibila, lorum* : *jocus, ci, a jeſt*, makes *joci, & joca, corum* : *locus, ci, a place*, makes *loci, & loca, corum* : *Avernus, ni, a lake in Campania*, makes *Averni, & Avernæ, norum*.



1 Pergamus infelix urbs Troum Pergama gignit ;

*Quod nisi plurali careat facit ipsa supellex ;*

*Singula fœmineis, neutris pluralia gaudent.*

2 Dat prior bis nūmerus neutrum genus, alter utrumq̃.

*Rastrum, cum fræno, filum, simul atque. capistrum.*

3 Argos item & cœlum, sunt singula neutra; sed audi,

*Mascula duntaxat cœlos vocitabis & Argos.*

4 Nundinum, & hinc epulum, quibus addito balne-  
(um, & hæc sunt

*Neutra quidem primo, muliebria ritè secundo.*

*Balnea plurali Juvenalem constat habere.*

5 Hæc maribus dantur singularia, plurima neutris ;

*Mænalus, atq̃, sacer mons Dindimus, Ismarus, atq̃,*

*Tartara, Táygæus, sic Tænera, Massica, & altus*

*Gargarus. 6. At numerus genus his dabit alter utrumq̃,*

*Sibilus, atq̃, jocus, locus, & Campanus Avernus.*

## Chap. 19.

## Of Heteroclites that want Case.

<sup>2</sup> **T**Hose Heteroclites which follow are defective in Case, or Number.

<sup>3</sup>  
Defective in  
Case.

1. Aprotes are such as vary no Case; as, *Fai*, right: *nihil*, nothing: *nihil*, nothing: *instar*, like: such as end in *u* and *i*; as, *cornu*, a horn: *genus*, a kind: *gummi*, gum: *frugi*, thrifty: Likewise, *Tempe*, a pleasant field: *tot*, so many: *quot*, how many: and all nouns of number from three to an hundred.

2 A Monoptote is a noun of one onely Case; as, *Noctu*, by night: *natu*, by birth: *jussu*, by bidding: *injussu*, without bidding: *astu*, by craft: *promptu*, in readiness: *permissu*, by sufferance: but wee read *astus* in the Acculative case plural, and *inficias*, a denial, which word is only found.

3 Those are Diptotes which have two Cases onely; as, Nom. *fortis*, Abl. *forte*, hap: Gen. *spontis*, Abl. *sponte*, of ones own accord: Nom. *plus*, Gen. *pluris*, more: Gen. *repetundarum*, of bribery: Abl. *repetundis*: Gen. *jugenis*, of an acre, Abl. *jugere*: Gen. *verberis*, of a stroke, Abl. *verbere*: Nom. *suppetis*, aid, Acc. *suppetias*: Nom. *tantundem*, so much, Gen. *tantidem*: Gen. *impetis*, violence, Abl. *impete*: Acc. *vicem*, a turn, Abl. *vice*: whereof *verberis*, *vicem*, plus, and *jugenis*, have all their cases in the plural number.

4 Those are Triptotes which have three cases onely; as, Gen. *precis*, Acc. *precem*, Abl. *prece*, prayer: Gen. *opis*, Acc. *opem*, Abl. *ope*, help.

*Vis*, force, wanteth no case except the Dative. And these have all their cases in the plural number.

5 Relatives; as, *qui*, which: Interrogatives; as, *ecquis*, who: Distributives; as, *nullus*, none: neuter, neither, and *omnis*, all.

## Cap. 19.

## De Heteroclitis defectivis Casu.

2 **Q**uæ sequitur manca est Numero, Casuque pro-  
(pago.

2  
Defectiva  
Casu.

1 Quæ nullum variant casum; ut, fas, nîl, nihil, instar;  
Multa & in u simul; ut sunt hæc cornûque, genûque;  
Sic gummi, frugis; sic Tempe, tot, quot, & omnes  
A tribus ad centum numeros Aptota vocabis.

2 Estque Monoptota nomen, cui vox cadit una;  
Ceu noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, simul astu,  
Promptu, permisso, plurali legimus astus,  
Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est.

3 Sunt Diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit,  
ut, tors, forte dabit sexto; spontis, quoque sponte;  
Sic plus, pluris habet; repetundarum, repetundis;  
Jugeris, & sexto dat jugere; verberis autem  
Verbere; suppetiæ quarto quoque suppetias dant.  
Tantundem dat tantidem, simul impetis hoc dat  
Impete; junge vicem sexto vice: nec lego plura.  
Verberis, atque vicem, sic plus cum jugere, cunctos  
Quatuor hæc numero casus tenere secundo.

4 Tres quibus, inflectis casus Triptota vocantur,  
ut, precis atque prece, petit & prece blandus amica,  
Sic opis est nostræ, fer opem legis, atque ope dignus.  
Integra vox vis est, nisi desit fortè Dativus;  
Omnibus his mutilus numerus prior, integer alter.

5 Quæ referunt, ut, qui, quæ percontantur, ut, ecquis;  
Et quæ distribuunt; ut, nullus, neuter, & omnis.

Indefinites; as, *quilibet*, any one : *alter*, another : want the Vocative case, and all Pronouns, except *Noster*, *ours* : *nostras*, on our side : *meus*, mine : *tu*, thou.

### Chap. 20.

#### Of Heteroclites that want Number.

Defective in  
the Singular  
Number.

**A**LL Proper Names, having a restraining nature, do want the plural number; as, *Mars, tis*, Mars : *Cato, tonis*, Cato : *Gallia, lia*, France : *Roma, ma*, Rome : *Ida, da*, a hill near Troy : *Tagus, gi*, the River Taio in Spain : *Laelaps, pis*, Tempest, a dogs name : *Parnassus, sis*, a hill in Phocis : *Bucephalus, li*, Alexanders horse. Add to these the names of Corn; as, *tritricum, wheat*. Things sold by weight; as, *Lana, wool* : Of Herbs; as, *salvia, sage* : Of Liquors; as, *Cervisia, beer* : Of Metals; as, *aureum, gold*; wherein observe the opinion of Authors, for sometimes they keep, sometimes they reject the plural number.

2 *Hordeum, dei*, barley : *far, ris*, bread : *corn : forum, ri*, a market : *mel, lis*, honey : *mulsum, si*, wine mingled with honey : *defrutum, ti*, wine boiled to the half : and thus, *thuris*, frankincense, have only three like cases in the plural number.

3 These Masculines want the plural number; *Hesperus, ri*, the evening star : *vesper, ris*, the evening : *pontus, ti*, the sea : *simus, mi*, mud : *simus, mi*, dung : *penus, ni*, vel penus victuals : *sanguis, gninis*, blood : *aether, ris*, the sky : and *nemo*, no body : but *nemo* wants the genitive and vocative singular, as well as the plural number.

4 These Feminines have seldom the plural number; *Pubes, bis*, ripeness of age : *salus, lütis*, health : *talio, gnis*, like for like : *indoles, lis*, towardliness : *infis, sis*, the cough.

*Infinita solent his jungi, ut, quilibet, alter;  
Quinto hæc sæpe carent casu; & Pronomino præter  
Quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus, & tu.*

## Cap. 20.

*De Heteroclitis defectivis Numero.*

**1** *Propria cuncta notes, quibus est natura coërens,  
Plurima ne fuerint, ut, Mars, Caro, Gallia, Roma,*

Defective  
Numero  
Singulari.

*Ida, Tagus, Lælaps, Parnassus, Bucephalusque.*

*His frumenta dabis, pensa, herbas, uda, metalla;*

*In quibus Autorum quæ sint placita ipse requiras;*

*Est ubi pluralem retinent hæc, est ubi spernunt. }*

**2** *Hordea, farra, forum, mel, mulsu, defruta,  
(thusque,*

*Tres tantum similes voces pluralia servant.*

**3** *Hesperus, & vesper, pontus, limusque, simusque,*

*Sic penus, & sanguis, sic æther, nemo; sed ista*

*Mascula sunt numerum vix excedentia primum.*

*Nemo caret genito, quinto, numeroque secundo.*

**4** *Singula feminei generis pluralia raro;*

*Pubes atque salus, sic talio cum indole, tussis,*

*Pix,*

**pix, cis, pitch** : *humus, mi*, the ground : *lues, is*, the murrain : *fitis, tis, thirst* : *fuga, ge, flight* : *quies, etis*, rest : *cholera, re, choler* : *fames, mis*, hunger : *bilis, lis*, choler : *senectas, te, old age* : *juventus, tatis*, youth : But *soboles, lis*, an off spring : *labes, bis*, a spot : and all nouns of the fifth Declension will have three like cases in the plural number, except, *res, rei*, a thing : *species, cièi*, a kinde : *facies, cièi*, a face : *acies, cièi*, an edge : and *dies, dièi*, a day : which words are whole in the plural number. To these they are wont to add many Feminines; as, *Stultitia, tiæ*, foolishness : *invidia, diæ*, envy : *sapientia, tiæ*, wisdom : *desidia, diæ*, sloth : and a many words of like sort, which reading affords ; and these sometimes, but very seldome, have the plural number.

5 These Neuters have not the plural number ; *Delicium, cii*, ones delight : *senium, nii*, old age : *lethum, thi*, death : *cœnum, ni*, dirt : *salum, li*, the salt sea : *barathrum, thri*, hell : *virus*, poison : *vitrum, tri*, glass : *viscum, sci*, bird-lime : *vænum, ni*, poison : *justitium, tii*, vacation-time : *nihilum, li*, nothing : *veris*, the spring : *lac, etis*, milk : *gluten, tinis*, glue : *halec, lécis*, an herrin : *gelu*, frost : *solum, lii*, a throue : *jubar, baris*, the sun-beam. Here also you may put many such like, which you shall meet with as you read.

And Plural

6 These Masculines have onely the plural number, *Manes, niun*, spirits : *maiores, rum*, Ancestors : *cancelli, lorun*, a lattice : *liberi, rorum*, children : *antes, tium*, the first rank of vines : *mensæ, sium*, wine-mens flowers : *lemæres, rum*, hobgoblins : *fasti, fiorum*, a Register-book : *minores, rum*, posterity : *penates, tium*, ones stock : *penates, tium*, household gods and names of places ; as, *Gabii, biorum*, *Lacri, erorum* ; and whatsoever the like you read any where.

7 These are of the Feminine gender and plural Number ;  
Exu-iz,

Pix; humus, atque lucus, sitis & fuga junge, quierem;  
Sic cholera, atque fames, bilisque, senectas, juvenus:

sed tamen hæc, soboles, labes, ut & omnia quiesce,

Tres similes casus plurali sæpe tenebunt:

Excipe res, species, facies, aciesque, diésque,

Quas voces numero totas licet esse secundo.

Istis multa solent muliebria nectere, ut hæc sunt;

Stulticia, invidia, sapientia, desidia, atque

Id genus innumerae voces, quas lectio prabet.

Rariis his numerum; quandoque sed adde secundum.

5 Nec licet his Neutris numerum deferre secundum;

Delicium, senium, lethum, cœnũque, salũque;

Sic barathrum, virus, vitrum, viscũque, penũque:

Justitium, nihilum, ver, lac, gluten, simul haec;

Adde gelu, solium, jubar. Hic quoque talia ponas,

Quæ tibi, si observes, occurrent multa legenti.

6 Mascula sunt numero tantum contenta secundo;

Et Plurali.

Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, & antes;

Menfes [profluvium] lemures, fasti, atque minores;

Cum genus assignant, natales: adde penates

Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locrique,

Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.

7 Hæc sunt Fæminei generis, numerique secundi,

Exuviae;



*Exuvie, arum*, an **Advers** slough: *phalera, varum*,  
**hoyle-trappings**: *Nom. grates*, *Acc. grates*, **thanks**:  
*mauribie, arum*: **spoill**: *Idus, iduū*, the **Ides** of months  
*antie, arum*, **foye-locks**: *inducie, arum*, **truce**: *insidie,*  
*arum*, **lying in wait**: *mine, arū*, **thzeatnings**: *excubie,*  
*arum*, **watch and ward**: *None, arum*, the **stones**  
of a month: *nuge, arum*, **trifles**: *trice, arum*, **gew-**  
**gaws**: *Calende, arum*, the **first day** of the month:  
*quisquilie, arum*, **swappings**: *therme, marum*, **hot**  
**bathes**: *cuna, narum*, a **cradle**: *dira, rarum*, **curling**:  
*exequie, arum*, **rites at funerals**: *inferie, arum*, **sacris-**  
**fices to the infernal spirits**, *serie, arum*, **holidays**:  
*primitia, arum*, the **first fruits**: *plage, arum*, **hunters**  
**nets**: *vulve, varum*, **double**, or **two leav'd dows**:  
*divitie, arum*, **riches**: *nuptie, arum*, a **wedding**: *lacte,*  
*etium*, the **small guts**. To these may be added *The-*  
*be, barum*, **Thebes**: *Athene, narū*, **Athens** in Greece;  
of which sort you may finde many names of places.

8 These Neuters have seldome the singular num-  
ber; *Menia, ium*, the **walls of a Town**: *tesqua-*  
*squorum*, **rough places**: *precordia, orum*, the **midriff**:  
*lustra, storum*, **dens of wilde-beasts**: *arma, morum*,  
**weapons**: *mapalia, liorum*, **cottages**: *bellaria, riorum*,  
**juncates**: *munia, niorū*, an **office**: *castra, storum*, **tents**  
*iusta, storum*, **Wites at funerals**: *sponsalia, liorum*, **be-**  
**trothing**: *rostra, storum*, a **pulpit**: *crepundia, orum*, a  
**rattle**: *cunibula, lorum*, a **cradle**: *exta, torum*, the **en-**  
**trails of beasts**: *effata, torum*, a **Southsayers mut-**  
**terings**. To these may bee added the Heathenish Fe-  
stival names; as, *Bacchanalia, liorum*, a **feast to Bac-**  
**chus**; and if you shall read more, you may put them  
under this Rule.



Exuvix, phaleræ, gratæque, manubiæ, & idus,  
 Antix, & induciæ, simul infidiæque, minæque,  
 Excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæque, calendæ,  
 Quisquilix, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, exequiæque,  
 Inferiæ, & feriæ, sic primitiæque, plagæque,  
 Retiæ signantes, & valvæ, divitiæque,  
 Nuptiæ item & lactes. Addantur Thebæ & Athenæ;  
 Quod genus invenias & nomina plura locorum.

3 Rariùs hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur ;

Mœnia, cum telquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,  
 Arma, mapalia, sic bellaria, munia castra,  
 Fœnus justa petit, petit & sponsalia virgo,  
 Rostra desertus amat, pueri q̃, crepundia gestat ;  
 Infans q̃, colunt cunabula, consulit exta  
 Augur, & absolvens superis effata recantat.  
 Festa Deum poterunt, cum Bacchanalia, jungi.  
 Quod si plura leges, licet hæc quoq̃, classe reponas.

## Chap. 21:

## Of redundant or abounding Heteroclites.

3  
Redundant.

**T**Hese nouns (as it were) have too much, following divers forms; for they vary both their gender, and termination; viz. *tonitrus*, & *tonitru*, **thunder**; *clypens*, *pei*, & *clypeum*, *pei*, **a buckler**; *baculus*, *li*, & *baculum*, *li*, & *bacillum*, *li*, **a staff**; *sensus*, *ſds*, **a sense** & *ſenſum*, *ſi*, **a conceit**; *oz*, **meaning**; *tigra*, *ni*, & *tignū*, *ni*, **a raſter**; *tapētum*, *ti*, *tapēte*, *ti*, & *tapes*, *pētis*, **tapeſtry**; *punctus*, *ſti*, & *punctum*, *ſti*, **a point**; *ſinapi*, & *ſinapis*, *pis*, **muſtard**; *ſinus*, *ni*, & *ſinum*, *ni*, **a milk veſſel**; *menda*, *da*, & *mendum*, *di*, **a fault**; *viſcus*, *ſci*, & *viſcum*, *ſci*, **bird-lime**; *cornu*, & *cornum*, *ni*, **an horn**; and *cornu*, *nūs*, **the wing of an Army**; (as *Lucane* ſaith) *eventus*, *ſds*, & *eventum*, *ti*, **an hap**; and a thouſand ſuch, which reading will afford thee.

2 Some Greek words do make a new Latine word in their Accuſative caſe : as, *Panther*, *thēris*, makes *Panthera*, *ra*, **a Panther**; *crater*, *teris*, makes *cratera*, *ra*, **a goblet**; *cassis*, *ſidis*, makes *cassida*, *da*, **an Helmet**; *æther*, *theris*, makes *æthera*, *ra*, **the ſkie**.

3 In theſe nouns the Nominative caſe is diverſe, but the ſenſe and gender are all one; viz. *Gibbus*, *bi*, & *gibber*, *beris*, **a bunch**, *oz* **ſwelling**; *cucumis*, *mis*, & *cucumer*, *meris*, **a cucumber**; *ſtipis*, *pis*, & *ſtipes*, *pis*, **ſwages**; *cinis*, *neris*, & *ciner*, *neris*, **aſhes**; *vomis*, *meris*, & *vomer*, *meris*, **a plowſhare**; *ſcobis*, *bis*, & *ſcobs*, *bis*, **ſaw-duſt**; *pulvis*, *veris*, & *pulver*, *veris*, **duſt**; *pubes*, *bis*, & *puber*, *beris*, **ripenes of age**. Add hereunto nouns ending in *or*, and *os*; as, *Honor*, *nōris*, & *honor*, *nōris*, **honor**; *labor*, *bōris*, & *labos*, *bōris*, **labor**; *arbo*, *boris*, & *arbos*, *boris*, **a tree**; *odor*, *dōris*, & *odos*, *dōris*, **labor**;

Alſo

## Cap. 21.

## De Heteroclitis Redundantibus.

**H**ÆC quasi luxuriant varias imitantia formas :

Nam genus & vocem variant, tonitrus, tonitruque;

<sup>3</sup>  
Redundantia.

Sic clypeus, clypeum; baculus, baculum, atq; bacillum;

Sensus, & hoc sensum; tignus, tignumque; tapetum,

Atque tapète, tapes; punctus, punctumque; sinapi,

Quod genus immutans fertur scelerata sinapis;

Sinus, & hoc sinum [vas lactis] mendaque mendum;

Viscus & hoc viscum; sic cornu, & flexile cornum;

At Lucanus ait cornûs tibi cura sinistri.

Eventus, simul eventum; Sed quid moror istis ?

Talia doctorum tibi lectio mille ministrat.

2 Sed tibi præterea quædam sunt Græca notanda,

Quæ quarto casu factum pepêrere Latinum :

Nam panther, panthera creat, crateraque crater,

Cassida cassis habet, sed & æther, æthera fundit.

Hinc cratera venit, venit æthera; sic caput ipsum

Cassida magna tegit, nec vult panthera domari.

3 Vertitur his rectus, sensus manet & genus unum;

Gibbus, & hic gibber; cucumis, cucumer; stipis, &

(stips;

Sic cinis, atque ciner; vomis, vomer; scobis & scobs;

Pulvis, item pulver; pubes, puber; quibus addes

Quæ pariunt or & os; honor, & labor, arbor, odorque.

His

Also *apes*, *pis*, and *apis*, *pis* a **Be**: *plebs*, *bis*: and *plebes*, *bei*, the common people. There be also many nouns coming from the Greeks, having this double manner; as, *Delphin*, *phinis*, and *Delphinus*, *phinis*; a **Dolphin**: *Elephas*, *phantis*, and *Elephantus*, *ti*, an **Elephant**: *Congrus*, *gri*, and *Conger*, *gri*; a **Conger**: *Cel*: *Meleagrus*, *gri*, and *Meleager*, *gri*; *Teucrus*, *cri*, and *Teucer*, *cri*. And hitherto you shall refer all such as these, which your reading affordeth.

These Nouns are both of the second and fourth Declension; viz. *Laurus*, *ri*, and *rus*, a **Bay tree**: *querqus*, *ci*, and *cus*, an **Oak**: *pinus*, *ni*, and *nus*, a **Pine tree**: *ficus*, *ci*, and *cus*, a **fig**, or a **fig tree**: *colus*, *li*, and *lus*, a **distaff**: *penus*, *ni*, and *nus*, a **provision**: *cornus*, *ni*, and *nus*, a **Dog tree**: *lacus*, *ci*, and *cus*, a **lake**: and *domus*, *mi*, and *mus*, an **house**, or **home**. Though these be not thus found in every case. You shall read also more than these, which you may leave to old Authors.

When you decline *Domus*, omit the cases ending in *me*, *mu*, in the singular; and *mi*, *mis*, in the plural number.

5. Many Adjectives also do abound, but especially such as come of these Substantives; *Arma*, *morum*, **Arms**: *jugum*, *gi*, a **yoke**: *nervus*, *vi*, a **linew**: *sonnus*, *ni*, **sleep**: *clivus*, *vi*, a **side of an hill**: *animus*, *mi*, a **minde**: *latus*, *mi*, **mud**: *frenum*, *ni*, a **bridle**: *cera*, *va*, **wax**: *bacillum*, *li*, a **staff**: of which Substantives you may make Adjectives in *us*, and *is*; as of *Arma*, is made *inermis* and *inermis*, **unweaponed**: *Hilarus*, **merry**, is seldome used, but *hilaris*, is well known to be used.

*Hic & apes, & apis, plebs, plebes. Sunt quoque multa*

*Accepta à Græcis geminam referentia formam;*

*ut, Delphin, delphinus, & hic Elephas, elephantus;*

*Sic Congrus, conger, Meleagrus, sic Meleager;*

*Teucrus, item Teucer. Dabis huc & cætera cuncta;*

*Quæ tibi par ratio dederint & lectio casta.*

*4 Hæc simul & quarti flexus simul atque secundi;*

*Laurus enim lauri facit, & laurus genitivo;*

*Sic quercus, pinus, pro fructu ac arbore ficus,*

*Sic colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur;*

*Sic lacus atque domus; licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.*

*His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquant.*

*Tolle me, mu, mi, mis, si declinare domum vis.*

*5 Et quæ luxuriant sunt, Adjectiva notanda*

*Multa, sed imprimis quot & hæc tibi nomina fundunt*

*Arma, jugum, nervus, somnus, clivusque, animusque,*

*Et quot limus habet, quot frænum, & cera, bacillum;*

*A quibus us, simul is formes; ut, inermus, inermis;*

*Rarior est hilaras, vox est hilaris, bene nota.*

## Chap. 22. Of the kindes of Nouns.

Nouns;  
are,  
I  
Primitive.

I. **T** Hese Nouns which follow, and such like, be  
Primitives, viz.

1 A noun *Collective*, which signifieth a multitude  
in the singular number; as, *Turba*, a rout : *grex*, a  
flock.

2 *Fictitious*, which is feigned of the sound; as,  
*Sibilus*, an hissing: *tintinnabulum*, a tinkling.

3 *Interrogatives*, which wee use in asking; as,  
*Quot*, how many? *qualis*, what an one?

4 *Redditive*, which gives answer to the interro-  
gative; as, *Tot*, so many : *talis*, such an one.

Indefinites, which do not define a  
certain thing.

And these two  
do sometimes  
turn into

*Relatives*, which are referred to the  
word aforegoing; as, *Talis erat*,  
*qualem nunquam vidi*. He was  
such an one as I never saw.

5 *Numerat* which signifies a number on any  
fashion, whose kindes are also many, viz.

1 *Cardinal*, from which numerals proceed; as,  
*unus*, one : *duo*, two.

2 *Ordinals*, which denotes an order; as, *Primus*,  
the first : *secundus*, the second.

3 *Distributive*, which divides the whole into parts;  
as, *Singuli*, several : *bini*, two and two.

4 *Partitives*, which signifieth either many sever-  
ally; as, *Quisque*, every one : *uterque*, both : or one  
of many; as, *Alter*, one of the two : *aliquis*, some one.

5 *Universal*, which signifies a thing universally;  
as, *Omnis*, all : *nullus*, none.

6 *Particular*, which signifieth part of the univer-  
sal; as, *Quidam*, one : *aliquis*, some body.

7 *Multi*.

## Cap. 22. De Speciebus Nominum

I. **N**omina Primitiva sunt hæc que sequuntur, & Nomina sunt  
hujusmodi, viz.

1 *Collectivum*, quod singulari numero multitudinem significat; ut, *Turba, grex*. Primitiva.

2 *Fictitium*, quod à sono fingitur; ut, *Sibilus, tin-*  
*tinnabulum*.

3 *Interrogativum*, quo in interrogando utimur;  
ut, *Quot? qualis?*

4 *Redditivum*, quod Interrogativo responsum red-  
dit; ut, *Tot, talis*.

Atque hæc duo } *Indefinita*, quæ certam rem non de-  
finiunt.  
migrant ali- } *Relativa*, quæ ad vocem præceden-  
quando in } tem referuntur: ut, *Talis erat,*  
} *qualem nunquam vidi*.

5 *Numerale*, quod numerum aliquo modo signifi-  
cat, cujus etiam species multæ sunt, viz.

1 *Cardinale*, à quo alia numeralia dimanant; ut,  
*unus, duo*.

2 *Ordinale*, quod ordinem denotat; ut, *Primus,*  
*secundus*.

3 *Distributivum*, quod totum in partes distribuit;  
ut, *Singuli, bini*.

4 *Partitivum*, quod significat vel multa singula-  
tim; ut, *Quisque, uterque*; vel unum è multis; ut,  
*Alter, aliquis*.

5 *universale*, quod universaliter rem significat;  
ut, *Omnis, nullus*.

6 *Particulare*, quod partem universalis significat;  
ut, *Quidam, aliquis*.

7 *Multiplicative*, which signifies the multiplicity of a thing; as, *Simplex*, *single* : *duplex*, *double*.

8 *Proportional*, which signifieth proportion; as, *Simplum*, *a single part* : *duplum*, *a double part*.

9 *Temporal*, which signifieth time; as, *Binus*, *two years old* : *trinus*, *three years old* : and *biennis*, *of two years standing* : *triennis*, *of three years standing*, or *continuance*.

10 *Ponderal*, which signifieth the weight of a thing; as, *Binarius*, *of two pound weight* : *ternarius*, *three pound weight*.

II. *Derivatives*, are also of many sorts, whereof these be the chief.

2  
Derivative

1 *Verbal*, which is derived of a Verb; as, *Lellio*, *reading* : *flexilis*, *flexible*.

2 *Patrial*, which signifieth the Country; as, *Londonensis*, *a Londoner*.

3 *Gentile*, which betokeneth the Nation, Side, or Sect; as, *Græcus*, *a Greek* : *Ciceronianus*, *one of Ciceroes* : *Christianus*, *a Christian*, or *follower of Christ*.

4 *Patronymic*, which is derived either from the Father, or some other person of the familie; as, *Æacides*, *the son of Æacus*.

5 Patronymic nouns end in	des,	as,	Læoïdes, the son of Latona.	Masculines.
	ion,			
	as,	is,	as,	Feminines.
	is,			
	ne,			

6 *Diminutive*, which lesseneth the signification of its Primitive; as, *Stultulus*, *a little fool* : *lapidulus*, *a little stone*.



7 *Multiplicativum*, quod multiplicatorem rei significat; ut *Simplex, duplex*.

8 *Proportionale*, quod proportionem significat; ut, *Simplum, duplum*.

9 *Temporale*, quod tempus significat; ut, *Binus, trinus*; & *Biennus, triennus*.

10 *Ponderale*, quod pondus significat; ut, *Ternarius, centenarius*.

II. *Derivativa*, etiam sunt multiplicia, horum hæ sunt præcipuæ species.

2  
Derivativa

1 *Verbale*, quod à verbo derivatur; ut, *Leſſio, flexilis*.

2 *Patrium*, quod patriam significat; ut, *Londinensis*.

3 *Gentile*, quod gentem, partes, aut sectam significat; ut, *Græcus, Ciceronianus, Chriſtianus*.

4 *Patronimicum*, quod vel à patre, vel ab alia quâpiam suæ familiæ personâ derivatur; ut, *Æacides*.

5 Definunt autem Patronymica vel in	{	des,	{	ur	{	Latoïdes	}	Mascula.
		ion,				Japétion		
		as				Iliis,		
		is				Menelaïs,		
		ne				Norïne.		Fœminina.

6 *Diminutivum*, quod significationem sui Primi-  
givi minuit; ut, *Stultulus, lapillulus*.

7 *Possessive*, which signifieth owning; or Possession; as, *Regius, the Kings*, or, *of the King: paternus, the fathers*, or, *of a father*.

8 *Denominative*, which hath its name from another, which differeth from it in Termination only; as, *Justitia, justice*, of *justus, just*.

9 *Material*, which signifieth matter; as, *Aureus, golden*.

10 *Local*, which denotes a place; as, *Hortensis, of the garden: agrestis, of the field*.

11 *Participial*, which is made of a participle; as, *Sapiens, wise*.

12 *Adverbial*, which is derived of an Adverb; as, *Crastinus, of to morrow*: And here we must diligently observe,

1 All words whose original is unknown or uncertain, may be accounted Primitives in the Latine tongue; yea, though they flow from another Language; as, *Ego, musa*.

2 Lest you be ridiculous in finding the beginnings of words, you may observe diligently the Terminations which come to the Primitives; as of *Amo, I love*, is made *amator, a lover; amicus, a friend; amabilis, lovely, &c.*



### Chap. 23. Of a Pronoun.

A Pronoun  
is put for a  
Noun.  
There be  
fifteen Pro-  
nouns,

**A** Pronoun is a part of Speech put for a Noun, and supplying its stead.  
There be fifteen Pronouns; *Ego, I, tu, thou, sui, of himself, ille, he, ipse, himself, iste, yond, hic, this, is, it, meus, mine, tuus, thine, suus, his, own, noster, ours, vester, yours, nostras, our country-man, vestras, yours.* To

7 *Possessivum*, quod possessionem significat; ut, *Regius, paternus*.

8 *Denominativum*, quod ab alio solâ Terminatone differt; ut, *Iustitia, à iustus*.

9 *Materiale*, quod materiam significat; ut, *Aureus*.

10 *Locale*, quod locum denotat; ut, *Hortensis, aegrestis*.

11 *Participiale*, quod à Participio fit; ut, *Sapientis*.

12 *Adverbiale*, quod ab Adverbio derivatur; ut, *Craſſinus, à cras*. Diligenter autem hic observandum, quòd,

1 Omnes voces habeantur pro Primitivis in Latina linguâ, quarum origo, in eadem vel ignota vel incerta est; imò, licet ab alia linguâ dimanent; ut, *Ego, musa*.

2 Nè ridiculus sis in investigandis dictionum originibus, diligenter observes Terminaciones quæ Primitivis accedunt; ut, ab *Amo*, fit *amator, amicus, amabilis*, &c.



Cap. 23.  
De Pronomine.

**P**ronomen est pars Orationis pro Nomine posita, & vicem ejus supplens.

Pronomina sunt quindecim; *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras*.

Pronomen pro nomine ponitur. Sunt autem Pronomina quindecim.

7 *Possessive*, which signifieth owning; or Possession; as, *Regius, the Kings*, or, *of the King: paternus, the fathers*, or, *of a father*.

8 *Denominative*, which hath its name from another, which differeth from it in Termination only; as, *Justitia, justice*, of *justus, just*.

9 *Material*, which signifieth matter; as, *Aureus, golden*.

10 *Local*, which denotes a place; as, *Hortensis, of the garden: agrestis, of the field*.

11 *Participial*, which is made of a participle; as, *Sapiens, wise*.

12 *Adverbial*, which is derived of an Adverb; as, *Crastinus, of to morrow*: And here we must diligently observe,

1 All words whose original is unknown or uncertain, may bee accounted Primitives in the Latine tongue; yea, though they flow from another Language; as, *Ego, musa*.

2 Lest you be ridiculous in finding the beginnings of words, you may observe diligently the Terminations which come to the Primitives; as of *Amo, I love*, is made *amator, a lover*; *amicus, a friend*; *amabilis, lovely*, &c.



### Chap. 23. Of a Pronoun.

A Pronoun  
is put for a  
Noun.  
There be  
fifteen Pro-  
nouns.

**A** Pronoun is a part of Speech put for a Noun, and supplying its stead.

There be fifteen Pronouns; *Ego, I, tu, thou, sui, of himself, ille, he, ipse, himself, iste, pond, hic, this, is, it, meus, mine, tuus, thine, suus, his, own, noster, ours, vester, yours, nostras, our country-man, vestras, yours*. To

7 *Possessivum*, quod possessionem significat; ut, *Regius, paternus*.

8 *Denominativum*, quod ab alio solâ Terminatione differt; ut, *Iustitia, à iustus*.

9 *Materiale*, quod materiam significat; ut, *Aureus*.

10 *Locale*, quod locum denotat; ut, *Hortensis, agrestis*.

11 *Participiale*, quod à Participio fit; ut, *Sapientis*.

12 *Adverbiale*, quod ab Adverbio derivatur; ut, *Craſſinus, à cras*. Diligenter autem hic observandum, quòd,

1 Omnes voces habeantur pro Primitivis in Latina linguâ, quarum origo, in eadem vel ignota vel incerta est; imò, licet ab alia linguâ dimanent; ut, *Ego, musa*.

2 Nè ridiculus sis in investigandis dictionum originibus, diligenter observes Terminaciones quæ Primitivis accedunt; ut, ab *Amo*, fit *amator, amicus, amabilis*, &c.



Cap. 23.  
*De Pronomine.*

**P**ronomen est pars Orationis pro Nomine posita, & vicem ejus supplens.

Pronomina sunt quindecim; *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras*.

Pronomen pro nomine ponitur. Sunt autem Pronomina quindecim.

To which may be added, *Qui*, which : *quis*, who :  
*cujus*, whose : *cujas*, whose country-man.

Whereof  
 some be

And some of  
 these bee  
 called

Primitives,

and some

Derivative.

According to their Species, Pro-  
 nouns are called

Pronoun Substantives, viz. *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*  
 which are referred to three genders,  
 without varying their termination.

Pronoun Adjectives, viz. all the rest  
 which be varied by three genders; as,  
*Meus*, *mea*, *meum*.

1 Primitives, which are the first word; as,  
*Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *qui*.

and these be  
 Demonstratives, which are used in  
 shewing a thing not spoken of be-  
 fore; as, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *hic*, *is*.

call'd Relatives, which we use in rehear-  
 sing a thing that was spoken of  
 before; as, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *is*, and *qui*.

2 Derivatives, are such as are derived of their  
 Primitives, as, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noſter*, *veſter*,  
*Noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujus*, *cujas*, are derived frō  
 the Genitive caſes of their Primitives, *Mei*,  
*tui*, *sui*, *noſtri*, *veſtri*, *noſtrum*, *veſtrum*, and  
*quis* from the Nominative caſe *qui*.

Of theſe ſome are

Poſſeſſives, which ſignifie owning or Poſſeſſion; as,  
*Meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

Gentiles, which ſignifie belonging to Countries, or  
 Nations, to Sects, or Faſtions; as, *noſtras*, *veſtras*, and  
*cujas*, which were once uſed as Nouns in *atis*, and *ate*.

Finiter, which define, or ſet out a certain perſon ;  
 as, *Ego*, *tu*.

Indefinites, which do not define a certain perſon ;  
 as, *Quis*, *cujus*.

Reciprocals, which betake themſelves to the ſame  
 third perſon which went before it; as, *Sui*, *suius*.

Peter intreateth thou wouldſt not forſake him,  
 Every man ſpareth his own Errours.

Every man is drawn of his own pleaſure.

There

Quibus addi possint, *Qui, quis, cujus & cujas*.

Horum autem alia dicuntur. *Substantiva*, viz. *Ego, tu, sui*, quæ ad tria genera referuntur sine variatione.  
*Adjectiva*, viz. omnia reliqua quæ per tria genera variantur; ut, *Meus, mea, meum*.

Secundum Speciem suam dicuntur.

1 *Primitiva*, quæ sunt primæ voces, viz. *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, & qui*.

Quorum alia Primitiva.

Acque hæc vocantur *Demonstrativa*, quæ in re aliquâ non prius dictâ demonstrandâ usurpantur; ut, *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, hic, is*.

*Relativa*, quibus in repetenda re aliquâ prius dictâ utimur; ut, *Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is & qui*.

2 *Derivativa*, quæ derivantur à suis Primitivis; ut, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, cujus & cujas*.

Et alia Derivativa.

Ex his etiam alia sunt.

*Possessiva*, quæ possessionem significant; ut, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*.

*Gentilia*, quæ gentem aut nationem, vel partes & sectas significant; ut, *Nostras, vestras & cujas*, quæ proferebantur olim ut nomina in *âtis, & âte*.

*Finite*, quæ definiunt certam personam; ut, *Ego, tu*.

*Indefinita*, quæ certam personam non definiunt; ut, *Quis, cujus*.

*Reciproca*, quæ recipiunt se ad eandem tertiam personam quæ præcessit; ut, *Sui, suus*.

Petrus rogat nè se deseras.

Parcit quisque erroribus suis.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas, i.e. *Quisque trahitur à voluptate sua*.

Decli-



## There be four Declensions of Pronouns.

Pronouns

have four

Declensions.

The Genitive case singular of the first Declension endeth in *i* : of the Second in *ius*, or *jus* : of the Third in *i*, *e*, *i* : of the Fourth in *atis*.

Of the first

are, *Ego*, *tu*,*is*.

*Ego*, *tu*, *is*, be of the first Declension, and are thus declined.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Ego</i> , I	Plural.	N.	<i>Nos</i> , we
	G.	<i>Mei</i> , of me		G.	<i>Nostrum</i> , <i>nostrum</i> , of us
	D.	<i>Mibi</i> , to me		D.	<i>Nobis</i> , to us
	A.	<i>Me</i> , me		A.	<i>Nos</i> , us
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>à Me</i> , from me		A.	<i>à Nobis</i> , from us

Singular.	N.	<i>Tu</i> , thou	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Vos</i> , ye
	G.	<i>Tui</i> , of thee		G.	<i>Vestrum</i> , <i>vestrum</i> , of you
	D.	<i>Tibi</i> , to thee		D.	<i>Vobis</i> , to you
	A.	<i>Te</i> , thee		A.	<i>Vos</i> , you
	V.	<i>ô Tu</i> , ô thou		V.	<i>ô Vos</i> , ô ye
	A.	<i>à Te</i> , from thee		A.	<i>à Vobis</i> , from you

Sing. G. *Sui*, of himself, or  
and D. *Sibi*, themselves  
Plur. A. *Se*  
A. *à Se*

But it wants the Nominat. and Vocative cases in both Numbers.

Of the second, *ille*,  
*ipse*, *iste*.

*Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*, and *quis* be of the second Declension, and be thus declined.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Iste</i> , <i>istis</i> , <i>istud</i>	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Isti</i> , <i>istae</i> , <i>ista</i>
	G.	<i>Istius</i>		G.	<i>Istorum</i> , <i>istarum</i> , <i>istorum</i>
	D.	<i>Isti</i>		D.	<i>Istis</i>
	A.	<i>Istum</i> , <i>istam</i> , <i>istud</i>		A.	<i>Istos</i> , <i>istas</i> , <i>ista</i>
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>Isto</i> , <i>istam</i> , <i>isto</i>		A.	<i>Istis</i>

*Ille*, and *ipse* are Declined like *iste*, saving that *ipse* in the Neuter Gender, in the Nominative and the Accusative case singular maketh *ipsum*.

Hic



*Declinationes Pronominum sunt quatuor.*

Genitivus Singularis Primæ Declinationis exit in *i* : Secundæ in *ius*, vel *jus* : Tertiæ in *i*, *a*, *i* : Quartæ in *at* *us*.

*Ego, tu, sui*, Primæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur.

Pronomina quatuor habent Declinationes.

Primæ sunt *Ego, tu, sui*.

Singulariter,	N.	Ego	Pluraliter,	N.	Nos
	G.	Mei		G.	Nostrum, vel Nostri
	D.	Mihi		D.	Nobis
	A.	Me		A.	Nos
	V.			V.	
	A.	à Me		A.	à Nobis

Singular,	N.	Tu	Plural.	N.	Vos
	G.	Tui		G.	Vestrum, vel Vestri
	D.	Tibi		D.	Vobis
	A.	Te		A.	Vos
	V.	ô Tu		V.	ô Vos
	A.	à Te		A.	à Vobis

Sing. & Plur. { Gen. { *Sui*  
                  { Dar. { *Sibi*  
                  { Acc. { *Se*  
                  { Abl. { *à Se* } Caret autem Nominativo & Vocativo utriusque Numeri.

*Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui, & quis*, secundæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur.

Secundæ, *Ille, ipse, iste*.

Singular,	N.	<i>Iste, ista, istud</i>	Plural.	N.	<i>Isti, isti, ista, ista</i>
	G.	<i>istius</i>		G.	<i>Istorum, istarum, istorum</i>
	D.	<i>isti</i>		D.	<i>Istis</i>
	A.	<i>Istum, istam, istud</i>		A.	<i>Istos, istas, ista</i>
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>Istos, istas, isto</i>		A.	<i>Istis</i>

*Ille*, & *ipse* variantur sicut *iste*, nisi quod *ipse* in Neutro genere in Nominativo & Accusativo singulari facit *ipsum*.

Hic

Hic, is

Hic is declined as is aforeſaid in the Articles,  
page 24.

Singul.	N.	Is, ea, id,	Plural.	N.	Ii, ea, ea
	G.	Ejus		G.	Eorū, earū, eorū
	D.	Ei		D.	Iis vel eis
	A.	Eum, eam, id		A.	Eos, eas, ea
	V.			V.	
	A.	Eo, eā, eo		A.	Iis veleis

So alſo is the  
Compound of is  
and demum de-  
clined.

Sing.	N.	Idem, eadem, idem.
	G.	Ejusdem
	D.	Eidem
	A.	Eundem, eandem, idem.

Singular.	N.	Qui, quæ, quod,	Plural.	N.	Qui, quæ, quæ
	G.	Cujus		G.	Quorum, quarū, quorū
	D.	Cui		D.	Quibus vel queis
	A.	Quem, quā, quod		A.	Quos, quas, quæ
	V.			V.	
	A.	Quo } quā, quo,		A.	Quibus Queis

After this manner alſo is declined *Quis, que, quid,*

But its cōpound thus, { N. } *Quisquis, quicquid,*  
 { A. } *Quicquid*  
 { A. } *quoquo, quaquæ, quoquo.*

Of the third  
*Meus, tuus,*  
*suus, noſter,*  
*veſter, cujus.*

*Meus, tuus, suus, noſter, veſter* and *cujus*, be of the  
 third Declenſion, and are declined like Adjec-  
 tives of three Terminations on this manner..

Nominativo	<i>Meus, mea, meum</i>	Genitivo	<i>Mei, meæ, mei</i>	And ſoin the other caſes.
	<i>Tuus, tua, tuum</i>		<i>Tuæ, tuæ, tuæ</i>	
	<i>Suus, ſua, ſuum</i>		<i>Sui, ſuæ, ſui</i>	
	<i>Noſter, noſtra, noſtrum</i>		<i>Noſtri, noſtræ, noſtri</i>	
	<i>Veſter, veſtra, veſtrum</i>		<i>Veſtri, veſtræ, veſtri</i>	
	<i>Cujus, cujæ, cujum</i>			

But *Meus* hath *Mi, mea, meum*, in the vocative caſe  
 ſingular.

No-

Hic declinatur ut prius in Articulis dictum est, Hic, is  
p. 25.

Singulariter,	N.	Is ea, id	Pluraliter,	N.	Il, ea, ea
	G.	Ejus		G.	Eorū, earū, eorū
	D.	Ei		D.	Iis vel eis
	A.	Eum, eam, id		A.	Eos, eas, ea
	V.			V.	
	A.	Eo, eā, eo		A.	Iis vel eis.

Sic variatur etiam  
compositum ab  
is, & demum : Sing. N. Idem, eadem, idem  
G. Eiusdem  
D. Eidem  
A. Eundem, eandem, idem :

Singulariter,	N.	Qui, quæ, quod	Plural.	N.	Qui, quæ, quæ
	G.	Cujus		G.	quorum, quarum, quorū
	D.	Cui		D.	Quibus vel quæis
	A.	Quem, quam, quod		A.	Quos quæ quæ
	V.			V.	
	A.	{ Quo } quā, { Qui } quo.		A.	{ Quibus Quæis

Ad hunc modum etiam variatur Quis, quæ, quid,  
&c.

Ejus compositum sic: N. Quisquis, quicquid  
A. Quicquid  
A. Quoquo, quaquā, quoquo.

Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester & ejus, tertiæ sunt  
Declinationis & variantur ad formam Adjectivorum  
trium Terminationum in hunc modum. Tertie  
Mens, tuus,  
suis, noster,  
vester, &  
cujus.

Nominativo	Meus mea meum	Genitivo	Mei meæ mei.	Et sic in reliquis casibus
	Tuus tuæ tuum		Tui tuæ tui	
	Suus suæ suum		Sui suæ sui	
	Noster nostra nostrum		Nostri nostra nostri	
	Vester vestra vestrum		Vestri vestra vestri	
	Cujus cujæ cujum			

Sed Mens habet Mi, meæ, meum, in Vocativo Singu-  
lari.

of the  
Fourth, No-  
stras, vestras,  
& cujas.

*Nostras, vestras* and *cujas*, be of the fourth Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of three Articles.

As, Nom. { *Noſtras,*  
          { *Veſtras,* } Gen. { *Noſtratis,*  
          { *Cujas,* }       { *veſtratis,* } &c.  
                              { *Cujatis,*

**Pronouns are compounded.**

### Of the Com- position of Pronouns.

I Among themselves; as, *Ego-ipse, mei-ipsius, mihi-ipsi. Istic & illic.*

*Istic* and *istic* be } Nom. } *Istic, istac, istoc* vel *istuc.*  
thus declined, } Acc. } *Istin, istanc, istoc,* vel *istuc.*  
                      } Abl. } *Istoc, istac, iston*  
                      Plur. Nom. & Acc. *istec.*

2 With Nouns; as, *Aliquis, hujusmodi.*

3 With Verbs; as, *Quintus, quilibet.*

4 With Adverbs; as, *Nequis*.

So { *Eccum, eccam,* } of ecce { *Ellum, ellam,* } of est  
also { *Eccor, eccas,* } and is. { *Ellos, ellas,* } & ille.

5 With a Conjunction; as, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6 With a Preposition; as, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7 With Syllabical additions; *mer, te, pre, ce, cine*, of which *mer*, is added to the first and second person; as, *Egomer, tuimer*: also we say *fibimer* and *semer*, but we do not say *tumer*, lest it should seem a Verb of *tumeo* to swell.

*Te* is added only to *tu* and *te*; as, *Tute, tete*.

*Pte* is added to these Ablatives Feminine; *Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*; as, *Meâpte, tuâpte, suâpte, nostrâpte, vestrâpte*; and sometimes to their Masculines and Neuters; as, *Meopte labore, suopte jumento*.

*Ce* is added to all cases of these Pronouns, *Hic, ille, iste*, as oft as they end in *s*; as, *Hujusce, hujusce, hujusce*: we say also, *hujusce, hujusce, hujusce*; and sometimes *hice* is read.

**Cine**

*Nostras, vestras, & cujas*, quartæ sunt Declinationis, *Quartæ*  
& variantur ad formam Adjectivorum trium Arti- *Nostras, ves-*  
culorum. *stras, cujas.*

ut, Nom. { *Nostras,*  
          { *Vestras,* } Gen. { *Nostratis,*  
          { *Cujas,* }       { *Vestratis,* } &c.  
                          { *Cujatis,* }

Pronomina Componuntur,

1 Inter se; ut, *Ego-ipse, me-ipsius, mihi-ipsi. Istic,*  
& *illie.*

*Istic & illie* { Nom. } *Istic, istæ, istoc, vel istuc.*  
                  { Acc. } *Istinc, istanc, istoc, vel istuc.*  
                  { Abl. } *Istoc, istac, istoc.*  
                  Plur. Nom. & Acc. *istæc.*

2 Cum Nominibus; ut, *Aliquis, hujusmodi.*

3 Cum Verbis; ut, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4 Cum Adverbiis; ut, *Nequis.*

Sic { *Eccum, eccam,* } ab ecce { *Ekum, ellâ,* } ab ecce  
etiam { *Eccos, eccas,* } & is, { *Ellos, ellas,* } & ille

5 Cum Conjunctione; ut, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6 Cum Præpositione; ut, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7 Cum syllabicis adjectionibus, *met, te, pte, ce, cine;*  
quarum *met* adicitur primæ & secundæ personæ; ut,  
*Egomet, tuimet, sibimet,* etiam & *semet* dicimus. Sed  
*tumet* non dicimus, nè videatur esse Verbum à *tu-*  
*meo.*

*Te* adicitur tantum *tu* & *te*; ut, *Tute, tete.*

*Pte* apponitur istis Ablativis fœmininis, *Meâ, tuâ,*  
*suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ;* ut, *Meâpte, tuâpte, suâpte, nostrâpte,*  
*vestrâpte,* & interdum eorundem masculinis & neutris;  
ut, *Meôpte labore, suopte jumento.*

*Ce* adicitur obliquis horum Pronominum, *Hic, ille,*  
*ipse,* quoties in s desinunt; ut, *Hujusce, hosce, hisce.*  
Dicimus etiam *hiece, huncce, & ejusce,* & interdum  
*hice* legitur.

Cine

Cine is put to the Nominative and Accusative of  
*Hic*; as, *Hiccine, haccine, hoccine; Huncine, hancine,*  
*hoccine, &c.*

*Quis* and *qui* are compounded on this mannerr;  
*Quis* in composition is set after these particles,  
 viz.

<i>Et</i>	} as,	<i>Ecquis, what one.</i>
<i>Ne,</i>		<i>Nequis, no one.</i>
<i>Alius,</i>		<i>Aliquis, some one.</i>
<i>Num,</i>		<i>Nunquis, whether any one.</i>
<i>Si</i>		<i>Siquis, if any one.</i>

And these in the Feminine gender singular, and in  
 the Neuter plural make *qua*, not *quæ*; as, *Siqua mu-*  
*lier, If any woman. Nequa flagitia, Not any vil-*  
*lany.* But *Ecquis* makes *ecqua* and *ecquæ* in the Fe-  
 minine gender.

*Quis* in composition is set before these particles,  
 viz.

<i>Nam,</i>	} as,	<i>Quisnam.</i>
<i>Piam,</i>		<i>Quispian,</i>
<i>Putas,</i>		<i>Quisputas,</i>
<i>Quam,</i>		<i>Quisquam,</i>
<i>Que,</i>		<i>Quisque.</i>

*Qui* in composition is set before these particles;  
 viz.

<i>Dam,</i>	} as,	<i>Quidam, a certain one.</i>
<i>Vis,</i>		<i>Quivis, who you will.</i>
<i>Libet,</i>		<i>Quilibet, who that will.</i>
<i>Cunque</i>		<i>Quicumque, whosoever.</i>

And these every where keep *que*; as, *Quenam do-*  
*ctrina, what learning: quæcunque negotia, whatsoe-*  
*ver business.*

Cine apponitur casibus in *c* desinentibus; ut, *Hic cine*  
*beccine, hoccine, hunc cine, hanc cine, hoccine, &c.*

*Quis & qui* in hunc modum componuntur.

*Quis* in compositione hisce particulis postponitur,  
 viz.

Et	} ur,	Ecquis
Ne		Nequis
Alius		Aliquis
Num		Numquis
Si		Siquis

Et hæc tam in foeminino singulari, quàm in neutro plurali *quæ* habent, non *quæ*; ut, *Siqua mulier, Nequa flagitia.* Sed *Ecquis* habet *ecquæ & ecqua* in foeminino.

His autem particulis præponitur *Quis* in compositione, viz.

Nam	} ur,	Quisnam
Piam		Quispiam
Putas		Quisputas
Quam		Quisquam
Que		Quisque

*Qui* in compositione præponitur his particulis,  
 viz.

Dam	} ur,	Quidam
Vis		Quivis
Libet		Quilibet
Cunque		Quicunque

Et hæc ubique *quæ* retinent; ut, *Quanam doctrina; quacunque negotia.*





## Chap. 24. Of a Verb and its Kindes.

III.  
A Verb signifieth to be,  
to do, or to  
suffer. It is  
Personal,

or,

Impersonal.

There be-  
long to a  
Verb, five  
Kindes.  
Active,

Passive,

Neuter.

**A** Verb is a part of Speech which signifieth to be, to do, or to suffer; as *Sum*, *I am*, *Amo*, *I love*, *Amor*, *I am loved*.

*Personal*, which is distinguished by three Persons in both Numbers; as, Singul. *Amo*, *I love*: *Amas*, *thou lovest*, *Amat*, *he loveth*, Plur. *Amamus*, *we love*, *Amatis*, *ye love*, *Amant*, *they love*.

*Impersonal*, which hath no certain signification of Person or Number, unless it be by means of an oblique case; as, *Oportet me*, *It behoveth me*; *oportet te*, *it behoveth thee*, *statui me*, *it is good of me*, or *I stand*, *statui tibi*, *it is good of thee*, or *thou standest*.

There belong to a Verb, I. Kindes, II. *Modi*. III. *Tense*. IV. *Conjugation*.

1. There be five Kindes of Verbs.

1 *Active*, which signifieth to do, and endeth in *a*, as, *Amo*, *I love*: and by taking to *er*, may be made a *Passive*, as, *Amor*, *I am loved*.

2 *Passive*, which signifieth to suffer, and endeth in *or*; and by taking away *r*, it may be an *Active*; as, *Amo*, *I love*.

3 A *Neuter*, endeth in *o* or *m*, and cannot take *r* to make it a *Passive*; as, *Curro*, to run, *Sum* *I am*.

There be three Kindes of *Neuters*, according to their signification.

*Substantive*, which signifieth the Being of a thing, as, *Sum*, *I am*.

*Absolute*, which by it self maketh up the sense; as, *Dormio*, *I sleep*.

*Transitive*, whose action passeth into a thing of new signification; as, *Curro stadium*, *I run a race*.



## Cap. 24. De Verbo, &amp; ejus Accidentibus.

**V**ERBUM est pars Orationis, quæ esse aliquid agereve; aut pati significat; ut, *Sum, Amo*  
*Amor.*

III.  
 Verbum esse  
 agere, aut  
 pati signifi-  
 cat, Estque  
 Personale,

vel,

Impersonale

Verbum dividitur in  
 primis in

*r* **Personale**, quod tribus personis in utroq; numero distinguitur; ut, Singul. *Amo Amas, Amat.* Plur. *Amamus, Amatis, Amant.*

*r* **Impersonale**, quod nullius personæ aut numeri certam significationem; nisi ex adjuncto casu obliquo, sortitur; ut, *Oportet me, oportet te; Statui à me, statui à te.*

Verbo quidem accidunt, I. *Genus.* II. *Modus.* III. *Tempus.* IV. *Conjugatio.*

Accidunt  
 Verbo quin-  
 que genera.

## I. Quinque sunt Genera Verborum.

1 **Activum**, quod agere significat, & in *o* finitur; ut, *Amo*, assumendo verò *r* **Passivum** formare potest; **Activum**,  
 ut, *Amor.*

2 **Passivum**, quod pati significat, & in *or* finitur, dempto verò *r*, **Activi** formam resumere potest; ut, *A-*  
*mo.* **Passivum**,

3 **Neutrum**, quod in *o* vel *m* finitur, nec admittit *r*, ut fiat **Passivum**; ut, *Curro, Sum.* **Neutrum**.

Neutorum tria sunt genera secundum eorum significationem.

**Substantivum**, quod substantiam rei significat; ut, *Sum.*

**Absolutum**, quod ipsum per se sensum absolvit; ut, *Dormio.*

**Transitivum**, cujus actio in rem cognatæ significationis transit; ut, *Curro stadium.*

Deponent.

4 A *Deponent* endeth in *or*, and hath either the Active signification; as, *Loquor verbum*, *I speak a word*: or the Neuter; as, *Glorior*, *I boast*.

Commune.

5 A *Commune* endeth in *or*, and hath both the Active and Passive signification; as, *Osculor*, *I kiss, or am kissed*.

Four Moods

II. There be four *Moods*.

Indicative

1 The *Indicative* simply sheweth a thing, or asketh a question; as, *Ego amo*, *I love*: *Amas tu?* *lovest thou?*

Imperative

2 The *Imperative* biddeth or intreateth; as, *Amas tu*, *do thou love*: *Da mihi*, *give me*.

Subjunctive

3 The *Subjunctive* is joyned with another Verb in the same sentence; as, *Cum amarem*, *eram miser*, *when I loved, I was a wretch*.

And this mood is called the *Optative*, when it is used in *wishing*; and the *Potential*, when it is construed by *may, can, would, should, or ought*.

Infinitive.  
To which  
belong

4 The *Infinitive* doth not define a certain person, or number; as, *Amare*, *to love*. And to this Mood belong three *Gerunds*, which have their case or ending of a Noun, and their signification of a Verb.

Three Gerunds,  
*Di, do, dum*.

G. *Di* } as, *Amandi*, of loving, or being loved  
D. Ab. *Do* }  
N. Ac. *Dum* } *Amando*, in loving, or being loved  
              *Amandum*, to love, or to be loved.

Two *Supines*  
*am, and n*.

Two *Supines*,  
whereof

{ The first endeth in *um*, and signifieth  
Actively; as, *Amatum*, *to love*.  
The latter endeth in *n*, and signifieth  
Passively; as, *Amatu*, *to be loved*.

Five Tenses,  
Present,

III. Verbs have five *Tenses*.

Three only distinct; *Present*, *Preterperfect*, *Futur*.

1 The *Present tense* which speaketh of the time present, and signifies now to do, or to be done; as, *amo*, *I love*.

2 The

4 *Depoens*, quod in *or* finitum, vel activi significationem habet; ut, *Loquor verbum*; vel neutrius, ut, *Glorior*. Depoens

5 *Commune*, quod in *or* finitum, tam Activam, quam Passivam significationem habet; ut *Osculor*. Commune.

II. *Modi Verborum* sunt quatuor :

1 *Indicativus* simpliciter aliquid indicat, aut interrogat; ut, *Ego amo, amas tu?* Modi quatuor. Indicativus.

2 *Imperativus* imperat aut rogat; ut, *Amatu, Da mihi*. Imperativus

3 *Subjunctivus* subjungitur alteri Verbo in eadem sententiâ; ut, *Cum amarem, eram miser*. Subjunctivus

Arque hic Modus dicitur *Optativus*, quando in optando usurpatur, *Potentialis* verò quando per *Possum, volo, aut debeo* exponitur.

4 *Infinitivus* certam personam aut numerum non definit; ut, *Amare*. Et ad hunc Modum pertinent *Tria Gerundia* quæ à nomine casum, & à Verbo significationem accipiunt. Infinitivus Ad quem pertinent.

G. *Di* } *Amandi*  
D.Ab. *Do* } ut, *Amando*  
N.A. *Dum* } *Amandam* Gerundia, *di, do, dum*.

Duo *Supina*, } Primus exit in *um*, & Activè significat  
quorum } ut, *Amatum*.  
} Posterius exit in *u*, & Passivè significat; ut, *Amatu*. Supina duo *um & u*.

III. *Tempore Verborum* sunt quinque,

Tria tantum distincta; *Præsens, Præterperfectum, Futurum*. Tempora quinque. Præsent.

1 *Præsens*, quod de tempore præsentis loquitur, & aliquid nunc agere vel fieri significat; ut, *Amo*.

H 3

2 Pre-

Imperfect.

2 The *Preterimperfect tense* speaketh of the time not yet perfectly past; and signifieth a thing to bee done, but not yet finished; as, *Amabam, I loved, or I did love.*

Preterperfect.

3 The *Preterperfect tense* speaketh of the time perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to be now finished, as, *Amavi, I have loved.*

Preterpluperfect.

4 The *Preterpluperfect tense* speaketh of the time more than perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to be long since finished, as, *Amaveram, I had loved.*

Future.

5 The *Future tense* speaketh of the time to come, and signifieth something to be done for the future; as, *Amabo, I will love.*

The Future tense of the Subjunctive Mood is called *Exatē*; because it hath the signification both of the Preter tense, and Future tense together; as, *Cum Amavero, when I shall have loved.*

Four Conjugations.

IV. *Conjugation* is the Varying of a Verb by Moods and Tenses.

Verbs have four *Conjugations*, which are known one from another by certain tokens, or characteristic letters.

Whereof the first hath *a* long.

1 The first Conjugation hath *a* long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Amā-re, amāris.*

Second hath *e* long.

2 The second Conjugation hath *e* long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Docē-re, docēris.*

Third hath short *e*.

3 The third Conjugation hath *e* short before *re* and *ris*; as, *Legē-re, legeris.*

Fourth hath *i* long before *re* and *ris*.

4 The fourth Conjugation hath *i* long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Audī-re, audīris.*

in the Infinitive Mood Present tense of Verbs in *o*, and in the second person singular of the Indicative Mood Present tense of verbs in *or*.

2 *Præteritum imperfectum*, de tempore nondum Imperfectum.  
perfectè præterito loquitur, & aliquid fieri, sed non-  
dum absolvi significat; ut, *Amabam*.

3 *Præteritum Perfectum* de tempore perfectè præ- Perfectum.  
terito loquitur, & aliquid jam perfici significat; ut,  
*Amavi*.

4 *Præteritum plusquam perfectum* de tempore plus- Plusquam!  
quàm perfectò loquitur, & aliquid jamdiu perfectum perfectum,  
significat; ut, *Amaveram*.

5 *Futurum* loquitur de tempore futuro, & aliquid Futurum.  
de futuro significat; ut, *Amabo*.

Subjunctivi Futurum dicitur *Exactum*, quod præ-  
teriti simul & futuri significationem habeat; ut, *Cùm*  
*Amavero*.

IV. *Conjugatio* est variatio Verbi per Modos &  
Tempora.

Verborum quatuor sunt Conjugationes, quæ à se in- Conjugatio-  
vicem certis indicibus, sive literis caracteristicis di- nes quatuor.  
stinguuntur.

1 Prima Conjugatio habet a  
productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *A-*  
*māre, Amāris*.

Prima habet  
a longum.

2 Secunda Conjugatio habet  
e productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut,  
*Docere, Doceris*.

in Infinitivo præ-  
senti Verborum  
in o, & in secunda

Secunda e  
longum.

3 Tertia Conjugatio habet  
e correptum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Le-*  
*gere, legeris*.

personâ singulari  
Indicativi præ-  
sentis Verborum  
in or.

Tertia e bre-  
ve,

4 Quarta Conjugatio habet  
i Productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut,  
*Audire, Audiris*.

Quarta i  
longum ante  
re & ris.

## Chap. 25. Of the forms of the first Conjugation.

Verba in (o) prima Conjugationis variantur sicut <i>Amo.</i>	Verbs in (o) of the first Conjugati- on bee varied like <i>Amo</i> , &c.	Verba in (or) prima Conjugationis va- riantur sicut <i>A-</i> <i>mor.</i>	Verbs in (or) of the first Con- jugation be va- ried like <i>Amor.</i>
---	---	--	---

*Amo, amas, amavi, amare, amatum,*

*A-* { *amiris* } *ami-* { *sum* } *amari.*  
*mor,* { *amare,* } *tus,* { *fui,* }

## The Indicative Mood.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amo</i> I love	<i>Amor</i> I am	1 <i>Amis</i> thou art	love
	2 <i>Amas</i> thou lovest		2 <i>Amiris</i> thou art	
	3 <i>Amat</i> he loveth		3 <i>Amare</i> he is	
	1 <i>Amamus</i> we		4 <i>Amatur</i> we are	
	2 <i>Amatis</i> ye		5 <i>Amamini</i> ye are	
	3 <i>Amant</i> they		6 <i>Amantur</i> they are	

Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amabam</i> I did	<i>Amabar</i> I was	1 <i>Amabas</i> thou wast	love
	2 <i>Amabas</i> thou didst		2 <i>Amabamini</i> thou wast	
	3 <i>Amabat</i> he did		3 <i>Amabare</i> he was	
	1 <i>Amabamus</i> we did		4 <i>Amabatur</i> he was	
	2 <i>Amabatis</i> ye did		5 <i>Amabamur</i> we were	
	3 <i>Amabant</i> they did		6 <i>Amabamini</i> ye were	
			7 <i>Amabantur</i> they were	

Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amavi</i> I have	<i>Amatus</i>	1 <i>sum</i> I have	been loved
	2 <i>Amavisti</i> thou hast		2 <i>fui</i> thou hast	
	3 <i>Amavit</i> he hath		3 <i>es</i> he hath	
	1 <i>Amavimus</i> we have		4 <i>fuisse</i> he hath	
	2 <i>Amavisti</i> ye have		5 <i>est</i> he hath	
	3 <i>Amaverunt</i> they		6 <i>fuisse</i> we have	
	<i>Amavere</i> (have)	<i>Amati</i>	7 <i>sumus</i> we have	
			8 <i>fuisse</i> ye have	
			9 <i>estis</i> ye have	
			10 <i>fuisse</i> they have	
			11 <i>sunt</i>	
			12 <i>fuerunt</i> they have	
			13 <i>fuerunt</i>	

Preter-

had loved

had been loved

Preterpluperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1	Amaveram	I had	Amatus	{	eram	I had	been loved
	2	Amaveras	thou hadst		{	fueram	thou hadst	
	3	Amaverat	he had			eras	he had	
	1	Amaveramus	we had		{	fueras	we had	
	2	Amaveratis	ye had			erat	ye had	
	3	Amaverant	they had			fuerat	they had	
				Amati	{	eramus	we had	
						fueramus	ye had	
						eratis	ye had	
						fueratis	they had	
						erant	they had	
						fuerant		

Future Plur. I Sing.	1	Amabo	I shall	Amabatur	{	Amaber	I shall be	loved
	2	Amabis	thou shalt		{	Amaberis	thou shalt be	
	3	Amabit	he shall			Amabere	he shall be	
	1	Amabimus	we shall		{	Amabimur	we shall be	
	2	Amabitis	ye shall			Amabimini	ye shall be	
	3	Amabunt	they shall			Amabuntur	they shall be	
				Amabuntur				

The Imperative Mood hath one onely Tense,  
viz. the Present Tense.

Preter tense Plur. I Sing.	2	{ Ama	Lovethou	{	Amare	Be thou	loved
	3	{ Ama	let him love		Amator	let him be	
	1	{ Ame	let us love		Ametur	let us be	
	2	{ Amato	love ye		Amator	be ye	
	3	{ Amemus	let the love		Amamini	be they	
		{ Amati			Amamini		
					Amentur		
					Amantur		
					Amantur		

The



The Potential Mood.

<p>Present tense Plur. I Sing.</p>	<p>1 <i>Amer</i> I may 2 <i>Amas</i> thou mayst 3 <i>Amet.</i> he may  1 <i>Amemus</i> we may 2 <i>Ametis</i> ye may 3 <i>Ament</i> they may</p>	<p>love</p>	<p><i>Amer</i> I may <i>Ameris</i> thou mayst <i>Amere</i> <i>Ametur</i> he may <i>Amentur</i> we may <i>Amentur</i> ye may <i>Amentur</i> they may</p>	<p>be loved</p>
<p>Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.</p>	<p>1 <i>Amarem</i> I might (est) 2 <i>Amares</i> thou might- 3 <i>Amaret</i> he might  1 <i>Amaremus</i> we might 2 <i>Amaretis</i> ye might 3 <i>Amarent</i> they might</p>	<p>love</p>	<p><i>Amare</i> I might <i>Amareris</i> thou might- <i>Amarere</i> (est) <i>Amaretur</i> he might <i>Amarentur</i> we might <i>Amarentur</i> ye might <i>Amarentur</i> they might</p>	<p>be loved</p>
<p>Pluperfect. Plur. I Sing.</p>	<p>1 <i>Amaverim</i> I might 2 <i>Amaveris</i> thou might- 3 <i>Amaverit</i> he might  1 <i>Amaverimus</i> we might 2 <i>Amaveritis</i> ye might 3 <i>Amaverint</i> they might</p>	<p>have loved</p>	<p><i>fui</i> I might <i>fuerim</i> <i>fuis</i> thou might- <i>fueris</i> (est) <i>fuit</i> he might <i>fuerit</i> <i>fui</i> we might <i>fuerimus</i> <i>fistis</i> ye might <i>fueritis</i> <i>fuerint</i> they might</p>	<p>have been loved</p>
<p>Pluperfect. Plur. I Sing.</p>	<p>1 <i>Amavissem</i> I might 2 <i>Amavisset</i> thou might- 3 <i>Amavisset</i> he might  1 <i>Amavissemus</i> we might 2 <i>Amavissetis</i> ye might 3 <i>Amavissetent</i> they might</p>	<p>have loved</p>	<p><i>essem</i> I might <i>fuissem</i> <i>esses</i> thou might- <i>fuisset</i> (est) <i>esset</i> he might <i>fuisset</i> <i>essemus</i> we might <i>fuissemus</i> <i>essetis</i> ye might <i>fuissetis</i> <i>essent</i> they might <i>fuissetent</i></p>	<p>have had been loved</p>

Future:



Future. Plur. I Sing.	[	1 <i>Amavero</i>	I may	] love hereafter	] <i>Amatus</i>	ero	I may	] be loved hereafter
		2 <i>Amaveris</i>	thou maist			fuero	thou maist	
		3 <i>Amaverit</i>	he may			eris	he may	
		1 <i>Amaverimus</i>	we may			fueris	we may	
		2 <i>Amaveritis</i>	ye may			erit	ye may	
		3 <i>Amaverint</i>	they may			fuerit	they may	
					] <i>Amati</i>	erimus		
						fuerimus		
						eritis		
						fueritis		
						erint		
						fuerint		

## The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense	} <i>Amare</i>	{ to love }	<i>Amari</i>	{ to be loved.
Præterperf. and Præterplup.	} <i>Amavisse</i>	{ to have or had loved }	<i>Amatum esse vel fuisse</i>	{ to have or had been loved }
Future	} <i>Amaturum esse</i>	{ to love hereafter }	<i>Amatum iri, vel Amandum esse</i>	{ to be loved hereafter. }

## Gerunds.

*Amandi*, of loving, or of being loved.  
*Amando*, in loving, or of being loved:  
*Amandum*, to love, or to be loved.

## Supines.

*Amatum* to love, *Amatus*, to be beloved.

## Participles.

Of the Present tense	}	<i>Amans</i> , loving.
Future in <i>rus</i> .		<i>Amaturus</i> , to love.
Of the Preter tense		<i>Amatus</i> , loved.
Future in <i>des</i> ,		<i>Amandus</i> , to be loved.

Chap. 26. Of the form of the Second Conjugation.

Verba in (o) secunda Conjugationis formantur sicut *Doco*,

Verbs in (o) of the second Conjugation be formed like *Doco*.

Verba in (or) secunda Conjugationis formantur sicut *Doco*or.

Verbs in (or) of the second Conjugation be formed like *Doco*or.

*Doco, doces, docui, docere, doctum.*

*Doco* { *doceris*, } do { *sum* } *docere*.  
or, { *docere*, } *flu* { *fui* }

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense  
Plur. 1 Sing. {  
1 *Doco* I teach  
2 *Doces* thou teachest  
3 *Docet* he teacheth  
Plur. 1 Sing. {  
1 *Docemus* we teach  
2 *Docetis* ye teach  
3 *Docent* they teach

*Docetor* I am taught  
{ *Doceris* thou art taught  
{ *Docere*  
*Docetur* he is taught  
*Docemur* we are taught  
*Docemini* ye are taught  
*Docentur* they are taught

Imperfect.  
Plur. 1 Sing. {  
1 *Doceram* I did  
2 *Docebas* thou didst  
3 *Docerat* he did  
Plur. 1 Sing. {  
1 *Doceramus* we did  
2 *Doceratis* ye did  
3 *Docerant* they did

*Docetor* I was  
{ *Doceraris* thou wert  
{ *Docerare*  
*Docebatur* he was  
*Doceramur* we were  
*Doceramini* ye were  
*Docerantur* they were

Perfect.  
Plur. 1 Sing. {  
1 *Docui* I have  
2 *Docuisti* thou hast  
3 *Docuit* he hath  
Plur. 1 Sing. {  
1 *Docuimus* we have  
2 *Docuistis* ye have  
3 { *Docuerant* they have  
{ *Docuere*

{ *sum* I have  
{ *fui* thou hast  
{ *es* he hath  
{ *fuiſti*  
{ *eſt*  
{ *fuit*  
{ *ſumus* we have  
{ *ſuiſtis* ye have  
{ *eſtis*  
{ *fuiſtis*  
{ *fuerunt* they have  
{ *fuerunt*

Præter.

Preterpluperf. Plur. I Sing.	}	1 Docueram	I had	}	Doctus	eram	I have	}	been taught
		2 Docueras	thou hadst			fuera	thou hast		
		3 Docuerat	he had			eras	he has		
		1 Docueramus	we had			fuera	we have		
		2 Docueratis	ye had			erat	ye have		
		3 Docuerant	they had			fuera	they have		

Future Plur. I Sing.	}	1 Doceto	I will	}	Docebor	I will be taught	}	be taught
		2 Doceris	thou wilt			Doceris	thou wilt be taught	
		3 Docerit	he will			Docere	he will be taught	
		1 Docerimus	we will			Doceritur	we will be taught	
		2 Doceritis	ye will			Docerimur	ye will be taught	
		3 Docerunt	they will			Docerimini	they will be taught	

## The Imperative Mood.

Present tense. Plur. I Sing.	}	2 { Doce	Teach thou	}	Doce	Be thou	}	be taught
		{ Doce				Docetor		
		3 { Doceat	let him teach			Doceatur		
		{ Doce				Docetor		
		1 Doceamus	Let us teach			Doceamur	Let us be	
		{ Doce	teach ye			Docemini	be ye	

## The Potential Mood.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	}	1 Doceam	I may	}	Doceor	I may	}	be taught
		2 Doceas	thou maist			Docearis	thou maist	
		3 Doceat	he may			Docears	he may	
		1 Doceamus	we may			Doceatur	we may	
		2 Doceatis	ye may			Doceamur	ye may	
		3 Doceant	they may			Doceamini	they may	

Imper

Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Docerim	I might	}	quæ	}	Doceror	I might	}	De caugor
	2 Doceres	thou mightest				Docereris	thou mightest		
	3 Doceret	he might				Doceretur	he might		
Plur. II Sing.	1 Doceremini	ye might	}	quæ	}	Doceremur	ye might	}	De caugor
	2 Doceretis	ye might				Doceremini	ye might		
	3 Docerent	they might				Docerentur	they might		

Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Docuerim I might	have taught have been taught	1 might	have been taught
	2 Docueris thou might- (est		thou might- (est	
	3 Docueris he might		he might	
	1 Docuerimus we might		we might	
	2 Docueritis ye might		ye might	
	3 Docuerint they might		they might	

<p>Præterdupl. Plur. 1 Sing.</p>	1 Docuiscen I might	<p>habe han caught</p>	<p>Doclus</p>	{ esse I might	<p>habe han been caught</p>
	2 Docuisset thou might			{ fuisset thou might	
	3 Docuisset he might			{ fuisset he might	
	1 Docuissimus we might			{ fuissimus we might	
	2 Docuissetis ye might			{ fuissetis ye might	
	3 Docuissent they might			{ fuissent they might	
			<p>Docli</p>		

Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Docuero	I may	Doctus	ero	I may	be taught hereafter
	2 Docueris	thou mayest		fuero	thou mayest	
	3 Docuerit	he may		eris	he may	
	1 Docuerimus	we may		fuertis	we may	
	2 Docueritis	ye may		erit	ye may	
	3 Docuerint	they may		fuertis	they may	
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Docuerimus	we may	Docti	erimus	we may	be taught hereafter
	2 Docueritis	ye may		fuertis	ye may	
	3 Docuerint	they may		eritis	they may	
				fuertis		
				erint		
				fuertis		

## The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense	Docere	{ to teach }	Doceri	{ to be taught. }
Preterp. and Preterpl	Docuisse	{ to have or had taught }	Doctum esse vel fuisse	{ to have or had been taught. }
Future	Docturum esse	{ to teach hereafter }	Doctum ire, vel Docendum esse	{ to be taught hereafter. }

## Gerunds.

Docendi,	of teaching, or of being taught.
Docendo,	in teaching, or of being taught.
Docendum,	to teach, or to be taught.

## Supines.

Doctum,	to teach,	Doctum,	to be taught.
---------	-----------	---------	---------------

## Participles.

Of the Pre- sent tense	Docens	{ teaching }	Of the Preter tense	Doctus	{ taught. }
Of the Fu- ture in 174	Dociturus	{ about to teach }	Of the Future in 174	Docendus	{ to be taught. }

## Chap. 27. Of the forms of the Third Conjugation.

Verba in (o) tertie Conjugationis formantur sicut *Lego*.

Verbs in (o) of the third Conjugation be formed like *Lego*.

Verba in (or) tertie Conjugationis formantur sicut *Legor*.

Verbs in (or) of the third Conjugation, be formed like *Legor*.

*Legas legis legis legere legistis legimus legitis legunt*

*Legor legeris legere legistis legimini leguntur*

## The Indicative Mood.

Present tense  
Plur. I Sing. {  
1 *Ego* I read  
2 *Legis* thou readest  
3 *Legit* he readeth  
Plur. {  
1 *Legimus* we read  
2 *Legitis* ye read  
3 *Legunt* they read

*Legor* I am  
*Legeris* thou art  
*Legere* he is  
*Legitur* he is  
*Legamur* we are  
*Legimini* ye are  
*Leguntur* they are

Imperfect.  
Plur. I Sing. {  
1 *Legebam* I did read  
2 *Legebas* thou readest  
3 *Legebat* he did read  
Plur. {  
1 *Legebamus* we did read  
2 *Legebatis* ye did read  
3 *Legebant* they did read

*Legere* I was  
*Legeris* thou wast  
*Legere* he was  
*Legebatur* he was  
*Legebamur* we were  
*Legebamini* ye were  
*Legebantur* they were

Preterperfect.  
Plur. I Sing. {  
1 *Legi* I have  
2 *Legisti* thou hast  
3 *Legit* he hath  
Plur. {  
1 *Legimus* we have  
2 *Legistis* ye have  
3 *Legerunt* they have  
*Legere*

*Legi* I have  
*Legisti* thou hast  
*Legit* he hath  
*Legimus* we have  
*Legistis* ye have  
*Legerunt* they have

Preterpluperf. Plur. I Sing.	1	Legeram	I had	Lectus	eram	I had	been read
	2	Legeras	thou hadst		fueram	thou hadst	
	3	Legerat	he had		eras	he had	
	1	Legeramus	we had		fueras	we had	
	2	Legeratis	ye had		erat	ye had	
	3	Legerant	they had		fuerat	they had	
Futur.	1	Legam	I will	Lecti	eram	I shall	be read
	2	Leges	thou wilt		fueramus	thou shalt	
	3	Leget	he will		eratis	he shall	
	1	Legemus	we will		fueratis	we shall	
	2	Legetis	ye will		erant	ye shall	
	3	Legent	they will			they shall	

## The Imperative Mood

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	2	Legito	Read thou	Legere	Be thou	read
	3	Legat	let him read		Legitor	
	1	Legimus	let us read		Legatur	
	2	Legite	read ye		Legitor	
	3	Legant	let them read		Legamur	
		Legunto			Legimini	
Futur.	1	Legam	I will	Legere	I shall	be read
	2	Leges	thou wilt		Legitor	
	3	Leget	he will		Legatur	
	1	Legemus	we will		Legitor	
	2	Legetis	ye will		Legamur	
	3	Legent	they will		Legimini	

## The Potential Mood

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	1	Legam	I may	Legere	I may	be read
	2	Legas	thou mayst		Legaris	
	3	Legat	he may		Legare	
	1	Legamus	we may		Legatur	
	2	Legatis	ye may		Legamur	
	3	Legant	they may		Legimini	
Futur.	1	Legam	I will	Legere	I shall	be read
	2	Leges	thou wilt		Legitor	
	3	Leget	he will		Legatur	
	1	Legemus	we will		Legitor	
	2	Legetis	ye will		Legamur	
	3	Legent	they will		Legimini	

Imper-



Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Legerem</i> I might 2 <i>Legeres</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legeret</i> he might 1 <i>Legeremus</i> we might 2 <i>Legeretis</i> ye might 3 <i>Legerent</i> they might	read	<i>Legerer</i> I might <i>Legereris</i> thou mightest <i>Legerere</i> (est) <i>Legeretur</i> he might <i>Legeremur</i> we might <i>Legeremini</i> ye might <i>Legerentur</i> they might	De read
Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Legerim</i> I might 2 <i>Legeris</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legerit</i> he might 1 <i>Legerimus</i> we might 2 <i>Legeritis</i> ye might 3 <i>Legerint</i> they might	have read	<i>Legissem</i> I might <i>Legissem</i> thou mightest <i>Legisset</i> (est) <i>Legisset</i> he might <i>Legissemus</i> we might <i>Legissemus</i> ye might <i>Legissent</i> they might	Have been read
Preterpluperf. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Legissem</i> I might 2 <i>Legisses</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legisset</i> he might 1 <i>Legissemus</i> we might 2 <i>Legissetis</i> ye might 3 <i>Legissent</i> they might	have had read	<i>Legissem</i> I might <i>Legissem</i> thou mightest <i>Legisset</i> (est) <i>Legisset</i> he might <i>Legissemus</i> we might <i>Legissemus</i> ye might <i>Legissent</i> they might	Have had been read
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Legero</i> I may 2 <i>Legeris</i> thou mayst 3 <i>Legerit</i> he may 1 <i>Legerimus</i> we may 2 <i>Legeritis</i> ye may 3 <i>Legerint</i> they may	read hereafter	<i>Legero</i> I may <i>Legeris</i> thou mayst <i>Legerit</i> he may <i>Legerimus</i> we may <i>Legeritis</i> ye may <i>Legerint</i> they may	be read hereafter



The Infinitive Mood.

Present and  
Imperfect  
tense } *Legere* { to read } *Legi* { to be read.

Præterperf.  
and  
Præterplup. } *Legisse* { to have  
or had  
read. } *Legitum esse*  
vel *fuisse* { to have or had  
been read.

Future } *Legiturum* { to read } *Legiturum iri*, vel { to be read  
} *esse* { hereafter } *Legendum esse* { hereafter.

Gerunds.

*Legendi*, of reading, or of being read.

*Legendo*, in reading, or of being read.

*Legendum*, to read, or to be read.

Supines.

*Legitum* to read, *Legitum*, to be read.

Participles

Of the Pre-  
sent tense. } *Legens* { reading } Of the  
Preter  
tense } *Legitum* { read

Of the Fu-  
ture in  
the } *Legiturum* { to read } Of the  
Future  
in the } *Legendum* { to be read.

## Chap. 28. Of the form of the Fourth Conjugation.

Verba in (o) quartæ Conjugationis variantur sicut *Audio*.

Verbs in (o) of the fourth Conjugation be varied like *Audio*.

Verba in (or) quartæ Conjugationis variantur sicut *Audior*.

Verbs in (or) of the fourth Conjugation be varied like *Audior*.

*Audio, audis, auditis, audire, audirum*

*Au- { audiris } audi- { sum } audi-  
dior, { audire } tus { fui } ri*

## The Indicative Mood.

Present tense  
Plur. I Sing.  
1 *Audis* I hear  
2 *Audis* thou hearest  
3 *Audis* he heareth  
Plur.  
1 *Audimus* we  
2 *Auditis* ye  
3 *Auditis* they

*Audior* I am  
*Audiris* thou art  
*Audire* he is  
*Auditor* he is  
*Audimur* we are  
*Audimini* ye are  
*Audimur* they are

Preterperfect.  
Plur. I Sing.  
1 *Audiebam* I did  
2 *Audiebas* thou didst  
3 *Audiebas* he did  
Plur.  
1 *Audiebamus* we did  
2 *Audiebatis* ye did  
3 *Audiebatis* they did

*Audiebar* I was  
*Audiebaris* thou wast  
*Audiebare* he was  
*Audiebatur* he was  
*Audiebamur* we were  
*Audiebamini* ye were  
*Audiebantur* they were

Preterperfect.  
Plur. I Sing.  
1 *Audivi* I have  
2 *Audivisti* thou hast  
3 *Audivit* he hath  
Plur.  
1 *Audivimus* we have  
2 *Audivistis* ye have  
3 *Audiverunt* they have  
4 *Audivere* have

*Auditis* { sum } I have  
          { fui } thou hast  
          { es } he hath  
          { fuisti } he hath  
          { fuisti } we have  
          { sumus } ye have  
          { fuistis } ye have  
          { sunt } they have  
          { fuerunt } they have  
          { fuerunt }

Preter-

Preterpluperf. Plur. 1 Sing.	{	1	<i>Audi veram</i>	I had	heard
		2	<i>Audi veras</i>	thou hadst	
		3	<i>Audi veras</i>	he had	
	{	1	<i>Audi verimus</i>	we had	
		2	<i>Audi veratis</i>	ye had	
		3	<i>Audi verant</i>	they had	

Auditus	1	<i>Seram</i>	I had	been heard
		<i>fuera</i>	thou hadst	
		<i>fuera</i>	he had	
	1	<i>Seramus</i>	we had	
		<i>fuera</i>	ye had	
		<i>fuera</i>	they had	

Future Plur. 1 Sing.	1	<i>Audiam</i>	I shall	hear	
		2	<i>Audies</i>		thou shalt
		3	<i>Audiet</i>		he shall
	1	<i>Audiemus</i>	we shall		
		2	<i>Audietis</i>		ye shall
		3	<i>Audient</i>		they shall

Audire	1	<i>Audiar</i>	I shall be	heard
		<i>Audieris</i>	thou shalt be	
		<i>Audietur</i>	he shall be	
	1	<i>Audiamur</i>	we shall be	
		<i>Audietis</i>	ye shall be	
		<i>Audientur</i>	they shall be	

## The Imperative Mood

Present tense Plur. 1 Sing.	2	<i>Audi</i>	Hear thou	heard
		<i>Audito</i>	let him hear	
		<i>Audite</i>	let us hear	
	1	<i>Audiamus</i>	hear ye	
		<i>Audite</i>	let them hear	
		<i>Audiant</i>		

Audire	2	<i>Audire</i>	Be thou	heard
		<i>Auditor</i>	let him be	
		<i>Auditor</i>	let us be	
	1	<i>Audiamur</i>	be ye	
		<i>Audimini</i>	let them be	
		<i>Audiantur</i>		

## The Potential Mood

Present tense Plur. 1 Sing.	{	1	Audiam	I may	}	hear
		2	Audias	thou mayst		
		3	Audiat	he may		
	{	1	Audiamus	we may	}	
		2	Audiamini	ye may		
		3	Audiant	they may		

Audire	1	<i>Audiar</i>	I may	be heard
		<i>Audiaris</i>	thou mayst	
		<i>Audietur</i>	he may	
	1	<i>Audiamur</i>	we may	
		<i>Audiamini</i>	ye may	
		<i>Audiantur</i>	they may	

Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audirem I might	hear	Audire	I might	be heard
	2 Audires thou mightest		Audireris	thou mightest	
	3 Audires he might		Audirere	he might	
	1 Audiremus we might		Audiretur	we might	
	2 Audiretis ye might		Audiremur	ye might	
	3 Audirent they might		Audiremini	they might	
			Audirentur		

Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiverim I might	have heard	Auditus	fui	I might	have been heard
	2 Audiveris thou mightest			fueris	thou mightest	
	3 Audiveris he might			fuerit	he might	
	1 Audiverimus we might		Auditi	fimus	we might	
	2 Audiveritis ye might			fuerimus	ye might	
	3 Audiverint they might			fueritis	they might	
				fuerint		

Preterpluperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audivissem I might	have had heard	Auditus	essem	I might	have had been heard
	2 Audivisses thou mightest			fuissem	thou mightest	
	3 Audivisset he might			esset	he might	
	1 Audivissemus we might		Auditi	fuisset	we might	
	2 Audivissetis ye might			essemus	ye might	
	3 Audivissent they might			fuissemus	they might	
				essetis		
				fuissetis		
				essent		
				fuisissent		

Future. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audivero I may	hear hereafter	Auditus	ero	I may	be heard hereafter
	2 Audiveris thou mayst			fueris	thou mayst	
	3 Audiveris he may			fuerit	he may	
	1 Audiverimus we may		Auditi	erimus	we may	
	2 Audiveritis ye may			fuerimus	ye may	
	3 Audiverint they may			eritis	they may	
				fueritis		
				erint		
				fuerint		

## The Infinitive Mood.

Present and  
Imperfect  
tense } *Audire* { to hear } *Audiri* { to be heard.

Preterp.  
and  
Preterpl } *Audiuisse* { to have  
heard } *Auditum  
esse vel  
fuisse* { to have or had been  
heard.

Future } *Auditurum* { to hear } *Auditum iri, vel* { to be heard  
esse } hereafter } *Audiendum esse* } hereafter.

## Gerunds.

*Audiendi*, of hearing, or of being heard.  
*Audiendo*, in hearing, or of being heard.  
*Audiendum*, to hear, or to be heard.

## Supines.

*Auditum*, to hear, *Auditu*, to be heard.

## Participles

Of the Present tense } *Audiens*, hearing.  
Future in *rus*. } *Auditurus*, to hear.  
Of the Preter tense } *Auditus*, heard.  
Future in *dus*. } *Audiendus*, to be heard.



*As in Praesenti.*

OR,

WILLIAM LILIE'S Rules of the  
Preterperfect tenses and Su-  
pines of Verbs.

Chap. 29.

*Of the Preterperfect tenses of Simple Verbs.*

*As in praesenti* contains Rules of the Preter tenses of Simple Verbs.

I. In the first Conjugation *As* makes *avi*.

2. In the second *As* makes *ui*.

I. **A**S in the Present tense, makes the Preterperfect tense in *avi*; as, *No nas* to swim, *navi*: *voco* to call often, *vocavi*. Except 1. *Lavo* *lavi*, to wash: *iuro* *iuravi*, to help: *sero* *serui*, to knit: *seco* *seui*, to cut: *necto* *nectui*, to kill, *mico* *miciui*, to shine: *plico* *pliciui*, to fold: *frico* *friciui*, to rub: *domo* *domui*, to tame: *tono* *tonui*, to thunder: *sono* *sonui*, to sound: *crepo* *crepui*, to crack: *velo* *vetui* to forbid: *cubo* *cubui*, to lie down: which seldom makes *avi*: 2. *Do* *das*, to give, will make *dedi*, and *sto* *stas*, to stand, *steti*.

II. **E**S in the Present tense, makes the Preterperfect tense in *ui*; as, *nigro* *nigres* *nigrui*, to wax black. Except 1. *Jubeo* *iubes* *jussi*, to bid: *sorbeo* *sorbes* *sorbui* & *sorpsi*, to sup: *mulceo* *mulci*, to alluage: *luceo* *luxi*, to shine: *sedeo* *sedui*, to sit: *video* *vidi*, to see: *exan-deo* *prandi*, to dine: *strideo* *stridi*, to make a noise: *sua-deo* *suasi*, to persuade: *rideo* *risi*, to laugh: and *ardeo* *arsi*, to burn.

2 The first syllable is doubled in these four following, viz. *Pendeo* *pendi*, to hang: *mordeo* *mordi*, to bite.

*Spondeo*

*As in Prasenti.*

SIVE,

GULIELMI LILII Regulae  
de Præteritis & Supinis  
Verborum.

## Cap. 29.

*De Præteritis Verborum Simplicium.*

- I. **A** *Sin Prasenti perfectum format in avi ;*  
*ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi.*  
 1 Deme lavo lavi, juvo juvi, nexoque nexui ;  
 Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mico verbum  
 Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui dat :  
 Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum  
 Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui dat :  
 Atque cubo cubui : rariò hæc formantur in avi.  
 2 Do das ritè dedi, sto stas formare steti vult.

Regula de  
Præteritis  
Verborum  
Simplicium.I.  
In prima  
Conjugatione  
as  
format avi.

- II. **E** *Sin prasenti perfectum format in ians ;*  
*ut nigreo nigres nigrui. 1 Jubeo excipe jussi,*  
 Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulgi ;  
 Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videoque  
 Vult vidi : sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,  
 Suado suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo & arsi.

2.  
In Secundo  
es format  
ui.

- 2 Quatuor bis infra geminatur syllaba prima ;  
 Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi.

Spondeo



*Spondeo, spondi, to promise : condeo, condeci, to clip  
or shear.*

3 If *l* or *r* stand next before *geo*, *geo* is turned into *gi*; as, *urgeo, urxi, to urge : mulgeo, mulsi, & mulxi, to milk : frigeo, frixi, to be cold : lugeo, luxi, to lament, augeo & auxi, to encrease.*

4 *Fleo, flet, to weep, makes flevi : leo, les, to be smart, levi, and its compound deleo, makes delrevi, to blot out : pleo, ples, to fill, makes plevi.* 5. *Nes, to spin, nevi : maneo, to tarry, makes mansi.* 6 *Torqueo, to twist, torxi.* 7 And *hereo, to stick, haesi.*

8 *Veo* is made *vi*; as, *Ferveo, fervi, to be hot : but nivio, to winke, and its compound connivo, to close and open the eyes, makes nivi, and nixi : cito, to trouble, makes civi : and vico, to binde, vievi.*

In the third,  
Eo makes *bi*.

III. **T**He third Conjugation will form the Preterperfect tense, as is plain here. *Bo* is made *bi*, as, *Lambo, lambi, to lick, Except i Scribo, scripsi, to write : nubo, nupsi, to be married to a man : and cubo, cubui, to lye down.*

Ci, ci.

*Ci* is made *ci*; as, *Vinco, vici, to overcome.* But *i Parco* makes *peperei* and *parsi, to spare : dico dixi, to say, and duco, duxi, to lead.*

Di, di.

*Do* is made *di*; as, *mando, mandi, to eat : but scindo, to cut, makes scidi : findo, fidi, to cleave : fundo, fudi, to pour out : tundo, tutudi, to knock : pendo, pependi, to weigh : tendo, tetendi, to stretch : pedo, pepedi, to fart : cado, cecidi, to fall : cado cecidi, to beat : cedo, cessi, to give place : vado, to go away : rado, to shave : Ludo, to hurt : ludo, to play : divido, to divide : trudo, to thrust : claudio, to shut : plaudo, to clap hands : rado, to gnaw : change alwaies *do* into *si*.*

Gi, xi.

*Go* is made *gi*; as, *jungo, to join, junxi* : but *r* before *go* makes *si*; as, *spargo, sparsi, to sprinkle : lego, to read, makes legi : and ago, to do, egi : tango, to touch*



Spondeo, habere spondendi; tondeo, *vultque* torondi.

3 L *vel* r ante geo, *si* flet, geo *vertitur* in si  
Urgeo *ut* urfi; mulgeo, mulsi, *dat quoque* mulxi;  
Frigeo, frixi; lugeo, luxi; *habet* augeo, & auxi.

4 *Dat* Fleo, fles, flevi; lco, les, levi; *indeq;* natum  
Deleo, deleui; pleo, ples, plevi. 5 Neco, nevi;  
A manco, mansi, *formatur*. 6 Torqueo, torxi.

7 Hæreo *vult* hæsi. 8 Veo *fit* vi; *ut* Ferveo, servi,  
Niveo, & *indè* satum *poscit* conniveo, nivi,  
Et nixi; cieo, civi; *vicòque* vievi.

**T**ertia *Præ*eritum *formabit, ut hic manifestum.* In Tertia,  
Bosfit bi; *ut* Lambo, lambi. 1 Scribo *excipe* scrip- *Et fit* ti.  
Et nubo, nupsi; *antiquum* cumbo, cubui *dat.* (si;

Co *fit* ci; *ut* Vinco, vici; *vult* parco, peperci,  
Et parsi; dico, dixi; duco *quoque* duxi. Co, ei.

Do *fit* di; *ut* Mando, mandi; *sed* scindo, scidi, *dat,*  
Findo, fidi : fundo, fudi : tundo, turudique : Do, di.  
Pendo, pependi : tendo, tetendi : pedo, pepedi :  
Junge cado, cecidi; *pro verbero* cædo, cecidi :  
Cedo *pro* discedere, *sive* locum dare cessi.  
Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divido, trudo,  
Claudo, plaudo, rodo, *ex do* *semper* faciunt si.

Go *fit* xi; *ut* jungo, junxi : *sed* r ante go *vult* si : Go, xi.  
*ut* spargo, sparsi : lego, legi : & ago *faciunt* cgi :

*Dat*

## The Latine Grammar.

- retigi, to touch : pingo, to paint, makes pinxi and pupugi: frango fregi, to break : pango depigi, to make a bargain: pango pegi, to join : pingo pinxi, to sing.*
- Ho, xi.** Ho is made xi, as, *Trabo traxi, to draw : and vexo, to carry.*
- Lo, ui.** Lo is made ui, as, *Colo colui, to till : but Psallo, to sing: and fallo, to fail, make falli: vello, to pluck up, makes velli and vulsi : fallo, to deceive, makes fefelli: cello, to break, ceculi : and pello, to drive away, pepuli.*
- Mo, vi.** Mo is made ui, as, *Vomo vomui, to vomit : but emo, makes emi, to buy : como compsi, to comb : promoprompsi, to draw : demo dempsi, to take away : sumo sumpsi, to take : premo pressi to press.*
- No, ui.** No is made vi, as, *sino sivi, to suffer.* Except *Temo tempsi, to despise : sterno stravi, to stretch : spernosprevi, to despise : lino levi, lini and liui, to draw : cerno crevi, to discern. Gigno makes genui, to beget : pono posui, to put : cerno cecini, to sing.*
- Po, psi.** Po is made psi, as, *scabo scalpfi, to scratch : rumporupi, to break : strepo strepui, to make a noise : crepo crepui, to crack.*
- Quo, qui.** Quo is made qui, as, *linquo liqui, to leave. Except coquo coxi, to boil.*
- Ro, vi.** Ro is made vi, as, *sero, to plant or sow, makes sevi, which changing the signification, rather maketh servi : verro, to burn, verri and versi : uro ussi, to burn : gero gessi, to act, or bear : quero quaesivi, to seek : sero trivi, to wear : curro cucurri, to run.*
- So, sivi.** So will make sivi, as, *acceso, to go to call, accessi, to go to call : incesso, to rebuke : and lacesso sivi, to provoke. Except capesso, to offer to take, which makes capeffi and capeffivi : facesso, to go about to do : and viso, to visit, makes visi : but pinso, to bake, will have pinsui.*
- Scio, vi.** Scio is made vi, as, *pasco pavi, to feed : but posco, will have poposci, to require.*

Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi pupugique;  
Dat frango fregi, cum signat pango pacisci  
Vult pepigi, pro jungo, pegi, pro cano panxi.

Ho fit xi, traho cen traxi, docet & vecho vexi.

Ho, xi.

Lo fit ui, colo cen colui: psallo excipe cum p  
Et fallo fini p, nam falli format utrunque;  
Dat vello velli vulsi quoque, fallo fefelli,  
Cello pro frango ceculi; pello pepulique.

Lo, ui.

Mo fit ui, vomo cen vomui: sed emo facit emi;  
Como petit compsi, promo prompsi, adjice demo  
Quod format dempsi, sumo sumpsi, premo pressi.

Mo, ui.

No fit vi, sino cen sivi, temno excipe tempsi,  
Dat sterno stravi, sperno spreui, lino leui,  
Interdum lini & livi, cerno quoque creui:  
Gigno pono, cano, genui, posui, cecini, dant.

No, vi.

Po fit psi, ut scalpo scalpui, rumpo excipe rupi,  
Et strepo quod format strepui, crepo quod crepui dat.

Po, psi.

Quo fit qui, ut linquo liqui, coquo demito coxi.

Quo, qui.

Ro fit vi, sero cen pro planto & semino sevi,  
Quod lerui melius dat mutans significatum,  
Vult vero verri & versi, uro ulli, gero gessi,  
Quero quæ sivi, xero trivi, curto cucurri.

Ro, vi.

So, velut accerso, arcesso, incesso, atque lacezzo,  
Formabit sivi, sed tolle capesso capepsi,  
Quodque capepsi facit, atque facezzo facepsi,  
Sic viso visi, sed pinso pinsui habebit.

So, sivi.

Seo fit vi, ut pascio pavi, vult posco poposci;

Seo, vi.

Vult

*Difco, didici, to learn, and quifco, quexi, to nod with the head:*

*To, ti.*

*To* is made *ti*; as, *verto verti, to turn*: *Sifto, ftiti, to make to ftand*: but *mitto* makes *mifi, to fend*: *peto* will form *petivi, to ask*: *fterto, ftertui, to mozt*: *meto, miffui, to mow*.

*Effo, exi.*

*Effo* is made *exi*; as, *flecto, flexi, to bend*: but *pellō, to comb, makes pexi, and pexui*: and *necto, to knit*: *nexi* and *nexui*.

*Vo, vi.*

*No, xui.*

*Vo* is made *vi*; as, *volvo, volvi, to rofwl ober*: Except *vivo, vixi, to live*. *Nexo, makes nexui, to knit*: and *texo, texui, to weave*.

*Cio, ci.*

*Cio* is made *ci*; as, *facio, feci, to make*: *jacio, jeci, to cast*: but *lacio, to allure, makes lexi*: and *fecio, to behold, fpxi*.

*Dio, di.*

*Gio, gi.*

*Pio, pi.*

*Dio* is made *di*; as, *fodio, to dig, makes fodi*.

*Gio* is made *gi*; as, *fugio, fugi, to avoid*.

*Pio* is made *pi*, as, *capio, cepi, to take*. Except, *cupio, cupivi, to defire*: and *rapio, rapui, to fnatch*: and *fapio, fapai, or fapivi, to be wife*.

*Rio, ri.*

*Tio, ffi.*

*Rio* is made *ri*; as, *pario, peperit, to bring forth*.

*Tio* is made *ffi*; as, *quatio, quaffi, to fhake*: which preterperfect tense is feldome ufed.

*Mo, ui.*

*Mo* is made *ui*; as, *ftatuo, ftatui, to appoint*: but *pluo, to rain, makes pluvi* and *plui*: *ftroo, ftuxi, to build*: *fluo, fluxi, to flow*.

The fourth is makes *ivi*.

**IV** The fourth Conjugation makes *is* in the prefent tense, and *ivi* in the preterperfect tense; as, *fcio, fcis, fcivi, to know*. Except *venio, veni, to come*: *cambio, campfi, to exchange*: *raucio, ranfi, to be hoarfe*: *farcio, farfi, to ftuff*: *farcio, farfi, to patch*: *fcpio, fcpi, to hedge*: *fcnio, fcnsi, to perceive*: *fulcio, fulfi, to un- derprop*: *haurio, haufti, to draw*: *faucio, fanxi, to effa- blifh*: *vincio, vixi, to binde*: *falio, falui, to leap*: and *amicio, amicti, to clothe*. We feldome ufe, *Cam- bivi, haurivi, amictivi, &c.*

Chap.

*Vult didici disco, quæxi formare quinisco.*

*To fit ti; ut verto verti, sed sisto notetur  
Profacio stare Activum, nam jure sisti dat.  
Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi.  
Sterto stertui habet, meto messi. Ab ecto fit exi;  
ut, flecto, flexi: pecto dat pexui, habetque:  
Pexi; etiam necto dat nexui, habet quoque nexi.*

To, ti.

Flecto, exi.

*Vo fit vi; ut, volvo volvi: vivo excipe vixi.  
Nexo ut nexui habet, sic texo texui habebit.*

Vo, vi.

Nex, Xui.

*Fit cio, ci; ut, facio feci, jacio quoque jeci:  
Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.*

Cio, ci.

*Fit dio, di; ut fodio, fodi. Gio, cœu fugio, gi.*

Dio, di.

Gio, gi.

*Fit pio, pi; ut, capio, cepi, cupio excipe pivi:  
Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui, atque sapivi.*

Pio, pi.

Oat

*Fit rio, ri; ut, pario, peperi. Tio sibi Geminans s:  
ut quatio quassii, quod vix reperitur in usu.*

Rio, ri.

Tio, ssi.

*Denique uo fit ui; ut, statuo statui: pluo pluvi  
Format si v' pluvi: struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.*

Uo, ui.

IV **Q**uarta dat is, ivi, ut monstrat scio scis tibi scivi In Quarta  
Excipias venio dans veni, cambio campsi, is format ite

Raucio rausi, farcio farsii, sarcio sarsii,  
Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulsi:  
Haurio item hauri, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi:  
Pro salto salio salui, & amicio amicum dat.  
Pariens utemur cambivi, haurivi, amicivi,  
Sepivi, sanxivi, sarcivi, atque salivi.

Cap:

## Chap. 30.

## Of the Preterperfect tense of Compound Verbs.

The simple  
and Com-  
pound  
verbs have  
the same  
preterper-  
fect tense.

Except,  
1. Words  
that double  
the first syl-  
lable.

2. *Plico.*

3. *Oleo.*

4. *Pungo.*

5. *Do, &c.*

6. Verbs  
changing  
the first  
vowel into e.

**T**He Simple and the Compound Verb have the same Preterperfect tense; as, *Docui, I have taught: edocui, I have fully taught*, but

1. The syllable, which the simple verb doubleth, is not alwaies doubled in the Compound, except in these three, *præcurro, to run before: excurro, to run out: and repungo, to pick again: and in the Compounds of Do, to give: discō, to learn: sto, to stand: and posco, to require.*

2. *Plico* compounded with *sub* or a Noun, will have *placui*; as, *supplicō, to supply: multiplicō, to multiply: but applicō, to apply, complico, to fould up: replicō, to reply: and explico, to unfold, will end in ui, or avi.*

3. Though *Oleo, to smell*, makes *oleui*, yet its compounds make rather *olevi*: but *Redoleo, to smell strong*, and *suboleo, to smell a little*, are formed like the simple Verb.

4. All the compounds of *Pungo, to pick*, make *punxi*: but *repungo, to pick again*, makes *repunxi* and *repunxi*.

5. The Compounds of *Do*, when they are of the third Conjugation, make *didici*; as, *Credo, to beleive: edo, to set forth: dedo, to petio: reddo, to restore: perdo, to destroy: abdo, to hide: obdo, to set against: condo, to build: indo, to put in: trade, to deliver: prodo, to betray: vendo, to sell: But Abscondo, to hide, makes Abscondi.*

The Compounds of *Sto, to stand*, make *steti*.

6. These Simple Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel of the Present tense, and Preterperfect tense, and so of all other tenses into *e, vi, &c.*

*Damno*

## Cap. 30.

## De Compositorum Verborum Præteritis.

**P**ræteritum dat idem Simplex & Compositum ; Simplex & Compositum idem habent Præteritum. Incipe,  
 ut docui, edocui monstrat. 1 Sed syllaba semper  
 Quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur ;  
 Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo :  
 Atque à do, disco, sto, posco, rite creatis.

2 Aplico compositum cum sub, vel nomine, ut ista 2 Plico,  
 Supplico, multiplico, gaudent formare plicavi :  
 Applico, complico, replico & explico ui, vel in avi.

3 Quamvis vult oleo, simplex olui, tamen inde 3 Oleo,  
 Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi :  
 Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur subolētque.

4 Composita à pungo formabunt omnia punxi, 4 Pungo,  
 Vult anum pupugi, interdumque repungo repunxi.

5 Natum à do, quando est inflectio tertia, ut addo 5 Do & Sto.  
 Credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, vel obdo,  
 Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo, didi : at unum  
 Abscondo abscondi. Natum à sto, stas, stiti, habebit.

6 Verba hæc simplicia præsentis, præteritque 6 Mutantia  
 Si componantur vocalem primam in e mutant ; primam vo-  
 Si componantur vocalem primam in e mutant ; calem in e.



*Damno*, to condemn: *lactō*, to gibe suck: *sacro*, to dedicate: *fallo*, to deceive: *arceo*, to drive away: *tracto*, to handle: *fatiscor*, to be weary: *partio*, to divide: *carpo*, to crop: *patro*, to commit: *scando*, to climb: *spargo*, to sprinkle, and *pavio*, to bring forth young: whereof two Compounds, *Comperio*, to finde out by search: and *reperio*, to finde by chance: do make *peri*, and all the rest *perui*: as, *aperio*, to open: *operio*, to cover.

7 *Pasco*.

7 These two compounds of *Pasco*, viz. *Compesco*, to pasture together: and *dispesco*, to drive from pasture, will have *pescui*, the rest will have *pavi*: as, *epasco*, to eat up.

8 Verbs that change the first vowel into *i*.

8 These Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel every where into *i*, viz. *babeo*, to have: *lateo*, to lye hid: *salio*, to leap: *statuo*, to appoint: *cado*, to fall: *ludo*, to hurt: *pango*, *pegi*, to joyne: *cano*, to sing: *quero*, to seek: *cado*, *cecidī*, to beat: *tango*, to touch: *egco*, to want: *teneo*, to hold: *taceo*, to keep silence: *sapio*, to be wise: and *rapio*, to snatch: as *rapio*, *rapui*, makes *eripio*, *eripui*: but the Compounds of *Cano*, make the preterperfect tense in *ui*; as, *concino*, to agree in one tune, *concinnui*.

9 *Placeo*.

9. So of *Placeo*, cometh *displaceo*, to displease: but *complaceo*, to like well: and *perplaceo*, to please thoroughly, do follow the simple Verb.

10 *Pango*.

10 These four Compounds of *pango*, to joyne, do keep *a*, viz. *Depango*, to fasten down, *oppango*, to fasten to: *circumpango*, to fasten about: and *repango*, to dis-joyne.

11 *Maneo*.

11 These four Compounds of *Maneo* *manfi*, to tarry, do make *minni*, viz. *Premineo*, to excell: *emineo*, to appear before others: *promineo*, to hang out in sight: and *immineo*, to hang over: but the rest follow the simple Verb.

12 *Scalpo*, *calco*, *salto*.

12 The Compounds of *scalpo*, to scratch: *calco*, to tread: *salto*, to dance: change *a* into *u*; as, *exscalpo*



Damno, lacto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,

Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, pariòque,

Cujus nata peri duo, comperit & reperit dant ;

Cetera sed perui, velut hac aperire, operire.

7 A Pasco, pavi tantum composita notentur

7 Pasco.

Hec duo, compesco, dispesco, pescui habere :

Cetera, ut cpassco, servabunt simplicis usum.

8 Hec habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lardo,

8 Mutantia  
primā voca-  
lem in i.

Pango dans pegi, cano, quæro, cedo, cecidi,

Tango, egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapiòque,

Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant,

Ut rapio rapui; eripio eripui: à Cano natum,

Præteritum per ui, seu concino, concinui dat.

9 A placeo, sic displiceo; sed simplicis usum

9 Placeo

Hec duo complacéo, cum perplaceo, bene servant.

10 Composita à pango retinent a quatuor ista ;

10 Pango

Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango,

11 Amaneo mansi, minui dant quatuor ista ;

11 Maneo

Præmineo, emineo, cum promineo, immineòque;

Simplicis ac verbi servabunt cetera formam.

12 Composita à scalpo, calco, fallo, a per u mutant;

12 Scalpo,  
calco, fallo.

*po, to carbe : inculco, to inculcate : and resulto, to rebound.*

13 *Clauo*  
*quatio, lavo.*

13 The Compounds of *Clauo, to shut, quatio, to shake : lavo, to wash,* do cast away *a;* as, *occludo, to shut fast : excludo, to shut out, of clauo. Percutio, to smite : and excutio, to shake off, of quatio. Proluo, u, lui, to wash much : diluo, is, lui, to purge with washing, of lavo.*

14 Verbs  
that change  
the first  
vowel of the  
present tense  
into *i*, but  
not of the  
Preter tense.

14 These Verbs being compounded, change the first vowel of the Present tense into *i*; but not of the Preterperfect tense; viz. *Ago, to do, emo, to buy, sedeo, to sit, rego, to rule, frango, to break, capio, to take, jacio, to cast, lacio, to allure, specio, to behold, premo, to press, as of frango, is made refringo, refregi, ro break open : of capio, incipio, incepti, to begin : but perago, to finish : satago, to be busie about a thing, coëmo, to buy together, do follow their simple Verb. And of ago, dego, to lbe, makes degi, and cogo to compel, coëgi, as also of rego, pergo, to go forward, makes perrexii: and surgo, to arise, surrexi; the middle syllable of the Present tense being taken away.*

15 *Facio,*

15 *Facio* changeth nothing, unless it have a Preposition before it, as, *Olfacio, to smell, calfacio, to make hot, and infacio, to infect.*

16 *Lego.*

16 The Compounds of *Lego, with re, se, per, pra, sub, trans;* keep the vowel of the Present tense, the rest change it into *i*: of which *intelligo, to understand, diligo, to love, negligo, to neglect, make lexi, and all the rest make legi.*

*Id tibi demonstrant exculpo, inculco, resulto.*

13 *Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a ;*

13 *Claudo, quatio, lavo.*

*Id docet à claudio, occludo, excludo; à quatióque*

*Percutio, excutio; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.*

14 *Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,*

14 *Mutanti-  
a primam  
vocalem  
præsentis in  
i, sed non  
præteriti.*

*Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, semper*

*Vocalem primam præsentis in i, sibi mutant,*

*Præteriti nunquam, ceu frango, refringo, refregi :*

*A capio, incipio, incepti. Sed pauca notentur,*

*Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, satagóque :*

*Atque ab ago, dego dat degi, cogo coëgi ;*

*A rego sic pergo perrexerunt, vult quoque surgo*

*Surrexi, mediâ præsentis syllabâ ademptâ.*

15 *Nil variat facio nisi præpositio præeunte:*

15 *Facio,*

*Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficíoque.*

16 *A lego nata, re, se, per, præ, sub, trans, præeunte, 16 Legó*

*Præsentis servant vocalem, in i, cætera mutant ;*

*De quibus hæc intelligo, deligo, negligo, tantum*

*Præteritum lexi faciunt; reliqua omnia legi.*

## Chap. 31:

### Of the Supines of Simple Verbs.

**The Supine**  
is formed of  
the Preter  
tense.

Bi, makes  
E1477,  
Ci, E1477b

Di, sume

The syllable  
is not dou-  
bled in the  
Supines.

Gi, Ebum

Li, Sun

Mi, }  
 Ni, } turn,  
 Pi, }  
 Qui, }

## Ri, sum

65, 14773

**N**OW learn to form the Supine from the Preter-perfect tense thus : *Bi* makes *tum* ; as, *Bibi, bibi-tum, to drink.*

*ci* is made *etum*; as, *vici*, *viētum*, to overcome: *ici*,  
*iētum*, to smite: *feci*, *factum*, to do, *jeci*, *jaētum*, to cast.

Di is made *sum*, as, *vidi, visum, to see* : but some do double *ss*, as *pandi, passum, to lay open* : *sedī, sessum, to sit*, *scidi, scissum, to cut* : *fridi, fissum, to cleave* : *fodi, fossum, to dig*.

And here also you may observe, that the syllable which is doubled in the Præterperfect tense, is not doubled in the Supines; as, *totondi, to trip*, makes *tonsum: cecidi, to beat*, *casum: cecidi, to fall*, *casum: tetendi, to stretch*, *tensum* and *tentum: turdi, to knock*, *tunsum*; *pepédi, to fart*, *peditum*: to which add *dedi*, which makes *datum*.

*Gi* is made *Etum*; as, *legi*, to read, *lectum*; *pegi*, to join, and *p. pegi*, to make a bargain, *pactum*; *fregi*, to break, *fractum*; *tengi*, to touch, *tactum*; *egi*, to do, *actum*; *p. pegi*, to prick, *punctum*; and *fugi*, to avoid, *fugitum*.

Li is made *sum*, as, *falli*, to season with salt, *falsum*; *penali*, to drive away, mak's *pulsum*; *ceculi*, to break, *culsum*; *feselli*, to deceive, *falsum*; *velli*, to pluck up, *vulsum*, and *tuli*, to suffer, *latum*.

*M, ni, pi, qi,* are made *tum*; as, *emi, emptum, to buy; veni, ventum, to come; cecini, cantum, to sing; cepi, cap- tum, to take; coepi, ceptum, to begin; rupi, ruptum, to break; liqui, lictum, to leave.*

Ri is made *sum*; as, *verri, versum*, to brush : except *peperi, partum*, to bring forth.

Si is made *sum*; as, *visi*, *visum*. to **blit**; yet *miſi* ma-  
kech

## Cap. 31.

## De Simplicium Verborum Supinis.

**N**unc ex Præterito discas formare Supinum.  
 Bi sibi cum format: sic namque bibi bibitum fit.

Supinū for-  
 matur ex  
 Præterito.  
 Bi, format  
 zum

Ci fit ætum, ut, vici, victum, testatur & ici  
 Dans ictum, stecis, factum, jeci quoque jactum.

Ci, ætum

Di fit sum, ut vidi visum: quædam geminant si,  
 ut pandi passum, sedis, sessum; adde scidi quod  
 Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, sodi quoque fossum.

Di, sum

Hic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima Supinis,  
 Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur:  
 Idque torondi dans tonsum docet, atque cecidi  
 Quod cælum, & cecidi, quod dat calum, atque terendi  
 Quod tensum & tentum, tutudi tonsam, atque pepédi  
 Quod format peditum, adde dedi quod jure darū vult.

Syllaba non  
 geminatur  
 Supinis

Gi fit ætum, ut legi lectum, pegi pepigique  
 Dat pactum, fregi fractum, terigi quoque tactum;  
 Egi ætum, pupugi punctum, fugi fugitum dat.

Gi, ætum

Li fit sum, ut salli stans pro sale condio salsum;  
 Dat pepuli pulsum, ceculi culsum, atque sefelli  
 Falsum, dat velli vulsum, tuli habet quoque larum.

Li, sum

Mi, ni, pi, qui, cum sunt, velut hic manifestum;  
 Emi emptum, veni ventum, cecini à cano, cantum;  
 A capio cepi dans captum, à coepio coeptum,  
 A rampo rupi ruptum, liqui quoque lictum;

Mi, }  
 Ni, } zum  
 Pi, }  
 Qui, }

Ri fit sum, ut verri versum; peperer excipe partum.

Ri, sum

Si fit sum, ut visi, visum; tamē s̄ geminato,

Si, sum.

ket̃h missum, to send, with a double s: except fult̃i, fultum, to underprop, haust̃i haustum, to draw, fars̃i fartum, to parch, fars̃i fartum, to stuff, ussi ustum, to burn, gessi gessum, to bear, tor̃si tortum, or tors̃um, to wrest; indul̃si indultum or indulsum, to pamper.

Psi, tum,

Psi is made tum, as, scripsi scriptum, to write, except camp̃si campsum, to exchange.

Ti, tum.

Ti is made tum, as, steti, to stand, and stiti, to make to stand: makes statum, except verti versum, to turn.

Vi, tum,

Vi is made tum, as, flavi flatum, to blow; except pavi, pastum, to feed, lavi lotum, lautum or lavatum, to wash, potavi potum & potatum, to drink, favi fatum, to laboꝝ, cavi cautum, to beware, sevi satum, to sow, vivi or lini litum, to draw, solvi solutum, to loose, volvi volutum, to rowl, singuli vi singultum, to sob, veni vi venum to be sold, sepeli vi sepultum, to bury.

Ui, itum,  
utum,

Ui makes itum, as, domui domitum, to tame: except every verb in uo; because ui will alwaies make utum, as, exui exutum, to put off: but ui makes vitum, to rush, to secũi sectum, to cut, necui necum, to kill, fricui frictum, to rub, miscui mistum, to mingle, amicui amictum, to clothe, torui tostum, to roast, docui doctum, to teach, tenui tentũ, to hold, consului consultum, to consult, alui altum or alitum, to nourish, salui saltum, to leap, colui cultum, to worship, ocului occultum, to hide, pinsui pistum, to bake, rapui, raptum, to snatch, serui sertum, to put to, texui textum, to weave. But these change ui into sum; for consẽo, to think, maker̃h censũ, cellui celsum, to break, messui messum, to mow, nexui nexum, to knit, pexui pexum, to comb; patui passum, to lie open, carui cassum and caritum, to want.

sum

Xi, etum.

Xi is made etum, as, vinxi vinctum, to binde: but five lose n, viz. finxi fictum, to feign, minxi mictum, to piss, pinxi pictum, to paint, strinxi strictum, to tie, vinxi rictum, to grin.

And

Misi formabit missum; fulsi excipe fultum;  
 Hausi haustum, farsī fartum, farsī quoque fartum,  
 Ulsi ustum, gessi gestum, torſi duo tortum  
 Et torſum, indulsi indultum indultumque requirit.

Plī fit rum, ut Scripsi scriptum; campſi excipe camp-

(sum.

Pſi, rum,

Tiſſit rum, à ſto namque ſteri, à ſiſtēque ſtiri ſit,  
 Præterito, commune ſtatum; verti excipe verſum.

Ti, rum,

Vi ſit rum, ut flavi ſlatum; pavi excipe paſtum;

Vi, rum,

Dat lavi locum, interdum lautum atque lavatum;

Potavi potum, interdum facit & potatum;

Sed ſavi ſautum, cavi cautum, à ſero ſevi,

Formes ritè ſatum, livi li nique litam dat;

Solvi à ſolvo ſolutum, volvi à volvo volutum;

Vult ſingultivi ſingultum, venio venis

Venivi venum, ſepelivi ritè ſepultum.

(quodvis

Quod dat ui dat itum, ut domui domitum, excipe

Ui, itum,

Verbum in uo, quia ſemper ui formabit in urum;

urum,

Exui ut exutum, à ruo deme rui ruitum dans;

Vult ſecui ſectum, necui neſtum, fricuſque

Fricum. miſcui item miſtum, ac amicuī dat amictum:

☞

Tortui l'abet roſtum, docuiſque doctum, tenuiſque

Tentum, conſului conſultum, alui altum alitumque,

Sic ſalui ſaltum, colui ocului quoque cultum;

Piſui habet piſtum, rapui raptum, ſeruſque

A ſero vult ſerturo; ſic textui habet quoque textum.

Hæc ſed ui mutant in ſum; nam cenſeo cenſum,

ſum

Cellui habet celſum, meto meſſui habet quoque meſſū;

Nexui item nexum, ſic pexui habet quoque pexum;

Dat parui paſſum, carui caſſum caritumque.

Xi ſit etum, ut vinxi vinctum, quinque abſciunt n,

Xi, etum,

Nam ſinxi ſiſtum, minxi miſtum, inque ſupino,

Dat pinxi piſtum, ſtrinxi, rinxi quæ riſtum.

Xum



And these xi into xum, *Flexi flexum, to bend, plexum, to plait, fixi fixum, to fasten, fluxi fluxum, to flow.*

### Chap. 32.

*Of the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect tense of Verbs in or.*

The Compound Supine is formed like the Simple.

**E**Very Compound Supine is formed as the Simple, though there remain not alwaies the same syllable in both.

The Compound of *tusum, to knock*, *n*, being taken away, makes *tusum*; and of *ruitum, to rush*, is made *ritum*, *i* being taken away; and so of *saltum, to leap*, is made *sultum*.

When *fero* maketh *satum*, its Compounds make *situm*.

These Supines *captum, to take, factum, to do, jactum, to cast, raptum, to snatch, cantum, to sing, partum, to bring forth, sparsum, to sprinkle, carptum, to crop, and fartum, to stuff*, change a into e,

The Verb *edo, to eat*, when it is compounded maketh not *estum*, but *esum*, only *comedo, to eat up*, maketh both.

Of *nosco, to know, cognitum, to know*, and *agnitum, to acknowledge*, are only used, the rest of its compounds make *notum*, for *noscitum* is not in use.

Verbs in *or*, make their Preterperfect tense of the latter Supine by putting to *s*, and *sum* vel *fui*.

**II. V**Erbs in *or* take their Preterperfect tense from the latter Supine, by changing *u* into *us*, adding *sum* vel *fui*; as of *lectu* is made *lectus sum* vel *fui*. But of these Verbs, sometimes a Deponent, sometimes a Commune is to bee noted; for *labor, to slide*, makes *lapsus sum, patior, to suffer*, makes *passus sum*, and its compounds *compatior, to suffer together*, *compassus sum*.

Per-



Xum flexi, plexi, fixi *dant*, & fluo fluxum.

## Cap. 32.

## De Compositorum Verborum Supinis, &amp; De Præteritis Verborum in or.

I. **C**ompositū ut Simplex formatur quodque Supinum, Compositū supinum formatur ut Simplex,  
*Quamvis non eadem sit semper syllaba utriusque.*

*Composita à tuncsum, dempta n, tulum, à ruitum fit*

*I media dempta rulum, & à saltum quoque sultum*

*A sero quando satum format, composita situm dant.*

*Hec captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant,*

*Et cantum, partum, spartum, carptum, quoque fartum,*

*Verbum edo compositum non estum sed facit esum;*

*unum duntaxat comedo formabit utrunque.*

*A nosco tantum duo cognitum & agnitum habentur,*

*Cætera dant notum, nullo est jam noscitur in usu.*

II. **V**erba in or admittunt ex Posteriore Supino Verba in or admittunt  
*Præteritum, verso u per us, & sum consociato* Præteritum  
*Vel fui; ut, à lectus, lectus sum vel fui. At horum* ex posteriore  
*Nunc est Deponens, nunc est Commune notandum:* supino, ad-  
*Nam labor lapsus, patior dat passus & ejus* dendo s, &  
*Nata, ut compatiator compassus, perpetiorque.* sum vel fui.

Formans

perpetior, to suffer throughly, *perpeſſus ſum*, fateor, to confess, makes *faſſus ſum*, and its compounds, as, *confiteor*, to confess, *confeſſus ſum*; *diffiteor*, to deny, *diffeſſus ſum*; *gradior*, to go by ſteps, makes *greſſus ſum*, and ſo its compounds, as, *digredior*, to digreſs, *digreſſus ſum*; *fatifcor*, to be weary, makes *feſſus ſum*; *meaſor*, to meaſure, *meuſus ſum*; *utor*, to uſe, *uſus ſum*, or *ordiſor*, to weaſe, makes *orditus ſum*; *ordior*, to begin, or *uſor*, to endeavor, *niſus*, or *nixus ſum*; *ulciſcor*, to revenge, *ultus ſum*; *iraſcor*, to be angry, makes *iratus ſum*; *eor*, to ſuppoſe, *ratus ſum*; *obliviſcor*, to forget, *oblitus ſum*; *fruor*, to injoy, *fructus*, or *fruitus ſum*; *miſereor*, to pity, *miſertus ſum*; *tuor*, to ſee, and *tueor*, to defend, makes not *tutus*, but *tuitus ſum*, though both have *tutum* and *tuitum* in the Supine; *loquor*, to ſpeak, makes *locutus ſum*; *ſequor*, to follow, *ſectus ſum*; *experior*, to try, *expertus ſum*; *pacifcor*, to make a bargain, *paſtus ſum*; *nanciſcor*, to get, *naſtus ſum*; *apiſcor*, to get, which is an old verb, makes *aptus ſum*, to be apt, or *ſit*, or to ſinde out, whence *adipiſcor*, to obtain, *adeptus*; *queror*, to complain, *queſtus ſum*; *proſciſcor*, to go on a journey, *proſectus ſum*; *expergiſcor*, to awake, *experrectus ſum*; *commiſcor*, to feign, *commenſus ſum*; *naſcor*, to be born, *natus ſum*; *moriſcor*, to die, *mortuus ſum*; *oriſcor*, to ariſe, makes *ortus ſum*.

### Chap. 33.

Of certain Verbs irregular, or going out of the common rules of conjugating.

Verbs irregular are,  
I Redundant, having a preter tent of the Active and of the Paſſive voice

**T**Heſe verbs have a Preterperfect tenſe both of the Active and Paſſive voice, as, *cæno*, to ſay, makes *cænavi* and *cænatus ſum*; *juro*, to ſwear, *iuravi* and *iuratus ſum*; *potō*, to drink, *potavi* and *potus ſum*; *titubō* to ſtumble, *titubavi* or *titubatus ſum*.

Formans perpeſſus : fateor quod faſſus, & inde  
 Nata, ut confiteor confeſſus, diffiteſcigne  
 Formans diſſeſſus : gradior dat greſſus, & inde  
 Nata, ut digredior digreſſus. Junge fatiſcor  
 Feſſus ſum, menſus ſum metior, utor & uſus.  
 Pro texto orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orſus,  
 Niror niſus vel nixus ſum, ulciſcor & ultus.  
 Irascor ſimul iratus, reor atque ratus ſum,  
 Obliviſcor vult oblitus ſum; fruor optat  
 Fructus vel fruitus, miſereri junge miſertus.  
 Vult tuor & tueor non tutus ſed tuitus ſum,  
 Quamvis & tutum & tuitum ſit utrique Sapium,  
 Aloquor adde loquutus, & à ſequor adde ſequutus,  
 Expor facit expertus, formare paciſcor  
 Gaudet pactus ſum, nanciſcor naſtus, apiſcor,  
 Quod vetus eſt verbum aptus ſum, unde adipiſcor a-  
 (deprus.  
 Junge queror queſtus, proſiciſcor junge proſectus,  
 Experiſcor ſum experrectus, & hac quoque commi-  
 Niſcor commentus, naſcor natus, moriorque  
 Mortuus, atque orior quod Præteritum facit ortus.

## Cap. 33.

## De verbis quibusdam Anomalis.

**P**ræteritum Activa & Paſſiva vocis habent hæc;  
 Cœno cœnavi & cœnatus ſum tibi format,  
 Juro juravi & juratus, potôque potavi  
 Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titubatus,

Verba Ano-  
 mala ſunt  
 I Redun-  
 dantia, Præ-  
 teritum Acti-  
 væ & Paſſivæ  
 vocis habentia.

Sic

So also *careo*, to want, makes *carui* and *cassus sum*; *prandeo*, to dine, *prandi* and *pransus*; *pateo*, to lie open; *patui* & *passus*; *placeo*, to please, *placui*, & *placitus*; *esco*, to accustom, *suevi* and *suetus*; *veneo*, to be sold; *veniui* and *venditus sum*; *nubo*, to be married to a man, *nupsi* and *nupta sum*; *mereor*, to deserve, *merui* and *meritus sum*: to these add, *libet*, it liketh, *libet* and *libitū est vel fuit*; *licet*, it is lawful, *licuit*, and *licitum est vel fuit*; *taedet*, it irketh, *taedit*: and *te sum est vel fuit*: *pudet*, it ashameth, *puduit*, and *puditum est vel fuit*: and *pigit*, it irketh, which makes *piguit* and *pigitum est vel fuit*.

Variant,  
as Neuter-  
passives,

and

**N**Euter-passives are thus formed: viz. like Neuters in the present tense, and Passives in the preter tense: *Gaudeo*, to rejoice, *gavisus sum vel fui*; *fido*, to trust, *fisus sum vel fui*; *audeo*, to be bold, *ausus sum vel fui*; *facio*, to be made or done, *factus sum vel fui*; *soleo*, to be wont, *solitus sum vel fui*; *maereo*, to be sad, *maestus sum vel fui*. But *PHOCAS* taketh *maestus* for a Noun Adjective.

Such as borrow their  
Preterperfect  
tense,

**S**OME verbs borrow their preterperfect tense from another verb; as a verb Inceptive ending in *eo*, standing for the primitive verb, will have the preterperfect tense of the primitive verb, thus; *tepesco*, to begin to be warm, makes *tepeui* of *tepeo*, to be warm; *fervesco*, to begin to be hot, makes *ferui* of *ferveo*, to be hot; *concussio*, to shake, will have *vidi* of *video*, to see, *concussio*, to shake, *concussi* of *concussio*, to shake, *ferio*, to smite, *percussi* of *percussio*; to smite, *meio*, to piss, will have *minxi* or *mingo*, to piss, *sido*, to settle, *sedi* of *sideo*, to sit, *sollo*, to lift up, will have *sustuli*, of *suffero* to beat, *sum*, I am, will have *fui*, or *fuo*, to be, *fero*, to bear, *tuli* of *tulo*, to bear, *stilo*, to make to stand, *steti* of *sto*, to stand, *furo*, to be mad, *insanivi* of *insanio*, to be mad.

*is sum, careo carui & cassus sum, prandeo prandi  
 & pransus, pateo parui & passus, placeo  
 & placui & placitus, suesco fueni atque suetus.  
 Veneo pro vendor, venivi venditus & sum,  
 Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum, mereor meritus sum  
 & merui. Adde liber libuit libitum, & licet adde  
 Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tæduit & dat  
 Pertæsum; adde pudet faciens puduit puditumque,  
 Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigitumque.*

**N**eutro-passivum sic præteritum tibi format,  
 Gaudeo gavissus sum, fido fissus, & audeo  
 Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum,  
 Mæreo sum mæstus; sed Phœæ nomen habetur.

2 Variantia  
 ut, I Neu-  
 tro-passiva.

8c

**Q**uedam præteritum verba accipiunt aliunde,  
 Inceptivum in sco, stans pro Primario, adoptat

Præteritum ejusdem verbi; vult ergo tepesco

2 Præteritū  
 mutuantia.

A tepéo tepui, ferveresco à ferveo fervi,

A video cerno vult vidi, à concutio vult

Præteritum quatio concussi, à percutio que

Percussi ferio; à mingo vult meio minxi.

A sedeo fido vult sedi, à suffero tollo

Sustuli, & à suo sum fui; à tulo risè fero tulisi.

A sto sisto steti, tantum pro stare; furō que

Infanivi à verbo ejusdem significati.

Sit

So also *vescor*, to eat, will have its preterperfect tense from *pascor*, to be fed, *medeor*, to heal, from *medicor* to heal, *liquor*, to be melted, from *liqueſco*, to be melted, *reminiſcor*, to remember, from *recordor*, to cal to mind.

3 Defective  
I In the  
Preter tens.

**T** Heſe verbs want the preterperfect tenſe, *virgo*, to bend, or look towards, *ambigo*, to doubt, *griſco*, to grow, or encrease, *fatifco*, to chink, *polleo*, to be able, *nideo*, to ſhine: to theſe add *puerafco*, to begin to be a childe: and paſſives whoſe actives want the Supines, as, *metuor*, to be feared, *timor*, to be feared, and all Deſideratives except *parturio*, to ſtribe to bring forth, and *efurio*, to begin to be hungry, or to deſire to eat (with a few others) which have the preterperfect tenſe.

2 In the Supine.

**T** Heſe verbs ſeldome or never have the Supine: *lambo*, to lick, *miſco*, to ſhine, *ruſco*, to bray, *calo* to claw, *parco*, to ſpare, *diſpeſco*, to drive from paſture, *poſco*, to require, *diſco*, to learn, *compeſco*, to paſture together, *quiniſco*, to nod, *dego*, to libe, *ango*, to vex, *ſugo*, to ſuck, *lingo*, to lick, *ningo*, to ſnow, *ſatago* to be buſy about a thing, *paſſo*, to ſing, *uolo*, to will, *nolo*, to be unwilling, *maſto*, to be more willing, *tremor* to tremble, *frideo*, to make a noiſe, *frido*, to make a noiſe, *flavco*, to be yellow, *liveo*, to be black & blew, *aveo*, to cover, *paveo*, to fear, *conſerveo*, to ſwink, *ſerveo*, to be hot. The Compounds of *nuo*, to nod, as, *renuo*, to reſuſe: The Compounds of *cado*, to fall, as, *incido*, to fall into: Except *occido*, to fall down, *occuſum* and *recido* *recuſum* to fall back: *reſpuo*, to reſuſe, *linquo*, to leave, *luo*, to be puniſh'd, *metuo*, to fear, *cluo*, to gliſter, *frigeo*, to be cold, *caluo*, to be bald, *ſtereo*, to ſtand, *timeo*, to fear, *luceo*, to ſhine, *arceo*, to drive away, whoſe compounds make *ercitum*: the compounds of *gruo*, to cry like a Crane, as *ingruo*, to invade.

And

*sic poscunt vescor, medeor, liquor, reminiscor :*

*Præteritum à pascor, medicor, liquefio, recordor.*

**P** *Præteritum fugiunt, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco, 3 Defectiva*  
*Polleo, nideo, ad hæc, Inceptiva, ut puerasco; 1 Præterita*

*Et passiva, quibus carvere Activa supinis,*

*ut metuor, timeor. Meditativa omnia, præter*

*Parnurio, esurio; quæ præteritum duo servant.*

**H** *Æc raro, aut nunquã retinebunt verba Supinã 2 Defectiva*  
*Supinis.*

*Lambo; mico micui, rudo, scabo, parco peperci,*

*Dispesco, posco; disco, compesco, quinisco,*

*Dego, angio, fingo, lingo, ningo, satagóque,*

*Pfallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,*

*Flaveo, liveo, aver, paveo, conniveo, fervet ;*

*A nuo compositum, ut reuuo; à cado, ut incido; præter*

*Occido, quod facit occasum, recidóque recasum;*

*Respicio, linquo, luo, metuo, eluo, frigeo, calvo,*

*Et sterto, timeo, sic luco, & arceo, cujus*

*Composita ercism habent; sic à gruio, ut ingruo natum.*







Et quæcunque in ui formantur neutra secunda;  
Exceptis, oleo, dolco, placeo, taceoq̃ue,  
pareo, item & careo, noceo, pateo, lateoq̃ue,  
Et valeo, calco; gaudent hæc namque supino.

Chap. 34.

De Verbis quæ deficiunt certis Modis  
& Temporibus.

**V**erba (magis usitatè) Defectiva vocantur, quæ  
certis Modis & Temporibus deficiunt, viz.

3 Certis Mo-  
dis & Tem-  
poribus, ut,  
Aio.

Indicativus { Aio, ais, ait. Plur. Aiunt.  
Præsens {

Imperfect. Aiebam, habet omnes personas utriusque  
numeri.

Perfect. Aisti.

Imperativus, Ai.

Subjunctivus { Aiam, aiat. Plur. Aiamus, aiant.  
Præsens {

Participium præsens, Aiens.

Subjunctivus { Ausim, ausis, ausit. Plur. Ausint.  
Præsens {

Ausim.

Sic Duim, duis, duit, Plur. Duint.

Duim.

Vereres enim Subjunctiva per im efferebant, unde  
creduim pro credam legimus.

Indicat. Futur. Salvebis,

Salve;

Imperat. Salve, salveto. Plur. Salvete, salvetote.

Infinitivus, Salvete.

*Ave.*Imperative, *Ave aveto, hail thou.* Plur. *Avete avetote.*Infinit. *Avere, to bid one hail.**Cedo.*Imperat. *Cedo, reach me.* Plur. *Cedite, anriently Certe, reach ye.**Faxo,*Indic. & Subjunct. Futur. *Faxo vel Faxim I will bring to pass, Faxis thou wilt make, Faxit he will make.* Plur. *Faxint they will make.**Forem.*Subjunct. *Forem I should, or might be, Fores thou shouldst, or might be, Foret he should, or might be.* Plur. *Forent they might be.*Infinit. Futur. *Fore to be.**Quæso.*Indic. præsens, *Quæso I pray, Plur. Quæsumus we pray.**Infit.*Indic. præsens, *Infit he saith.* Plur. *Infiunt they say.* And *Defit it is wanting, Defiet it will be wanting, Defiat let it be wanting:* as also *desieri to be wanting, Consiervi to be done at once.**Defit.**Consiervi.**Inquam.*Indic. præsens, *Inquo vel inquam I say, Inquis thou saist, Inquit he saith.* Plur. *Inquiunt they say.* Perfectum, *Inquisti thou hast said, Inquit he hath said.* Plur. *Inquistis ye have said.*Futurum, *Inquies thou shalt say, Inquiet he shall say.* Plur. *Inquietis ye shall say, Inquiunt they shall say.*Imperat. *Inque, Inquito say thou.* Plur. *Inquite say ye.*Subjunct. præsens, *Inquiat he may say.*Particip. præsens, *Inquiens saying.**Odi.**Capi.**Memini.**Odi I hate, capi I begin, memini I remember,* have only those tenses, which are formed of the Preter tense, viz. those that end in *ram, rim, ssem, ro,* and *sse,* save that *memini* hath in the Imperative mood singular, *Memento remember thou, mementote remember ye.**Dor,**Ior.*These simple Verbs : *For, dor, fer, der,* are not found

Imperativus, *Ave, aucto*. Plur. *Aucte, auctote*. *Ave*.

Infinitivus, *Avère*.

Imperativus, *Cedo*. Plur. *Cedite*, & apud Antiquos *Cedo*.  
*Cette*.

Indicat. & Subjunct. Fut. *Faxim* vel *faxo, faxis, Faxo*.  
*fazit*. Plur. *Faxint*.

Subjunct. *Forem, fores, foret*. Plur. *forent*. *Forem*.

Infinit. Futur. *Fore*.

Indicat. præsens, *Quæso*. Plur. *Quæsumus*. *Quæso*.

Indic. præsens, *Infit*. Plur. *Infiunt*. Et *Desit, desiet, Infit*,  
*desiat*, ut item *desieri & confieri*. *Desit*,  
*Confieri*.

Indicat. præsens, *Inquo* vel *inquam, inquis, inquit*. *Inquam*.  
Plur. *Inquiunt*.

Perfectum, *Inquisti, inquit*. Plur. *Inquistis*.

Futurum, *Inquies, inquit*.

Imperat. *Inque, inquito*. Plur. *Inquite*.

Subjunct. præsens, *Inquiat*.

Participium, *Inquiens*.

*Odi, capi, memini*, habent ea solum tempora quæ à  
præterito formantur; viz. in *ram, rim, ssem, ro, & sse* *Odi*,  
desinentia. Sed *memini* habet in imperativo singula- *Capi*,  
ri, *memento*. Plur. *mementote*. *Memini*.

*Dor, for, der, fer*, simplicia, non reperiuntur in  
primâ *Dor*,  
*For*.

found in the first person singular of the Present tense, but (almost) in all the rest.

*Dic,duc,fer,fac*, are cut off by Apocope.

*Sci.*

*Sci* of *scio* to know, is not in use, nor *solebo* of *soleo* to be wont, nor *fuo* to be, an old verb.

*Orior.*

*Morior.*

*Volo.*

*Nolo.*

*Malo.*

*Fero.*

*Feror.*

*Edo.*

*Orior* or *eris* to arise, hath *oriri* in the Infinitive Mood, and *morior* maketh *mori* and *moriri*.

*Volo* I will, *nolo* I will not, *malo* I had rather, *fero* I bear, *feror* I am born, and *edo* I eat, have commonly a Syncope in many tenses; as, *Volo, vis, vult, Vultis*. *Nolo, non vis, non vult, Nolumus*. *Malo, mavis, mavult, Malumus*. *Fero, fers, fert, Feror, ferris, vel ferre, fertur*. *Edo, edis veles, edit vel est*, &c. of which *volo* and *malo* want the Imperative mood. *Nolo* makes the Imperative mood *noli nolito do not thou*. Plur. *Nolite nolite do not ye*.

*EO & QUEO.*

*EO* I go, and *queo* I am able, make their Preter-imperfect tense *ibam* and *quibam*, and their Future *ibo* and *quibo*; and their Gerunds *eundi, eundo, eundum, Queundi, queundo, quundum*.

*SUM.*

*SUM* with its Compounds wants the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles of the Present tense, save that *absens, præsens*, come of *absum, præsum*, for *futurus* is of *fui*, which was once the preter tense of the obsolete Verb *fuo*. *Possum* wants the Imperative Mood.

primâ personâ singulari præsentis, sed in cæteris (serè) omnibus.

*Dis, duc, fer, fac,* per Apocopen concisæ sunt.

*Sci* à *scio* non reperitur, nec *solebo* à *soleo*, nec *fui* antiquum.

*Orior, oreris, & oriris*, habet Infinitum *oriri*, sic & *Orior, Morior, mori, & moriri*.

*Volo, nolo, malo, fero, feror, edo*, Syncopen scilicet admittunt in plerisque temporibus; ut, *Volo, vis, vult, vultis. Nolo, non vis, non vult, nolumus. Malo, malis, malis, malis, malis. Fero, fers, fert. Feror, ferris, vel ferre, fertur. Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est, &c.* ex quibus *volo* & *malo* carent Imperativo. *Nolo* facit Imperativum. *Noli, nolito. Plur. Nolite, nolite.*

*Eo & queo* habent imperfectum *ibam & quibam*, & futurum *ibo & quibo*, & Gerundia, *eundi, eundo, eundum. Queundi, queundo, queundum.*

*Sum* cum compositis carent Gerundiis, Supinis, & Participio præsenti, nisi quod ab *absens, præsens*, veniunt *absum, præsum*; nam *futurus* est à *fui*, quod præteritum olim obsoleti verbi *fuo*. *Possum* caret Imperativo.

## Cap. 35. Of the Forming of certain Verbs irregular.

Volo.

||

Indicativus

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	1 Volo	I am	} willing
	2 Vis	thou art	
	3 Vult	he is	
	1 Volumus	we are	
	2 Vultis	ye are	
	3 Volunt	they are	

Imperfect. — *Volēbam*, I was willing, &c. ut, *Legābam*.Præterperfect. — *Volui*, I have been willing, &c. ut, *Legi*.Plusquamperfect. — *Volueram*, I had been willing, &c. ut, *Legeram*.Futurum — *Volam*, I shall be willing, &c. ut, *Legam*.Imperativo caret, cujus loco utimur præsentis Potentialis, *Velis*, &c.

Potentialis

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	1 Velim	I may	} he willing
	2 Velis	thou mayst	
	3 Velit	he may	
	1 Velimus	we may	
	2 Velitis	ye may	
	3 Velint	they may	
Præterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Vellem	I might	} he willing
	2 Velles	thou mightest	
	3 Vellet	he might	
	1 Vellemus	we might	
	2 Velleitis	ye might	
	3 Vellent	they might	

Præterperf. — *Voluerim*, I might have been willing, &c. ut, *Legerim*.Plusquamperfect. — *Voluissem*, I might have been willing, &c. ut, *Legissem*.Futurum — *Voluero*, I may be willing hereafter, &c. ut, *Legero*.

Infinitivus

Præsens & Imperf. — *Velle*, To be willing.Perfectum & Plusquam. — *Voluisse*, To have or had been willing.Participium præsens — *Volens*, willing.

Nolo.

ular.

Nolo.

||

Indicativus

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Nolo	I am	} unwilling
	2 Non vis	thou art	
	3 Non vult	he is	
Plur. I Sing.	1 Nolumus	We are	} unwilling
	2 Non vultis	ye are	
	3 Nolunt	they are	

Imperfect — Nolebam, I was unwilling : &c. ut, *Legēbam.*Præterperfect. — Noluī, I have been unwilling : &c. ut, *Legi.*Plusquamperfect. — Noluēram, I had been unwilling : &c. ut, *Legissem.*Futurum — Nolam, I shall be unwilling : &c. ut, *Legam.*

egeram.

lis, &amp;c.

Imperativus

Præf. { Noli	Be thou un-	Plur. { Nolite	} Be ye unwilling.
Sing. { Nolito	willing	Plur. { Nolito	

Potentialis

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Nolim	I may	} be unwilling
	2 Nolis	thou mayst	
	3 Nolit	he may	
Plur. I Sing.	1 Nolumus	We may	} be unwilling
	2 Nolitis	ye may	
	3 Nolint	they may	

Præterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Nollems	I might	} be unwilling
	2 Nolles	thou mightst	
	3 Nollet	he might	
Plur. I Sing.	1 Nollemus	We might	} be unwilling
	2 Nolletis	ye might	
	3 Nolent	they might	

Perfectum — Noluērim, I might have been unwilling : ut, *Legissem.*Plusquamperfect. — Noluisset, I might have been unwilling : ut, *Legissem.*Futurum — Noluero, I may be unwilling hereafter : ut, *Legero.*

Infinitivus

Præfens &amp; Imperf. — Nolle, To be unwilling.

Perfectum &amp; Plusquamperf. — Noluisset, To have or had been unwilling.

Participium Præfens, — Nolens, unwilling.

Nolo.

Nolo.

## Malo.

||

## Indicativus

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1	Malo	I am	} more willing
	2	Mavis	thou art	
	3	Mavult	he is	
	1	Malumus	We are	
	2	Mavultis	ye are	
	3	Malunt	they are	

Imperfect — Malebam, I was more willing : ut, Legebam.

Præterperfect. — Malui, I have been more willing : ut, Legi.

Plusquamperfect. — Malueram, I had been more willing : ut, Legeram.

Futurum — Malam, I shall be more willing : ut, Legam.

Imperativo caret, cujus loco utimur Malis, &amp;c.

## Potentialis

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1	Malim	I may	} be more willing
	2	Malis	thou mayst	
	3	Malit	he may	
	1	Malimus	We may	
	2	Malitis	ye may	
	3	Malint	they may	

Præterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1	Mallam	I might	} be more willing
	2	Malles	thou mightst	
	3	Mallet	he might	
	1	Mallamus	We might	
	2	Mallatis	ye might	
	3	Mallent	they might	

Perfectum — Maluerim, I might have been more willing : ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. — Maluissim, I might have been more willing : ut, Legissim.

Futurum — Maluero, I may be more willing hereafter : ut, Legero.

## Infinitivus

Præfens &amp; Imperf. — Malle, To be more willing.

Perfectum &amp; Plusquamperf. — Maluisse, To have or had been more willing.

Sæpe leguntur, Mavolo, Mavolam, Mavelim, &amp; Mavellem.

Fm.



Fero.

||

Indicativus.

Præsens Sing.	1 Fero	I bear
	2 Fers	thou bearest
	3 Fert	he beareth
Plur.	1 Ferimus	we } bear
	2 Fertis	
	3 Ferunt	

Imperfectum — Ferebam, I was bearing : ut, Legebam.

Perfectum — Tuli, I have borne : ut, Legi.

Plusquamperf. — Tuleram, I had borne : ut, Legeram.

Futurum — Feram, I will bear : ut, Legam.

Imperativus.

Sing.	Fer, } Bear thou	Plur.	Feramus } Bear we
	Ferto }		Ferte } Bear ye
Præs.	Ferat, } Let him bear		Ferant }
	Ferto }		Ferunto } Let them bear

Potentialis

Præsens — Feram, I may bear : ut, Legam.

Imperfectum — Ferrem, I might bear : ut, Legerem.

Perfectum — Tulerim, I might have borne : ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. — Tulissem, I might have borne : ut, Legissem.

Futurum — Tulero, I might bear hereafter : ut, Legero.

Infinitivus

Præsens &amp; Imperf. — Ferre, To bear.

Perfectum &amp; Plusquam. — Tulisse, To have or had borne.

Futurum — Latum esse — To bear hereafter.

Gerundia	Ferendi	Of bearing.
	Ferendo	In bearing.
	Ferendum	To bear.

Supina — Latum To bear.

Parti- — Latum To be borne.

cipia — Ferens Bearing

Laturus About to bear.

Fero.

Fero.

||

Indicativus.

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	1 Fero	I am born
	2 Ferris	thou art born
	3 Ferre	
	Fertur	he is born
	1 Ferimur	we
	2 Ferimini	ye
	3 Feruntur	they
		are born

Imperfectum — Ferebar, I was born : ut, Legabar.

Perfectum Latus sum vel fui, I have been born : ut, Lectus sum vel fui.

Plusquamperf. — Latus eram vel fueram, I had been born : ut, Lectus eram vel fueram.

Futurum — Ferar, I shall be born : ut, Legar.

Imperativus.

Præsens Sing.	Ferre,	} Be thou born	} Plur.	Feramur	Be we born	
	Fertor			Ferimini	Be ye born	
				Ferimini		
	Feratur	} Be he born		Ferantur	} Let them be born	
	Fertor			Feruntor		

Potentialis.

Præsens — Ferar, I may be born : ut, Legar.

Imperfect. — Ferrer, I might be born : ut, Legerer.

Perfectum — Latus {sim fuerim} I might have been born : ut, Lectus {sim, vel fuerim,

Plusquamper- {Latus {essem fuisset} I might have been born : ut, Lectus {essem vel fuisset}

fectum {Latus {ero vel fuero} I may be born hereafter : ut, Lectus {ero, vel fuero}

Infinitivus.

Præsens, &amp; Imperfect. — Ferri, To be born.

Perf. &amp; Plusq. Latum esse vel fuisse, To have or had been born

Futurum — Latum ire, vel Ferendum esse, To be born hereafter.

Participia {Latus Born  
Ferendus To be born.

Edo

Edo. || Indicativus.

Sing.	Edo	I eat	Plur.	Edimus	We eat
	Edis	thou eatest		Editis	ye eat
	Es	he eateth		Edunt	they eat
Præs.	Edit		Plur.	Edunt	
	Est				

Imperfectum — Edebam, I ate: ut, Legebam.

Perfectum — Edi, I have eaten: ut, Legi.

Plusquamper. — Ederam, I had eaten: ut, Legeram.

Futurum — Edam, I shall eat: ut, Legam.

Imperativus.

Sing.	Es	Eat thou	Plur.	Edamini	Eat we
	Esse			Editi	
	Ede			Estote	Eat ye
Præsens	Edito		Plur.	Editote	
	Edat			Edant	Eat they
	Esse			Edunto	
Præsens	Edito	Let him eat	Plur.	Edant	
	Esse			Edunto	
	Edito				

Potentialis

Præsens — Edam, I may eat: ut, Legam.

Imperfectum — Ederem, I might eat: ut, Legerem.

Perfectum — Ederim, I might have eaten: ut, Legerim.

Plusquamper. — Edissem, I might have eaten: ut, Legissem.

Futurum — Edero, I may eat hereafter: ut, Legero.

Infinitivus

Præsens & Imperf. — Edere vel esse, To eat.

Perf. & Plusq. — Edisse, To have or had eaten.

Futur. — Edurum esse, To eat hereafter.

Gerundia { Edendi Of eating  
Edendo In eating  
Edendum To eat

Supina { Esuri, To eat  
Esu, To be eaten

Participia { Edens Eating  
Esurus About to eat.

*Fio.*

11

### Indicativus.

Præsens — Fio, **I am made** : ut, *Audio*.

Imperfectum — Fiebam, **I was made** : ut, Audiebam.

*Perfectum Factus* {*sum,*  
                        {*fui,*

**I have been made :** ut, *Lectus* {*sum,*  
                                       {*fui,*

*Plusquamperf.*—*Factus* { *eram,* I had been made : ut, *Lectus* { *eram,*  
                    { *fueram,*                         { *fueram.*

Futurum——Fiam, I shall be made: ut, Audiam.

### Imperativus.

Præsens Sing.	<i>Fi,</i>	} Be thou made	} Plur.	<i>Fiamus—</i>	Be we made
	<i>Fito,</i>			<i>Fite</i>	Be ye made
	<i>Fiat,</i>			<i>Fitote,</i>	
	<i>Fito,</i>			<i>Fiant,</i>	
				<i>Fiunt,</i>	Let them be made

Potentialis.

Præsens—*Fiam*, I may be made : ut, *Audiam*.

Imperfect. — *Fierem, I might be made : ut, Audirem.*

Perfectum — Factus <sup>sim</sup> I might have been made : <sup>ut, Lectus fuerim</sup>

Plusquamper-  
fectum { factus } essem I might have been made : { essem  
              { fuisset,                      ut, Lectus } fuisset

Futurum — Factus { ero  
                        { fuero     I may be made hereafter : }  
                                      } ut, Lectus { fuero

## Infinitivus.

Præsens, & Imperfect. — *Fieri*, To be made.

Perfectum & Plus-  
quamperfect. } *Factum* esse **To have**; had been made.

Futurum { *Factum iri*      To be made hereafter.  
              *Faciendum esse*

Participia { Factus **Made**  
Faciendus **To be made**

Eo. ||

Indicativus.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Eo	I go	
	2 Is	thou goest	
	3 It	he goeth	
	1 Imus	we	} go
	2 Itis	ye	
	3 Eunt	they	

Præterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Ibam	I did	
	2 Ibas	thou didst	
	3 Ibat	he did	} go
	1 Ibamus	we did	
	2 Ibatis	ye did	
	3 Ibant	they did	

Perfectum Plur. I Sing.	1 Ivi	I have	
	2 Ivisi	thou hast	
	3 Ivit	he hath	} gone
	1 Ivimus	we have	
	2 Ivistis	ye have	
	3 Iverunt	they have	
	Ivire		

Plusquamperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Iveram	I had	
	2 Iveras	thou hadst	
	3 Iverat	he had	} gone
	1 Iveramus	we had	
	2 Iveratis	ye had	
	3 Iverant	they had	

Futurum Plur. I Sing.	1 Ibo	I will	
	2 Ibis	thou wilt	
	3 Ibit	he will	} go
	1 Ibimus	we will	
	2 Ibitis	ye will	
	3 Ibunt	they will	

Imperativus

Eo.

||

Imperativus

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	I,	Go thou
	Ites,	
	Eat,	Let him go
	Ite,	
	Eamus	Go we
	Ite,	Go ye
	Itote,	
	Eant,	Go they
	Eunto,	

Potentialis

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	1 Eam	I may	} go
	2 Eas	thou maist	
	3 Eat	he may	
	1 Eamus	we	} may go
	2 Eatis	ye	
	3 Eant	they	

Imperfectum Plur. I Sing.	1 Irem	I might	} go
	2 Ires	thou mightest	
	3 Iret	he might	
	1 Iremus	we might	} go
	2 Iretis	ye might	
	3 Irent	they might	

Perfectum Plur. I Sing.	1 Iverim	I might	} have gone
	2 Iveris	thou mightest	
	3 Iverit	he might	
	1 Iverimus	we might	} have gone
	2 Iveritis	ye might	
	3 Iverint	they might	

Plusquamperf.

Eo.

Plusquamperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1	<i>lvissem</i>	I might	} have had gone.
	2	<i>lvisset</i>	thou mightest	
	3	<i>lvisset</i>	he might	
	1	<i>lvissemus</i>	we might	}
	2	<i>lvissetis</i>	ye might	
	3	<i>lvissetent</i>	they might	

Futurum Plur. I Sing.	1	<i>lvere</i>	I may	} go hereafter.
	2	<i>lveris</i>	thou maist	
	3	<i>lverit</i>	he may	
	1	<i>lverimus</i>	we may	}
	2	<i>lveritis</i>	ye may	
	3	<i>lverint</i>	they may	

## Infinitivus

Præsens & Imperfect. } *ire*, { to go.

Perfectum & Plusquamperfect. - *lvisse*, To have or had gone.

Futurum — *lurum esse* — To go hereafter.

Gerundia	{	<i>Eundi</i>	Of going
		<i>Eundo</i>	In going
		<i>Eundum</i>	To go

Supina { *Itum*, } To go  
          { *Itu*, } To be gone

Participia { Gen. *Eunti*, &c. } Going.  
              *Iturus*, } About to go.

Ad hunc modum etiam variantur *Quæ*, nisi quod Imperativo careat. *Quæ*.

M

Cap.

## Chap. 36.

## Of forming the Verb Sum.

The Verb *Sum* hath a manner of declining which belongs only to its self.

Verbum *Sum* peculiarem Conjugandi rationem sibi postulat.

*Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.*

*Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.*

## The Indicative Mood. | The Potential Mood.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	1 2 3	<i>Sum, Possum</i>	<b>I am</b>		<i>Sim, possim</i>	<b>I may</b>	} 39
		<i>Es</i>	<b>thou art</b>		<i>Sis</i>	<b>thou mayst</b>	
		<i>Ist</i>	<b>he is</b>		<i>Sit</i>	<b>he may</b>	
	1 2 3	<i>Sumus</i>	<b>We are</b>		<i>Simus</i>	<b>We may</b>	} 39
		<i>Estis</i>	<b>ye are</b>		<i>Sitis</i>	<b>ye may</b>	
		<i>Sunt</i>	<b>they are</b>		<i>Sint</i>	<b>they may</b>	

Preterimperfect, Plur. I Sing.	1 2 3	<i>Eram, Poteram</i>	<b>I was</b>		<i>Essem, Possem</i>	<b>I might</b>	} 39
		<i>Eras</i>	<b>thou wast</b>		<i>Esset</i>	<b>thou mightest</b>	
		<i>Erat</i>	<b>he was</b>		<i>Esset</i>	<b>he might</b>	
	1 2 3	<i>Eramus</i>	<b>We were</b>		<i>Essemus</i>	<b>We might</b>	} 39
		<i>Era'tis</i>	<b>ye were</b>		<i>Essetis</i>	<b>ye might</b>	
		<i>Erant</i>	<b>they were</b>		<i>Essent</i>	<b>they might</b>	

Preter tense Plur. I Sing.	1 2 3	<i>Fui, Potui</i>	<b>I have</b>		<i>Fuerim, Potuerim</i>	<b>I might</b>	} 39
		<i>Fuisti</i>	<b>thou hast</b>		<i>Fueris</i>	<b>thou mightest</b>	
		<i>Fuit</i>	<b>he hath</b>		<i>Fuerit</i>	<b>he might</b>	
	1 2 3	<i>Fuimus</i>	<b>We have</b>		<i>Fuerimus</i>	<b>We might</b>	} 39
		<i>Fuistis</i>	<b>ye have</b>		<i>Fueritis</i>	<b>ye might</b>	
		<i>Fuerunt</i>	<b>they have</b>		<i>Fuerint</i>	<b>they might</b>	

Preter:



Preterplup. tense Plur. I Sing.	1	Fueram, potueram	I had	} been	Fuisse, potuisse	I might	} have had been
	2	Fueras	thou hadst		Fuisses	thou mightest	
	3	Fuerat	he had		Fuisset	he might	
Preterplup. tense Plur. I Sing.	1	Fueramus	we had	} been	Fuissemus	we might	} have had been
	2	Fueratis	ye had		Fuissetis	ye might	
	3	Fuerant	they had		FuisSENT	they might	

Future Plur. I Sing.	1	Ero, Potero	I shall	} be	Fuero, potuero	I may	} be hereafter
	2	Eris	thou shalt		Fueris	thou mayst	
	3	Erit	he shall		Fuerit	he may	
Future Plur. I Sing.	1	Erimus	we shall	} be	Fuerimus	we may	} be hereafter
	2	Eritis	ye shall		Fueritis	ye may	
	3	Erint	they shall		Fuerint	they may	

## The Imperative Mood || The Infinitive Mood.

Present tense. Plur. I Sing.	2	Sis, es, esto	Be thou	} Present and Imperfect.	Esse to be	} to have or had been
	3	Sit, esto	be he		Esse to be	
	1	Simus	Be we		Fuisse	
Present tense. Plur. I Sing.	2	Siti, este, esto	be ye	} Preterplup. Future	Fuisse	} been
	3	Sint, sunt	be they		Futurum	
					esse	

So likewise are its compounds declined, *Absum*, to be absent; *Desum*, to be wanting; *Præsum*, to be before; *Obsum*, to be against; but *Prosum*, to profit, takes *d* between two vowels, and *Possum*, to be able, (of *potis* & *sum* to be) before a vowel, and instead of *f* keeps *t*, but changeth it into *s* before *s*.

Sic variantur & ejus composita, *Absum*, *desum*, *præsum*, *obsum*; *prosum* recipit *d* inter duas vocales, & *Possum* (à *potis* & *sum*) ante vocalem & profretinet *t*, mutat autem in *s* ante *s*.

## Chap. 37.

## Of Verbs Impersonals and Derivatives.

Impersonals  
be declined  
in the third  
person only

**I**mpersonals bee Declined throughout all Moods and Tenses in the voice of the third person singular only.

- And they be either
- 1 Of the Active voice, which end in *t*; as, *deceat it becometh*, *decebat*, *deceuit*, *deceuerat*, *decebit*. *Deceat*, *deceret*, *deceuerit*, *deceere*.
  - 2 Of the Passive voice, which end in *tur*; as, *Studetur it is studied*, *studebatur*, *studitum est* vel *fuit*, *studitum erat* vel *fuerat*, *studebitur*, *studeatur*, *studeretur*, *studitum sit* vel *fuerit*, *studitum esset* vel *fuisse*, *studitum erit* vel *fuerit*, *studerit*.

And they  
be of the  
1 Active  
voice.

Impersonals want ( for the most part ) *Gerunds*, *Supines*, and *Participles*.

The Participles by which we express the Preter tense, are put Substantively in the Neuter gender.

Impersonals of the active voice are these eleven, which (almost) alwaies remain Impersonals, viz. *Deceat it becometh*, *libet it lieth*, *licet it is lawful*, *liquet it is clear* (whose Preter tense is not extant) *Libet it lieth*, *miseret it pitieth*, *oportet it behoveth*, *poenitet it repenteth*, *pigit it irketh*, *pudit it ashamed*, and *tedet it irketh*, which are also sometimes found in the third person plural; as, *decent*, *oportent*, *pudent*.

To these are reckoned some personals (which are found absolutely in the third person without a nominative case, having an Infinitive mood presently after them) Such are

In the first Conjugation, *delectat it delighteth*, *iuvat it helpeth*, *praestat it is better*, *restat it remaineth*, *stat it is resolved on*, *constat it is manifest*, *vacat I am at leisure*.

In

## Cap. 37.

## De Impersonalibus &amp; Derivativis.

**I**mpersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ personâ singulari per omnes modos & tempora.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ singulari.

Sunt autem duplicia

- 1 Activæ voces, quæ in *t* desinunt; ut, *deceat, decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit, deceat, deceret, decuerit, decuisset, decuerit, decere.*
- 2 Passivæ voces, quæ in *tur* desinunt; ut, *studetur studebatur, studitum est vel fuit, studium erat vel fuerat, studebitur. Studeatur, studeretur, studitum sit vel fuerit, studitum esset vel fuisset, studitum erit vel fuerit, studeri.*

Impersonalia Gerundiis, & Supinis, & Participiis, plerunque carent.

Sunt autem  
1 Activæ  
vocis.

Participia, per quæ Præterita circumloquimur, Substantivè ponuntur in neutro genere.

Impersonalia Activæ vocis sunt hæc undecim, Conjugationis secundæ, quæ semper (sepe) manent Impersonalia, viz. *Decet, libet, licet, liquet* (cujus non existat præteritum) *lubet, miseret, oportet, pœnitet, piget, pudet, tædet*, quæ interdum etiam inveniuntur in tertiâ plurali, ut, *decent, oportent, pudent.*

His accensentur quædam Impersonalia (quæ absolute inveniuntur in tertiâ persona absque nominativo, sequente mox Infinitivo) Cujusmodi sunt,

In prima Conjugatione, *delectat, juvet, præstat, restat, stat, constat, vacat.*

In the Second, *apparet, it appeareth, attinet, it belongeth, debet, it ought, patet, it is evident, placet, it pleaseth, solet, it is wont.*

In the Third, *Accidit, it befalleth, capit, it beginneth, conducit, it belongeth to, contingit, it hapneth, definit, it ceaseth, incipit, it beginneth, sufficit, it sufficeth.*

In the Fourth, *Convenit, it agreeth, evenit, it falls out, expedit, it is expedient.*

Among the irregular verbs, *est, it is, interest, it concerneth, prodest, it doth profit, potest, it may, fit, it is done, refert, it concerneth.*

Likewise verbs of an exempt power (i.e. that signifie an action not of any humane power) come neer the nature of Impersonals; as, *Fulgurat, it lightneth, pluit, it raineth, lucefcit, it waxeth light.*

Or  
4. The Passive voice.

2. Impersonals of the Passive voice have no certain number, because they come of all verbs, actives, and some neuters; as, *Legitur, it is read, curritur, it is run.*

Lastly, no verb (almost) is so far a personal, as that it cannot take upon it the form of an Impersonal; and some Impersonals turn again sometimes into Personals.

A verb impersonal may indifferently be taken to be of any person in both numbers, viz. by reason of an oblique case adjoined; as, *me oportet, I must, te oportet, thou must, illum oportet, he must. Oportet nos, we must, oportet vos, ye must, oportet illos, they must. Statur à me, I stand, statur à te, thou standest, statur ab illo, he standeth, statur à nobis, we stand, statur à vobis, ye stand, statur ab illis, they stand.*

Verbs Derivatives are

Derivative Verbs are very often used for their Primitives; as, *Timeſco* for *timeo*, to fear, *hiſco* for *hio*, to gape.

1. Inchoatives.

There be five kinds of Derivative Verbs.

1. Inchoatives, or Augmentatives, which signifie begin-

In Secunda, *Apparet, attinet, debet, patet, placet, solet.*

In Tertia, *Accidit, capit, conducit, contingit, desinit, incipit, sufficit.*

In Quarta, *Convenit, evenit, expedit.*

Inter anomale, *est, interest, prodest, potest, fit, refert.*

Ad Impersonalium etiam naturam quodammodo accedunt verba exemptæ potestatis, viz. actionem significatia non humanæ potestatis, ut, *Fulgurat, pluit, lucefcit, &c.*

2 Impersonalia Passivæ vocis certum numerum non habent, quia fiunt ab omnibus verbis Activis, & 2 Passivæ quibuldam neuris, ut *Legitur, curritur.* Vel vocis.

Denique nullum ferè verbum est tam personale, ut non idem impersonalis formam possit induere; arque nonnulla Impersonalia remigrant aliquando in Personalia.

Verbum Impersonale, pro singulis personis utriusque numeri indifferenter accipi potest, viz. ex vi adjuncti obliqui, ut,

Oportet	me	}	Oportet	uos
	te			vos
	illum			illos
Statutur	à me	}	Statutur	à nobis
	à te			à vobis
	ab illo			ab illis.

Derivativa sæpissime pro ipsis primitivis usurpantur, ut, *Timeſco* pro *timeo*, *biſco* pro *bio*. Derivativa ſunt,

*Derivatorum* quinque ſunt genera.

1 Inchoativa ſive *Augmentativa*, quæ inchoativa, 2 Inchoativa

1 Frequentatives.

2 Desideratives.

3 Diminutives.

4 Imitatives

5 Apparatives.

6 Denominatives.

beginning or augmentation, and end in *ſco*; as, *Luceſco* to begin to be light, *ardeſco* to be hotter & hotter

2 *Frequentatives*, which ſignifie a certain aſſiduity or endeavour; and end in *toſ*, *ſo*, *xo*, or *tor*; as, *Viſito* to viſit often, *viſo* to go to ſea, *nexo* to tie often, *ſecto* to endeavour to follow.

3 *Deſideratives*, or *Meditatives*, which ſignifie a certain deſire or ſtrife, and end in *urio*; as, *Leſturio* to ſtrive to read, *canaturio* to deſire a ſupper.

4 *Diminutives*, which ſignifie the leſſening of its Primitiv, and end in *lo* or *ſſo*; as, *Sorbillo* to ſup often, *piſſo* to ſipple, or ſup a little,

5 *Imitatives*, which ſignifie imitation, and end in *iſſo*, and in *or*; as, *Patriſſo* to reſemble a father, *vulpinor* to play the fox.

6 Hitherto belong alſo *Apparatives*, which ſignifie a preparation to, and end in *co*; as, *Vellico* to plack ſodico to dig.

7 As alſo *Denominatives*, which come from Nouns, and have no proper appellation; as, *Lignor* to purbey wood, *ruſticor* to live in the Country.

### Chap. 38. Of a Participle.

A Participle taketh part of a Noun and part of a Verb.

There be four kinds of Participles.

1 Of the Preſent tenſe.



**PARTICIPLE** is a part of Speech derived of a Verb, which taketh part of a Noun as well as of a Verb; as, *Amans* loving.

A Participle hath from a Noun, gender, caſe, and declenſion; from a Verb, tenſe and ſignification; from both theſe number and figure.

According to tenſe there be four kinds of Participles.

1 A Participle of the preſent tenſe hath the ſignification of the preſent tenſe, and endeth in *ans*, *ens*, and *iens*; as, *Amans*, *docens*, *legens*, *audiens*.

But

em aut augmentationem significant, & in *ſco* definiunt; ut, *Luceſco, ardeſco.*

2 *Frequentativa*, quæ aſſiduitatem quandam, vel sonatum significant, & in *to, ſo, xo*, aut *tor* definiunt; ut, *Viſito, viſo, nexo, ſector.* 2 Frequentativa.

3 *Deſiderativa* ſive *Meditativa*, quæ appetentiam quandam, aut ſtudium ſignificant, & definiunt in *urio*; ut, *Leſturio, cœnaturio.* 3 Deſiderativa.

4 *Diminutiva*, quæ diminutionem ſui Primitivi ſignificant, & definiunt in *lo* vel *ſſo*, ut, *Sorbillō, miſſo,* 4 Diminutiva.

5 *Imitativa*, quæ imitationem ſignificant, & definiunt in *iſſo* & *or*; ut, *Patriſſo, vulpinor.* 5 Imitativa.

6 Huc pertinent & *Apparativa*, quæ apparatus ſignificant, & in *cō* definiunt; ut, *Vellitō, fodico.* 6 Apparativa.

7 Item *Denominativa*, quæ à nominibus veniunt, & propriam appellationem non habent; ut, *ſignor, poſſicor.* 7 Denominativa.

### Cap. 38. De Participio.



**PARTICIPIIUM** eſt pars Orationis à Verbo derivata, tam à Nomine quam à Verbo partem capiens; ut, *Amans.*

Participium partem capit à Nomine, & Verbo.

Participium habet genera, caſus, & declinationem à nomine; tempora & ſignificationem à Verbo; numerum & figuram ab utroque.

Secundum tempus, ſpecies Participiorum ſunt quatuor.

1 Participium *Præſentis*, habet ſignificationem præſentis & definit in *ans, ens, & iens*; ut, *Amans, docens, legens, audiens.*

Species participiorum ſunt quatuor  
1 Præſentis.

Ceterum



But *iens* of *eo* is seldome read in the Nominative case, but *euntis*, &c. in the oblique cases. But its compounds have the Nominative case in *iens*, and the Genitive in *euntis*, except *Ambiens*, *ambientis*.

2 Of the  
Preter tense.

2 A Participle of the Preter tense signifieth the time past, and endeth in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, as, *Amatus*, *lobatus*, *visus*, *sanctus*, *nexus*, *knit*; and one in *uus*, as, *mortuus* dead.

3 Of the  
Future in  
*rus*.

3 A participle of the Future in *Rus* hath the signification of the Future tense of its Infinitive Mood Active; as, *Amatus*, to love, *Docturus*, about to teach.

4 of the  
Future in  
*dus*.

4 A Participle of the Future in *Dus* hath the signification of the Future tense of the Infinitive Passive; as, *Amandus*, to be loved hereafter.

How Participle  
are  
formed.

The Participle of the Present tense is formed of the Preterimperfect tense by changing the last syllable into *us*; as of *Amabam*, *amans*.

The Participle of the Preter tense is formed of the latter Supine, by putting to *s*; as of *Amatu* *amatus*.

The Participle of the Future in *rus*, is formed of the latter Supine by putting to *rus*; as of *Amatu* *amaturus*.

The Participle of the Future in *dus* is formed of the Genitive case of the Participle of the Present tense by changing *tis* into *dus*; as of *Amantis* *amandus*.

These participles are derived of their verbs, besides the common rule; *Pariturus*, about to bring forth, *nasciturus*, to be born, *soniturus*, to sound, *arguiturus*, to reprove, *moriturus*, to dye, *luiturus*, that shall pay or suffer punishment, *nosceiturus*, to know, *ofuturus*, to hate, *futurus*, to be, *orturus*, to arise.

These be like participles, but are derived of Nouns *Tuicatus*, costed, *cogitus*, govned, *personatus*, personated, *larvatus*, masked, &c.

From



Ceterum *iens* ab eo raro legitur in Nominativo, *deuntis*, &c. in obliquis. Composita verò Nominativum habent in *iens*, & Genitivum in *untis*, præter *Ambiens*, *Ambientis*.

2 Participium Præteriti, significat tempus præteritum, & definit in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, ut, *Amatus*, *visus*, *exus*, & unicum in *uus*, ut, *mortuus*.

2 Præteriti.

3 Participium Futuri in *Rus*, habet significationem præsentis Infinitivi sui Activi; ut, *Amaturus*, *docturus*.

3 Futuri in *rus*.

4 Participium Futuri in *Dus*, significationem habet Infinitivi sui Passivi; ut, *Amandus*.

4 Futuri in *dus*.

Participium Præsens formatur ab imperfecto mutando ultimam syllabam in *ns*; ut, ab *Amabam*, *amans*. De modo Participia formandi.

Participium præteriti formatur à posteriori Supino addendo *s*; ut ab *Amatu*, *amatus*.

Participium Futuri in *rus* formatur à posteriori Supino, addendo *rus*; ut, ab *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

Participium Futuri in *Dus*, formatur à Genitivo participii præsentis mutando *tis* in *dus*; ut, ab *Aman-tis*, *amandus*.

Hæc participia præter Analogiam à verbis suis deducuntur; *Pariturus*, *nasciturus*, *soniturus*, *arguiturus*, *moriturus*, *luiturus*, *nosciturus*, *osurus*, *futurus*, *oviturus*.

*Tunicatus*, *togatus*, *personatus*, *laryvatus*, &c. similia participiis sunt, à nominibus verò deducuntur.

Ab

And of what  
Verbs they  
come.

From Actives and Neuters, which have the Supines, come two Participles, one of the Present tense, and another of the Future in *rus*; as of *Amo*, *amans*, *amaturus*, of *Curo*, *currens*, *cursurus*.

But of some Neuters are found also Participles in *us*; as, *Dubitandus to be doubted*, *vigilandus to be watched*, *carendus to be wanted*, *dolendus to be grieved*. And of those which make their Preterperfect tense in manner of Passives, is made also a Participle of the Preter tense; as, *gaudeo gavisus glad*, *iuro iuratus sworn*; so likewise from Impersonals in *tur*; as of *Agatur*, *aratus* **blowed**.

Of Verbs Passives come two Participles, one of the Preter tense, the other of the Future in *us*; as of *Amor* cometh *Amatus*, *amandus*.

Of Verbs Deponents come three Participles, viz. of the Present tense, of the Preter tense, and of the Future in *rus*; as of *Auxilior* **to aid**, cometh *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

To many also belongeth a Participle in *us*, especially to such as govern an Accusative case, as of *Loquor* **to speak**, cometh *loquens*, *loquutus*, *loquutus loquendus*.

Of Verbs Commune come four Participles, as of *Largio* **to bestow**, or **be bestowed**, cometh *largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

There be no Participles extant from Verbs Impersonals, except *Pœnitens* **repenting**, *decens* **becoming**, *libens* & *lubens* **willing**, *pertusus*, **irking**, *pœnitendus to be repented*, *pudens* **shaming**, *pudendus to be ashamed*, *pigendus to be irked*.

Nouns Par-  
ticiples.

Participles are turned into Nouns Participials.

1 When they govern another case than their Verb doth govern; as, *Amans pecunia* **loving of money**.

2 When they are compounded with words, which their

Ab Activis & Neutris quæ habent Supina, veniunt duo participia, unum Præsentis, alteram Futuri in *rus*; ut ab *Amo*, *amans*, *amaturus*, à *Curro*, *currens*, *cursurus*. Et à quibus verbis derivantur.

A quibusdam verò neutris reperiuntur etiam participia in *du*; ut, *Dubitandus*, *vigilandus*, *carendus*, *dolendus*. Et ab iis, quæ præteritum faciunt more passivorum, formatur etiam participium præteriti; ut, *Gaudeo*, *gavissus*, *juro*, *juratus*: sic ab Impersonalibus in *tur*; ut ab *Aratur*, *aratus*.

A Passivis veniunt duo participia Præteriti & Futuri in *du*; ut ab *Amor*, *amatus*, *amandus*.

A Deponentibus veniunt tria participia, Præsentis, Præteriti, & Futuri in *rus*; ut ab *Auxilior*, *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

Multis accedit etiam participium in *du*, præcipuè Accusativum regentibus; ut à *Loquor*, *loquens*, *loquuturus*, *loquutus*, *loquendus*.

A Communibus veniunt quatuor participia; ut à *Largior*, *largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

Ab Impersonalibus nulla exstant participia præter *Pœnitens*, *decens*, *libens*, *lubens*, *peræsus*, *pœnitendus*, *pudens*, *pudendus*, *pigendus*.

Participia degenerant in nomina Participialia.

1. Cùm alium casum quàm suum verbum regunt; ut, *Amans pecunia*.

Nomina Participialia

2. Cùm componatur cum dictionibus, cum quibus

their verbs will not be compounded withal; as, *Infans*,  
an infant, *Indoctus*, unskilfull.

3 When they be compared; as, *Amans*, loving,  
*Amantior*, more loving, *Amantissimus*, very loving.

When they signifie no time; as, *Sapiens*, wise,  
*Sponsa*, a bride.

Participles of the present tense very often become  
Substantives, sometimes of the Masculine gender,  
as, *Oriens*, the East: sometimes of the Feminine; as  
*Consonans*, a Consonant: sometimes of the Neuter;  
as, *Accidens*, an accident: sometimes of the Common  
of three; as, *Appetens*, greedy of.

Participles  
of the Pre-  
sent tense  
be declined  
like *Felix*.  
And of o-  
ther tenses  
like *Bonus*.

Participles of the present tense are declined with  
three Articles; as, *hic, hæc & hoc*, *Amans*, like *Felix*.

Participles of other tenses are declined with three  
terminations; as, *Amatus, tatus*; *Amaturus, urus*,  
*Amandus, dus*, like *Bonus*.

## Chap. 39.

### Of an Adverb.

V.  
An Adverb  
explaineth  
a Verb.

**A**N ADVERB is a part of Speech added to  
other words (but especially to the Verb) to  
declare and perfect their sense and signification.

The significations of Adverbs are many, whose  
variety gathered out of the Circumstances of  
the Verb

Accor-

bus ipsorum verba componi non possunt; ut, *Infans*, *indoctus*.

3 Cùm comparantur; ut, *Amans*, *amantior*, *amantissimus*.

4 Cùm tempus non significant; ut, *Sapiens*, *sponsa*.

Participia præsentis temporis non rarè fiunt Substantiva, modò, masculini generis; ut, *Oriens*: modò scemini; ut, *Consonans*: modò neutrius; ut, *Accidens*: modò communis; ut, *Appetens*.

Participia præsentis variantur tribus Articulis; ut, *hic hæc*, & *hoc*, *amans*, sicut *Felix*.

Participia reliquorum temporum variantur tribus terminationibus; *Amatus*, *ta*, *tum*, *Amaturus*, *ra*, *rum*; *Amandus*, *da*, *dum*, sicut *Bonus*.

Participia  
Præsentis  
variantur  
sicut *Felix*.  
Reliquorum  
verò tempo-  
rum, sicut  
*Bonus*.

### Cap. 39. De Adverbio.

**A**DVERBIUM est pars Orationis adjecta aliis vocibus (sed præcipuè Verbis) ad sensum & significationem earum perficiendum & explanandum.

V.  
Adverbium  
explanat  
Verbum.

Significationes Adverbiorum sunt multæ, quarum varietas ex Verborum circumstantiis colligenda est.

Secundùm

There be  
33 kindes  
of Adverbs.

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

- In a place; as, *hic, here, illic, there.*  
 Place and signification { To a place; as, *huc, thither, illuc, thither*  
 From a place; as, *hinc hence, illinc thence.*  
 By a place; as, *hac this way, illuc that way.*  
 Time; as, *nunc now, tunc then, hodie to day, usque untill*, or *as far as*, is both of time and place.  
 Number; as, *Semel once, bis, twice, ter thrice, iterum again.*  
 Order; as, *Indè after that, denique lastly, demum lastly.*  
 Asking; as, *cur, why? quare, wherefore? unde whence?*  
 Calling; as, *heus, ho, o ho so ho.*  
 Affirming; as, *certè truly, nã truly, professi truly, scilicet yes.*  
 Denying; as, *non not, haud not, minime no.*  
 Swearing; as, *Pol by Apollo, ædipol Apollo's Temple, Hercle, by Hercules.*  
 Exhorting; as, *age go to, sodes, if you dare, sãtã if you will.*  
 Granting; as, *licet it may be so, esto be it so, sit sanè be it indeed so.*  
 Forbidding; as, *nè not, non not.*  
 Flattering; as, *amabè pæthet.*  
 Wishing; as, *unitam would to God, o si O that.*  
 Gathering together; as, *simul together, una in one, pariter alike.*  
 Parting; as, *seorsim severally, gregatim by flocks, bifariam two waies.*  
 Choosing; as, *potius rather, imò yea rather, satius better.*  
 Excluding; as, *Tantum only, modò only, solum only.*  
 Including or denying only; as, *non modò not only, non solum not only, nedum much less.*

Diver-

Species Ad-  
verbiorum  
sunt 23.

Loci  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{In Loco; ut, Hic, illic,} \\ \text{Ad Locum; ut, Huc, illuc,} \\ \text{eaque} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{A Loco; ut, Hinc, illinc.} \\ \text{Per Locum; ut, Hac, illac.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

Temporis; ut, *Nunc, tunc, hodie; usq;* Temporis  
& Loci est.

Numeri; ut, *Semel, bis, ter, iterum.*

Ordinis; ut, *Indè, denique, demum.*

Interrogandi; ut, *Cur? quare? unde?*

Vocandi; ut, *Heu, ô eho.*

Affirmandi; ut, *Certè, na, profectò, scilicet.*

Negandi; ut, *Non, haud, minimè.*

Jurandi; ut, *Pol, adipol, hercie.*

Hortandi; ut, *Agè, sodes, sùltis.*

Concedendi; ut, *Licèt, esto, sit-sane.*

Prohibendi; ut, *Nè, non.*

Adulandi; ut, *Amabò.*

Oprandi; ut, *utinam, ô si.*

Congregandi; ut, *Simul, unà, pariter.*

Segregandi; ut, *Scorsim, gregatim, bifariam.*

Eligendi; ut, *Potius, imò, satius.*

Excludendi; ut, *Tantum, modò, solùm.*

Includendi, sive negatæ solitudinis; ut, *Non mo-  
dò, non solùm, nedum.*

Secundum eorum significationem quædam dicuntur Adverbia

According to their Signification some are called Adverbs of

- Diversity; as, *Aliter* otherwise, *secus* otherwise.  
 Propinquity or nearness; as, *obviam* meeting, *præto* at hand.  
 Intending or Increasing; as, *Valde* very, *nimis* too much, *funditus* utterly, *omnino* altogether.  
 Remitting or diminishing; as, *Vix* scarce, *agere* hardly, *paulatim* by little and little, *pedetentim*, foot by foot.  
 Restraining; as, *Quatenus* as far as, *quoad* as much as concerneth, *in quantum* in as much as.  
 Of a thing not finished; as, *Penè* almost, *sermè* in a manner.  
 Explaining; as, *Putà* suppose, *utpote* as, *nimirum* to wit, *id est* that is, *videlicet* to wit, *quasi* dicat as if one should say.  
 Doubting; as, *Forsan* perhaps, *forsitan*, perhaps so, *fortassis* if it be so.  
 Chance; as, *Fortè* as it falls out, *fortuito* by chance, *fortè fortuna* by fortune.  
 Showing; as, *Ecce* lo, *ecce* behold, *sic* thus, *ita* so.  
 Likeness; as, *Sic* so, *sicut* as, *ceu* as, *tanquam* as, *ita* as.  
 Quantity; as, *Parùm* a little, *minimè* very little, *satis* enough, *abundè* in abundance.  
 Quality; as, *Bene* well, *malè* ill, and such as end in *e*, and come of Adjectives of three terminations; as, *Doctè* learnedly, *Pulcrè* bravely; also such as end in *er*, and come of Adjectives of three Articles; as, *graviter* heavily, *feliciter* happily.  
 Comparing; as, *Tam* as well, *quàm* as, *minus* less, *aque* as well as, *magis* atq; rather than.

Adverbs derived of Adjectives are compared like Adjectives, and differ only in termination; as, *Doctè* learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctissime* most learnedly, *fortiter* strongly, *fortius* more strongly, *fortissime* most strongly. Like-



† Diverſificatis; ut, *Aliter, ſecus.*

Propinquitatis; ut, *Obviam, præſb.*

Intendendi; ut, *Valdè, nimis, funditus, omnino.*

Remittendi; ut, *Vix, ægre, paulatim, pederentim.*

Reſtringendi; ut, *Quateus, quoad, inquantum.*

Rei non peractæ; ut, *Penè, ſerme.*

Explanandi; ut, *Putà, utpote, nimirum, i. e. (id eſt) viz. (videlicet) q. d. (quæſi dicat.)*

Dubitandi; ut, *Forſan, forſitæ, fortæſſis.*

Eventus; ut, *Fortè, fortuitò, ſorte fortunâ.*

Demonſtrandi; ut, *Ex, ecce, ſic, ità.*

Similitudinis; ut, *Sic, ſicut, ceu, tanquam, velut.*

Quantitatis; ut, *Parum, minimè, ſatis, abunde.*

Qualitatis; ut, *Bene, male, & quæ in e definiunt, ab Adjectivis trium terminationum; ut, Docte, pulcre: item in er ab Adjectivis trium Articulorum; ut, Graviter, feliciter.*

Comparandi; ut, *Tam, quam, minùs, æque, magis atque.*

Adverbia ab Adjectiva derivata more Adjectivorum comparantur; ſed ſolâ terminatione differunt; ut, *doctè, doctius, doctiſſimè; fortiter, fortius, fortiſſime.*

Likewise *Bene* well, *melius* better, *optime* very well : *Sape* often, *sapius* more often, *sapissime* very often : *Nuper* lately, *nuperrime* very lately, with many others.

Sometimes Adjectives of the Neuter Gender take upon them the nature of Adverbs, in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Recentis* for *recenter* newly, *Torvum* for *to: vè* frowningly.

### Chap. 40. Of a Conjunction.

VI.  
A Conjunction conjoyneth words and sentences. Its kinds according to signification are 17.

**A** CONJUNCTION is a part of Speech which firstly joyneth words and sentences together.

- According to their signification some be
- 1. Copulatives, which couple both the sense and the words; as, *Et* and, *que* and, *nec* nor.
  - 2. Suspensives, which stay the speech, or make another thing to be expected; as, *Cum* both, *tum* both, & both, *vel* either, *nec* neither, being set together.
  - 3. Disjunctives, which sever the sense and couple the words; as, *Aut* or, *sive* or, *vel* or.
  - 4. Causals, which give the reason of the former sentence; as, *Nam* for, *enim* for, *quia* because.
  - 5. Discretives, which make a difference; as, *Sed* but, *verò* but, *at* but.
  - 6. Conditionals, which imply a condition; as, *Si* if *sin* but if, *nisi* except, *dum* so that.
  - 7. Exceptives, which except some thing; as, *Ni* unless, *nisi* except, *quin* but, *alioquin* otherwise.
  - 8. Interrogatives, which ask a question; as, *Nè* whether, *an* whether, *utrum* whether.
  - 9. Dubitatives, which propound a doubt; as, *An* whether or no, *num* whether or no, *numquid* what.
  - 10. Rationals, or Illatives, which infer the conclusion

Similiter & Bene, melius, optime : sape, sapius, sapissimè : nuper, nuperrimè, cum paucis aliis.

Aliquando Neutra Adjectiva induunt formam Adverbiorum, ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, *Recens* pro *recenter* : *Torvum* pro *torvè*.

### Cap. 40. De Conjunctione.

**C**ONJUNCTIO est pars Orationis, quæ voces & sententias apertè connectit.

#### VI.

Conjunctio voces & sententias conjungit. Species ejus quoad significationem sunt 17

Quod potestare sive significatione, Conjunctionū alia sunt

1. Copulativæ, quæ & sensum & verba copulant; ut, *Et, que, nec*.

2. Suspensivæ, quæ orationem suspendunt, sive aliud expectari faciunt; ut, *Cum, tum, &, vel, nec, geminaræ*.

3. Disjunctivæ, quæ sensum disjungunt, verba vero copulant; ut, *Aut, sive, vel*.

4. Causales, quæ causam reddunt superioris sententiæ; ut, *Nam, enim, quia*.

5. Discretivæ, quæ discretionem faciunt; ut, *Sed, verò, at, ast*.

6. Conditionales, quæ conditionem implicant; ut, *Si, sin, nisi, dum*.

7. Exceptivæ, quæ aliquid excipiunt; ut, *Ni, nisi, quin, alioquin*.

8. Interrogativæ, quæ interrogant; ut, *Nè, an, utrum*.

9. Dubitativæ, quæ dubitant; ut, *An, num, numquid*.

10. Rationales, sive Illativæ, quæ ex ratione proposita

According to their signification some be

sion from the reason set down; as, *Ergò therefore, idèd therefore, itaque therefore.*

Continuatives, which continue the members of a speech in order; as, *deinde after, porro further more, proinde thereupon, insuper moreover.*

Concessives or Adversatives, which grant somewhat which the following sentence may oppose; as, *Et si although, quanquam although, licet though, tametsi although, quamvis although.*

Redditives to the same, which being referred to their Concessives, make a sentence diverse from the former; as, *tamen yet, attamen but yet, verum but, veruntamen yet notwithstanding.*

Electives, which shew the former member of the sentence to be preferred; as, *Quam as, ac as, atque as,*

Diminutives, which lessen the sense; as, *saltem at least, vel eben.*

Expletives or Completives, which fill up a sentence for ornaments sake; as, *Quidem Indèd, autem and, scilicet forsooth, enim vero truly.*

Conjunctions adverbial, or Adverbs conjunctive, which with a very little difference are discerned from Adverbs; as, *Quando when, op foring that, proinde therefore, op then.*

According to its Order four,

According to their Order some be

Prepositives, which are set in the beginning of sentences; as, *nam for, quare wherefore, at but*

Subjunctives, or Postpositives, which have the second, third, or fourth place in a clause; as, *Quidem Indèd, quoque also, verò indèd, enim for.*

Commons, which may indifferently be set before or after; as, *Ergò therefore, igitur therefore, itaque therefore, sed but.*

En-

posita conclusionem inferunt; ut, *Ergò, ideo, itaque.*

Continuativa, quæ membra orationis ordine continuant, ut, *Deinde, porro, proinde, insuper.*

Concessivæ, sive Adversativæ, quæ aliquid concedunt, cui posterior sententia adverletur; ut, *Et si, quamquam, licet, tametsi, quamvis.*

Redditivæ earundem, quæ ad Concessivas relatæ diversam sententiam superiorem reddunt; ut, *Tamen, attamen, veruntamen.*

Electivæ, quæ ostendunt præcedens membrum sententiæ præferri; ut, *Quam, ac, atque.*

Diminutivæ, quæ diminuunt sensum; ut, *Saltem, vel.*

Expletivæ, vel Completivæ, quæ ornatus gratiæ sententiam complent; ut, *Quidem, autem, scilicet, enim vero.*

Conjunctiones adverbiales, vel adverbia conjunctiva, quæ tenui discrimine ab adverbis discernuntur; ut, *Quando, proinde.*

Præpositivæ, quæ in sententiarum exordio ponuntur; ut, *Nam, quare, at.*

Quoad Ordinem quatuor.

Subjunctivæ, sive postpositivæ, quæ secundum, tertium, vel quartum locum in clausula occupant; ut, *Quidem, quoque, verò, enim.*

Communes, quæ indifferenter & præponi & post poni possunt; ut, *Ergò, igitur, itaque, sed.*

Enditricals, or Inclinations, which are annexed to the former word, and incline or turn back their accent into the last syllable of it; as, *Que, nē, ve, dum, sis, nam.*

### Chap. 41. Of a Preposition.

#### VII.

A Preposition is set before other words.

There be 54 Prepositions, some of which are 1 Separable.

A PREPOSITION is a part of Speech which is set before other words, either 1 Apposition; as, *Ad scholam, to the School.* in 2 Composition; as, *Advenio, to come to.*

Prepositions are either 1 Separable, Or, 2 Inseparable.

Separable Prepositions are used both in and out of Composition; of whose regiment we shall treat, *Lib. 3. Chap. 8.*

For thirty one of these govern an Accusative case, viz.

<i>Ad</i> to	<i>Erga</i> towards	<i>Præter</i> besides
<i>Apud</i> at	<i>Extra</i> without	<i>prope</i> nigh (of
<i>Adversus</i> } against	<i>Infra</i> below	<i>Propter</i> because
<i>Adversum</i> }	<i>Inter</i> between	<i>Secundum</i> ac-
<i>Ante</i> before	<i>Intra</i> within	cording to
<i>Cis</i> } on this	<i>Juxta</i> by	<i>Secus</i> by
<i>Citra</i> } side	<i>Ob</i> for	<i>Supra</i> above
<i>Circum</i> } about	<i>Penes</i> in the power	<i>Trans</i> beyond
<i>Circa</i> }	<i>Per</i> by	<i>Versus</i> tes
<i>Circiter</i> }	<i>Ponē</i> behind	wards
<i>Contra</i> against	<i>Post</i> after	<i>Ultra</i> beyond

Which some have comprised in these four Verses.  
*Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,*  
*Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra,*  
*ultra,*

Encliticæ sive Inclinativæ, quæ affixæ præcedenti voci, accentum suum in ejus ultimam syllabam inclinant; ut, *Que, nē, ve, dum, &c.* nam.

## Cap. 41. De Prepositione.

**P**RÆPOSITIO est pars Orationis quæ aliis vocibus præponitur,

vel in { Appositione; ut, *Ad Scholam.*  
Compositione; ut, *Advenio.*

Præpositiones sunt vel { <sup>1</sup> Separabiles,  
Sive  
<sup>2</sup> Inseparabiles,

<sup>1</sup> Separabiles sunt, quæ & in & extra Compositionem usurpantur; de quarum regimine dicemus, Lib. 3. Cap. 8.

Ex his enim Triginta una Accusativum regunt, viz.

<i>Ad</i>	<i>Erga</i>	<i>Frater</i>
<i>Apud</i>	<i>Extra</i>	<i>Prope</i>
{ <i>Adversus</i>	<i>Infra</i>	<i>Propter</i>
{ <i>Adversum</i>	<i>Inter</i>	<i>Secundum</i>
<i>Ante</i>	<i>Intra</i>	<i>Secus</i>
{ <i>Cis</i>	<i>Juxta</i>	<i>Supra</i>
{ <i>Citra</i>	<i>Ob.</i>	<i>Trans</i>
{ <i>Circum</i>	<i>Penès</i>	<i>Versus</i>
{ <i>Circa</i>	<i>Per</i>	<i>Ultra</i>
{ <i>Circiter</i>	<i>Ponè</i>	
<i>Contra</i>	<i>Post</i>	

Quas aliqui quatuor versibus complectantur.

*Ad, penès, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, intra,*  
*Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra,*  
*ultra,*

VII.  
Præpositio  
aliis vocibus  
præponitur.  
Præpositio-  
nes sunt 34.  
Quarum 2  
in sunt  
& Separabi-  
les.



*ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum*  
*Per, circum, circa, contra, iuxta, inter, & intra.*

And twelve govern an Ablative case, viz *A, ab, abs*  
*from, absque without, coram before, cum with, de, ex*  
*of, præ before, pro for, sine without.*

Five govern both these cases; viz *clam* *privily*,  
*in in, sub & subter under, super above;* only, *tenu*,  
*up to*, will have an Ablative case singular, and Geni-  
 tive plural.

2 Others  
 Inseparable.

*Inseparable* Prepositions are such as are never found  
 without Composition, viz.

<i>Am</i>	as,	<i>Ambio</i> to go about.
<i>Di</i>		<i>Diduco</i> to bring unto sundry parts.
<i>Dis</i>		<i>Distrabo</i> to distract.
<i>Re</i>		<i>Recipio</i> to receive.
<i>Se</i>		<i>Sepono</i> to set aside.
<i>Con</i>		<i>Convivo</i> to live together.
<i>Ve</i>		<i>Vesanus</i> outrageous.

The signification of Prepositions is not so much  
 to be learned by rules, as by daily use of reading and  
 writing.

Some Prepositions are wont to be set after their  
 cases; viz. *Cum*, as, *quibuscum* *with whom*, *tenu*, as,  
*pube tenu* *up to the privy parts*, *versus*, as, *Londinum*  
*versus towards* London; to which *usque* may be ad-  
 ded, as *ad Orientem usque*, as far as the East.

Prepositions, when they be put without a case be-  
 come Adverbs; as, *Coram* *laudare*, *clam* *vituperare*,  
*to praise one in presence*, and *disparis* *privily*.

Some Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, ac-  
 cording to their several significations, are judged  
 sometimes Prepositions, sometimes Adverbs, and some-  
 times Conjunctions.

Some Prepositions do make Adjectives of the Com-  
 parative and Superlative degree, as in chap. 17. l. 2.

Chap.



*ultra, post, prater, propter, prope, pone, secundum,  
Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, & intra.*  
Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum; *A, ab, abs, abs-*  
*que, coram, cum, de, ex, ex, prae, pro, sine.*

Quinque serviunt utrique casui, *Clam, in, sub, sub-*  
*ter, super;* unicum *tenus* gaudet Ablativo singulari, &  
Genitivo plurali.

2. *Inseparabiles* sunt, quæ nunquam extra compo- 2. *Alia Inse-*  
sitionem inveniuntur. *parabiles.*

<i>Am</i>	}	( <i>Ambio.</i>	
<i>Di</i>			<i>Diduco</i>
<i>Dis</i>			<i>Disgraho</i>
<i>Re</i>			<i>Resipio</i>
<i>Se</i>			<i>Sepono</i>
<i>Con</i>	}	<i>Convivis</i>	
<i>Ve</i>			<i>Vesanus.</i>

Præpositionum significatio non tam regulis, quàm  
assiduo legendi ac scribendi usu discenda est.

Quædam Præpositiones suis casibus postponi so-  
lent; viz. *Cum*, ut *quibuscum*; *tenus*, ut, *pube tenus*;  
*versus*, ut, *Londinum versus*: quibus addi potest *usque*;  
ut, *ad Orientem usque*.

Præpositiones cum sine casu ponuntur sunt *Ad-*  
*verbia*, ut, *Coram laudare, & clam vituperare.*

Quædam Adverbiorum, Conjunctionum, & Præ-  
positionum, pro variâ eorum significatione, modò  
Adverbia, modò Conjunctiones, modò Præpositio-  
nes censeri possunt.

Quædam Præpositiones procreant Adjectiva Com-  
parativi & Superlativi gradus, ut videre est, *Cap. 17.*  
*Lib. 2.*

Cap.

Chap. 42.  
Of an Interjection.

**A**N Interjection is a part of Speech interposed among other, which signifieth a passion of the minde suddenly breaking forth.

There be so many Interjections then, as there are motions of a troubled minde, viz. of  
 Rejoycing; as, *Evax hey hysbe, vah hohw, io d fine.*  
 Sorrowing; as, *Hew alas, hei: hoi welladay, & oh ah.*  
 Dreading; as, *Atat out alas.*  
 Marvelling; as, *Papa d strange.*  
 Disdaining; as, *Hem oh, vah away with it.*  
 Shunning; as, *Apagc aboutt, apagite be gone.*  
 Calling; as, *Eho ho, ho, io se ho.*  
 Praising; as, *Euge well done, eja a ha.*  
 Scorning; as, *Hui whw.*  
 Exclaiming; as, *Prob d.*  
 Cursing; as, *Malum with a mischief, va malum, wo with a mischief.*  
 Disliking; as, *Phy out upon it.*  
 Threatning; as, *Va wo.*  
 Laughing; as, *Ha, ha, he.*  
 Silence; as, *Au't whwsh, pax peace.*

Sometimes Nouns, Verbs, and other words are put into a Speech in manner of Interjections; as, *infandum not to be spoken, Amabè of all loves, or as thou lovest me, Malum with a mischief, mirabile dictu wonderful to be said, &c.*

Cap. 43.  
De Interjectione.

**I**nterjectio est pars Orationis quæ subito prorumpentem animi affectum demonstrat.

Tot igitur sunt Interjectiones, quot sunt animi perturbati motus, viz.

Exultantis; ut, *Evax, vah, io.*

Dolentis; ut, *Heu, hoi, bei, oh.*

Timentis; ut, *Atat.*

Admirantis; ut, *Pape.*

Indignantis; ut, *bem, vah.*

Vitantis; ut, *Apage, apagise.*

Vocantis; ut, *Eho, be, io.*

Laudantis; ut, *Euge, eja.*

Deridentis; ut, *Hui.*

Exclamantis; ut, *Oh, prob.*

Imprecantis; ut, *Malum, va malum.*

Fastidientis; ut, *Phy.*

Minantis; ut, *Væ.*

Ridentis; ut, *Ha, ha, be.*

Silentium orationi injungentis; ut, *Au' sit, pax.*

Aliquando Nomina, Verba, & alix voces interjiciuntur, more Interjectionum; ut, *Infandum, amabò, malum, mirabile dictum, &c.*



## LIB. III.

## OF SYNTAX.

Syntax  
teacheth the  
due joyning  
of words  
By Rules.

**S**YNTAX, or Construction, is the third part of Grammar, which teacheth the due joyning of words together.

And that is the due joyning of words which the most approved among the antients have used both in writing and speaking.

There be two parts of Syntax,	{ Concordance, and Government,	Chap. 1.  Chap. 2.
----------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------

Chap. I.  
*Of Concordance.*

1 Of Con-  
cordance.

**C**oncordance is the construction of words according to their agreement in some of the things that belong unto them.

There be three Concords	{	<i>The first</i> between the Nominative case and the Verb. Sect. I.
		<i>The second</i> between the Substantive and the Adjective. Sect. II.
		<i>The third</i> between the Antecedent and the Relative. Sect. III.

To which may be added the rules	{	Of the case of the Relative. Sect. IV.
		Of the word that asketh, and the word that answereth to the question. Sect. V.

Sect.

## LIB. III.

## DE SYNTAXI.

**S**YNTAXIS, five Constructio, est tertia pars Grammatices, quæ debitam partium Orationis inter se Compositionem docet.

Ea vero est debita Compositio, quâ veterum probatissimi, tum in scribendo, tum in loquendo sunt usi.

Syntaxis debita partium Orationis Compositio nem docet Par Regulas.

Syntaxeos partes	} Concordantia.	Cap. 1.
dux sunt		& Regimen

Cap. I  
De Concordantiâ.

**C**oncordantia est dictionum constructio secundum earum in accidentibus quibusdam convenientiam.

I Concordantiz.

Sunt autem Concordantiæ tres	}	Prima inter Nominativum & Verbum. Sect. I.
		Secunda inter Substantivum & Adjectivum. Sect. II.
		Tertia inter Antecedens & Relativum. Sect. III.

Quibus adjungi possunt Regulæ	}	De casu Relativi. Sect. IV.
		De Interrogativo & Redditivo. Sect. V.

Sect.

## §. I. The Rule of the first Concord.

**A** Verb Personal agreeth with its Nominative case in Number and Person: as,  
*The Master readeth, and ye neglect.*  
*Whilest the Cat sleepeth, the Mice dance.*

- 1 *Obs.* The Nominative case of the first or second person is very seldome set down; as,  
 Without God (*we*) can do nothing.
- 1 *Exc.* Unless it be for differencing sake, i. e. when we signifie several employments; as,  
*thou playest, I ply my book.*
- 2 *Exc.* Or for Emphasis sake, i. e. when we mean more than we speak expressly; as,  
*Thou art our Patron, thou art our Father, if thou forsakest us, we are undone.*
- 2 *Obs.* The Verb Substantive is very often understood; as, *There (is) no safety in war.*  
*Such a Master, such a Man.*
- 3 *Obs.* Oft times other Verbs (also) are understood; as, (\* *To pick out*) *the Ravens eyes.*  
*The Sow († will return) to the mire.*

## §. II. The Rule of the second Concord.

**T**He Adjective agreeth with its Substantive in case, gender, and number; as,  
*True faith is a rare bird in the earth, and very like to a black Swan.*

- An hasty birch bringeth forth blinde wheels.*
- 1 *Obs.* An Adjective put like a Substantive doth supply the place of a Substantive, as,  
*A learned poor man is better than an unlearned rich man.*  
*All evil things are to be avoided.*  
*A good man is a common good.*

## §. I. Regula prima Concordantia.

L

**V**erbum Personale cohæret cum Nominativo “  
 Numero & personâ; ut,  
*Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis.*  
*Dam felis dormit, saluunt mures.*

1 *Obs.* Nominativus primæ vel secundæ personæ rarissime exprimitur; ut,

*Absque Deo nihil possumus.*

1 *Exc.* Nisi causâ discretionis, viz. cum diversa studia significamus.

*Tu ludis, ego studeo.*

2 *Exc.* Aut Emphasis gratiâ; viz. cum plus significamus, quàm expressâ dicimus; ut,

*Tu es Patronus, tu Pater; si deseris tu, perimus.*

2 *Obs.* Verbum Substantivum sæpissime subauditur, ut, *Nulla salus bello.* (\* est)

*Qualis Dominus, talis Servus.*

3 *Obs.* Sæpe reticentur & alia verba; ut,

*Corvici oculum.* (\* configere)

*Sus ad lutum.* († redibit)

## §. II. Regula secunda Concordantia.

II

**A**djectivum cum Substantivo, genere, numero “  
 & casu consentit; ut,  
*Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.*  
*Vera fides.*

*Canis festinans cæcos parit catulos.*

1 *Obs.* Adjectivum Substantivè positum supplet locum Substantivi; ut,

*Doctus pauper indocto divite præstantior est.*

*Omnia mala sunt fugienda.*

*Vir bonus est commune bonum.*

O

§. III.

## III.

## §. III. The Rule of the third Concord.

§ The third.

**T**He Relative (*qui*) agreeth with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

*The man is wise that speaketh few words.*

*The first hour that gave life, took from it.*

*The burden is made light, which is well born.*

N.B. The Antecedent (most commonly) is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The Nominative case, the Substantive, and the Antecedent be called *Supposites*, because in Concordance they be as it were put under the Verb, Adjective, and Relative (which also by some are called *Apposites*) and bear them up: hence

1 *Obs.* In speeches which belong only to men, the *Supposite* is often understood; as,

*Thus (men) say commonly.*

*Good (boyes) learn diligently.*

*A good (woman) come of good parents.*

*(He) that maketh too much haste, dispatcheth too late.*

*(Things) which hurt us, reach us.*

2 *Obs.* Sometimes a whole clause, a member of a sentence, a Verb of the Infinitive mood, an Adverb, with a Genitive case, or a word put for it self, do supply the place of suppositives; as,

*To have faithfully learned the Liberal Arts, doth qualifie mens manners.*

*To rise early is very wholesome.*

*Part of the Ensigns are burnt.*

*I came in season, which is the chiefeft of all things.*

*Farewel, being often said, I again spake many words.*

3 *Obs.*



## §. III. Regula tertia Concordantia.

**R**elativum (*qui*) cum Antecedente concordat III.  
 genere, numero, & personâ; ut, 3 Tertia.

*Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.*

*Prima, quæ vitam dedit, hora carpsit.*

*Leve fit, quod bene fertur sensui.*

N. B. *Antecedens* (ferè) est dictio quæ Relativum antecedit, & à Relativo refertur.

Nominativus, Substantivum, & Antecedens dicuntur *Supposita*, quia Verbo, Adjectivo & Relativo (quæ etiam à quibusdam *Apposita* vocantur) in Concordantia quasi supponuntur atque ea sustentant; hinc.

1 *Obs.* In orationibus quæ ad homines tantum pertinent Suppositum sæpe subauditur; ut,

*Sic vulgò dicunt.*

*Boni discunt sedant.*

*Bona bonis prognata.*

*Qui nimium properat, serius absolvit.*

*Quæ nocent, docent.*

2 *Obs.* Aliquando oratio, membrum orationis, verbum Infiniti modi, Adverbium cum Genitivo, aut dictio pro se posita, supplent locum Suppositorum; ut;

*Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores.*

*Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.*

*Partim signorum sunt combusta.*

*In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum.*

*Sæpe, vale, dicto, rursus sum multa loquutus.*

3 *Ob.* The Verb, Adjective or Relative, sometimes agree with the Supposite in sense rather than words; as,

*A company rush. Both are deluded, or mocked.*

*An armed Nation fight.*

*Where is that rogue that hath undone me?*

*I also am undone too, which is dearer to me.*

4 *Obs.* A Verb, Adjective or Relative set between two suppositives of diverse numbers or genders, may agree with either of them; as,

*The falling out of lovers is the renewing of love.*

*Poverty seemeth a great burthen.*

*A living creature full of reason, whom we call a man.*

*A bird which is called a Sparrow.*

*The City Lutetia which we call Paris.*

5 *Obs.* Many Suppositives Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative between them, will have a Verb, Adjective, or a Relative plural, and these will agree with the more worthy Supposite; as,

*I and thou, who ply our books diligently, are in safety.*

*Thou and he, who sit so negligent, take heed you be not whipt.*

6 *Obs.* The Relative and the Antecedent agree also in case, if they be joyned to the same Verb; as,

*What City I build, it is yours.*

*That what Comedies he made might please the people.*

N.B. The worthinesse of a Supposite  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ Gender,} \\ \text{or,} \\ 2 \text{ Person.} \end{array} \right.$  is considered according to its

1 The First Person is more worthy than the Second, or Third; and the Second more worthy than the third.

2 The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, or Neuter; and the Feminine is more worthy than the Neuter.

*Except.* But in things not apparent to have life, the Neuter Gender is more worthy; as,

The

3 *Obs.* Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum quandoque cum Supposito sensu magis quàm voce convenit; ut,

*Turbantur. uterque deluduntur.*

*Gens armati pugnant.*

*Ubi illic scelus est qui me perdidit?*

*Ego etiam unà pereō, quod mihi est carius.*

4 *Obs.* Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum inter duo supposita diversorum numerorum, aut generum collocatum, cum alterutro convenire potest; ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris, redintegratio est.*

*Paupertas visum est magnum onus.*

*Animal plenum rationis, quam vocamus hominem.*

*Avis (qui vel) quæ passer appellatur.*

*Urbs Læticia (quam vel) quos Parisios dicimus.*

5 *Obs.* Plura Supposita singularia per Conjunctionem copulata sæpe Verbum, vel Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale exigunt, atque hæc cum Supposito digniore quadrabunt; ut,

*Ego & tu, qui studemus sedulè, sumus in tuto.*

*Tu atque ille, qui sedetis tam supini, cavete ne vapuletis.*

6 *Obs.* Relativum & antecedens etiam in casu conveniunt, si eidem verbo jungantur; ut,

*Urbem, quam statuo, vestra est.*

*Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas.*

N.B. Suppositi dignitas  
spectatur secundum

1 Genus,  
aut,  
2 Personam.

1 Dignior enim est persona prima quàm secunda, aut tertia, & dignior secunda quàm tertia.

2 Dignius etiam est masculinum genus quàm femininum, aut neutrum, & dignius tæmininum quàm neutrum.

*Exc.* At in rebus inanimatis neutrum genus adhibetur tanquam dignius; ut,

*The Bows and the Arrows are good,  
Thy rod and thy staff (these) have comforted me,  
6 Qbs. When the Verb or Adjective answereth to  
many Suppositives, it agreeth expressly with that which  
is nearest to it, and with the rest by supplying it; as,  
Thou lyeſt where I (lye) thou ſuppeſt when we (ſup.)  
The Husband and the Wife is angry.*

*Exc. Yet when there is a comparison or likeness,  
the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Supposite,  
which is further from it; as,*

*I write better than thou (writeſt.)*

*Gods Law is ſweet, as hony is (ſweet.)*

*7 Obs. A Pronoun Primitive ſeems to be included  
or underſtood in a Poſſeſſive, and therefore the Rela-  
tive or adjective do oft agree with ſuch a primitive; as  
It concerneth not me, who am the eldeſt.*

*Seeing no body readeth my writings, fearing to re-  
cite them publickly.*

#### §. IV. Rule, Concerning the caſe of the Relative.

To which  
add.

4 The caſe  
of the Re-  
lative.

**W**hen there cometh no Nominative caſe<sup>cc</sup>  
between the Relative and the Verb, the<sup>cc</sup>  
Relative ſhall be the Nominative caſe to the Verb; <sup>cc</sup>  
as,

*He that bewareth not afore, ſhall be ſorry after-  
ward. That which (is) rare, (is) dear,  
He may eaſily finde a ſtick, who deſires to bear a  
dog.*

But if there do come a Nominative caſe between<sup>cc</sup>  
the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be<sup>cc</sup>  
governed of the Verb, or of ſome other word in the<sup>cc</sup>  
ſame ſentence; as,

*Oft-times thou maiſt conquer by patience, whom,  
thou canſt not conquer by force.*

*Arcus & calami sunt bona.*

*Virga tua & baculus tuus (ipsa) me consolata sunt.*

6 *Obs.* Cùm Verbum vel Adjectivum pluribus Suppositis respondet, cum viciniore convenit expressè, cum reliquis per Supplementam; ut,

*Cubas ubi ego, cœnas, quando nos.*

*Maritus & uxor est irata.*

*Exc.* Attamen quando est comparatio vel similitudo, Verbum vel Adjectivum convenit cum remotiore Supposito; ut,

*Ego meliùs, quàm tu, scribo.*

*Divina lex, sicut mel, dulcis est.*

7 *Obs.* Pronomen Primitivum includi vel subintelligi in Possessivo videtur, ideoque Relativum aut Adjectivum cum tali Primitivo sæpe concordant; ut,

*Nil meâ refert, qui sum natu maximus,*

*Scripta cùm mea nemo legat, vulgò recitare timen-*  
*tis.*

#### §. IV. Regula, De casu Relativi.

**Q**uoties nullus Nominativus interferitur inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus: ut, Quibus addas,

*Qui antè non cavet, post dolebit.*

*Quod rarum charum,*

*Facile inveniat baculum qui cupit cedere canem.*

4 De casu Relativi.

At si Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interponatur, Relativum regetur à Verbo, aut ab alia dictione in eadem oratione; ut,

*Sæpe vincas patientiâ, quem non vincas impetu.*

If (thou) canst not do *what* (thou) *wouldest*; will  
that, *which* (thou) *mayest* do.

*whose shadow* I reverence.

*Like to whom* I have seen.

1 *Obs.* As the Relative may be the Nominative  
case to the Verb, so it may be the Substantive in an  
Adjective; as,

Hee that rejoyceth at other mens evils, is twice  
*wretched*.

Happy is hee, *whom* other mens harms make wa-  
*ry*.

2 *Obs.* Nouns Interrogatives and Indefinites do  
follow the Rule of the Relative, which evermore go  
before the Verb, like as the Relative doth; as,

*What an one was he?* He is *such an one as* I never  
*saw*.

## V.

## §. V. The Rule of the Question and Answer.

§ Of the  
Question  
and Ans.

“**W**Hen a question is asked, the answer  
must bee made by the same case, and  
“*tenſe*, that the question is asked by; as,

What *do ye?* *We ply* our books.

Who *is rich?* He *that desireth* nothing. Who *is*  
*poor?* The *covetous man*. What *is now* a doing  
in *England?* They *consult* about *Religion*.

1 *Obs.* This rule faileth when the diverse nature of  
words require diverse cases; *viz.*

1 When a question is made by *Cujus, ja, jum, is,*  
*whose cattle are these?* *Egon's*.

2 Or by a word that may govern diverse cases; as,  
*Is he accused of theft?* or *of murder?* *Of both.*  
*What cost it?* *A penny*.

3 When one may answer by a possessive; as,  
*whose book is this?* *Mine*.  
*whose house is this?* *My Fathers*.

Chap.

Si non potes *quod vis*, id velis *quod possis*.  
*Cujus umbram veneror.*  
*Cui similem non vidi.*

1 *Obs.* Sicuti Relativum Verbo Nominativus, ita  
 Adjectivo Substantivum fieri potest; ut,

*Qui malis gaudet alienis bis miser est.*

*Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.*

2 *Obs.* Nomina Interrogativa & Indefinita regulam Relativi sequuntur, quæ semper præcedunt verbum sicuti Relativum; ut,

*Qualis erat? Talis erat qualem nunquam vidi.*

### §. V. Regula de Interrogativo, & ejus Redditivo.

V.

“**I**nterrogativum & ejus Redditivum ejusdem casus, & temporis erunt; i. e. quo casu vel tempore quæritur; in eodem respondebitur; ut,

§ De Interrogativo & Reddit.

*Quid agitis? Studemus.*

*Quis dives? Qui nil cupiat. Quis pauper? Avarus.*

*Quid rerum nunc geritur in Anglia?*

*Consultitur de Religione.*

1 *Obs.* Fallit hæc regula, quoties diversa vocum natura diversos casus exigit; viz.

1 Quoties Interrogatio fit per *Cujus, quæ, quid*; ut,  
*Cujus pecus? Agonis.*

2 Aut per dictionem varix Syntaxeos; ut,  
*Furtive accusatur, an homicidii? Utroque, vel de Quanti consistit? Denario.* (utroque.)

3 Quoties per possessivum respondere licet; ut;  
*Cujus est hic codex? Meus.*

*Cujus est hæc domus? Paterna.*

Cap.



## Chap. 2.

## Of the Government of Nouns.

¶ Of Con-  
struction.

**G**overnment is the Construction of words, according to which every foregoing word governeth a certain case, or mood, of the word which followeth it.

Government is	Of Nouns	{ Substantives, Chap. 2.
		{ Adjectives, Chap. 3.
	Of Pronouns,	Chap. 4.
	Of Verbs,	Chap. 5.
	Of Participles,	Chap. 6.
	Of Adverbs,	Chap. 7.
	Of Conjunctions,	Chap. 8.
	Of Prepositions,	Chap. 9.
	Of Interjections,	Chap. 10.

For all parts of Speech govern cases except a Conjunction, which yet will have certain moods and tenses.

¶ Of Nouns.

Nouns govern four cases :	{ A Genitive,	Sect. VII.
	{ A Dative,	Sect. VIII.
	{ An Accusative,	Sect. IX.
	{ An Ablative,	Sect. X.

VI

## §. VI. Rule, Of Nouns Substantives.

¶ Substan-  
tives.

„ Substantives govern a Genitive case.

„ For when two Substantives come together be-  
„ tokening diverse things, the latter of them shall be  
„ the Genitive case; as,

*The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.*  
*Gods Word remaineth for ever.*

¶ Obs. But if two or more Substantives belong to  
one thing, they shall be put in the same case; as,

My



## Cap. 2.

## De Regimine Nominum.

**R**egimen est constructio dictionum, secundum quam præcedens quæque dictio regit certum casum, vel modum sequentis

2 Regimenis.

Est autem Re- gimen	{	Nominum	{	Substantivorum, Cap. 2.
			{	Adjectivorum, Cap. 3.
		Pronominum,		Cap. 4.
		Verborum,		Cap. 5.
		Participiorum,		Cap. 6.
		Adverbiorum,		Cap. 7.
		Conjunctionum,		Cap. 8.
		Præpositionum,		Cap. 9.
		Interjectionum,		Cap. 10.

Omnes enim partes orationis regunt casus, exceptâ Conjunctione, quæ tamen certos modos & tempora postulat.

Nomina regunt quatuor casus : viz.	{	Genitivum,	Sect. VII.	1 Nominum
		Dativum,	Sect. VIII.	
		Accusativum,	Sect. IX.	
		Ablativum,	Sect. X.	

## §. VI. Regula, De Nominibus Substantivis.

VI.

11 Substantiva Genitivum regunt.

11 Quum enim duo Substantiva diversæ significationis concurrant, posterius in Genitivo ponitur ;

1 Substantivorum.

11 ut

*Timor Domini est initium sapientiæ.*

*Verbum Dei manet in æternum.*

1 Obs. Sin duo vel plura Substantiva sunt ejusdem rei, in eodem casu ponentur ; ut,

*Pater*

*My Father being a man, loveth me a childe.*

*Mark Tully Cicero the Prince of Orators.*

2 *Obs.* The Genitive case of the owner is often changed into an Adjective Possessive; as,

*My Fathers house.*

*My Masters Son.*

3 *Obs.* The former Substantive is sometime understood by an *Ellipsis* or defect of a word; as,

To \* *St. Marie's.*

\* *Church.*

I saw this mans † *Byrrhia.*

† *Servant.*

The \* third of the *Kalends,*

\* *Daie.*

4 *Obs.* An Adjective of the Neuter gender, being put without a Substantive, will have a Genitive case; as,

*As much money as any man keeps in his chest, so much credit he hath.*

*We do not see that (end) of the wallet which is on the back.*

So also will others after the Greek fashion; as,

*Black wooll will take no dye.*

*Sneaking dogs clap the tail under the belly.*

5 *Obs.* Words importing any quality to the praise or dispraise of a thing, coming after a Noun or Verb Substantive, shall be put in the Ablative or Genitive case; as,

*A childe of an ingenuous look, and an ingenuous blush.*

*Every basest fellow is of a most lavish tongue.*

6 *Obs.* *Opus* and *usus* when they be Latine for need will have an Ablative case; as,

*What need words.*

*He hath need of twenty pounds.*

But *Opus* necessary, admits of diverse cases; as,

*A guide is necessary for us.*

*Get such things as are necessary for you.*

7 *Obs.* Substantives derived of Verbs, do sometimes govern the cases of their Verbs; as,

*A man banished from his Country.*

*Pater meus vir amat me puerum.*

*Marcus Tullius Cicero Princeps Oratorum.*

2 *Obs.* Genitivus possessoris sæpissime in Adjectivum possessivum mutatur; ut,

*Patris domus, vel Paterna domus.*

*Heri filius, vel herilis filius.*

3 Prius Substantivum quandoque per *Ellipsis* subauditur; ut,

Ad \* *Stæ. Mariæ.*

\* *Templum.*

† *Hujas video Byrrhiam.*

† *Servum.*

Tertio \* *Kalendarum.*

\* *Die.*

4 Adjectivum in neutro genere absque Substantivo positum Genitivum postulat; ut,

*Quantum quisque suâ nummorum servat in arca.*

*Tantum habet & fidei.*

*Non videmus id mantice quod in tergo est.*

*Sic & alia Græcorum imitatione; ut,*

*Nigræ lachrymæ nullum bibunt colorem.*

*Canum degeneres caudam sub alvum reflectunt.*

5 *Obs.* Nomina qualitatem denotantia ad laudem vel vituperium rei efferentur in Ablativo vel Genitivo post nomen vel Verbum Substantivum; ut,

*Ingenui vultus puer, ingenuique pudoris.*

*Contemptissimus quisque solutissima est lingua.*

6 *Obs.* *Opus & usus* pro *necesse*, gaudent Ablativo;

ut, *Quid verbis opus est?*

*usus est viginti minis.*

*Opus* verò pro *necessariis* variè construitur; ut;

*Dux nobis opus est.*

*Quæ tibi opus sunt para.*

7 *Obs.* Substantiva verbalia verborum suorum casus interdum regunt.

*Exul à Patria.*

*Obtem.*

Obedience to the Laws.

What have you to do to minde this matter.

Chap. 3.

VII.

§ VII. Rule, Of Adjectives governing a Genitive case.

2 Adjectives  
1 With a  
Genitive  
case.

**A**djectives also govern a Genitive case, that signify desire, knowledge, remembrance, care, fear, or such like passions of the minde; as,  
The nature of man is eager of news.  
The minde is fore-sighted of that which is to come.  
Live mindful of death. Fearful of a storm.  
Ignorant of learning.

III. Adjectives derived of Verbs that end in *ax*; as, Virtue is an abandoner of Vices.  
Time is a consumer of things.

IV. Nouns Partitives; as, Some of you.  
Take whether of these thou wilt.

V. Nouns being put partitively, viz having after them this english *of* or *among*, such as are,

1 Certain Interrogatives; as, Which of the brethren?  
Is there any among men so miserable as I am?

2 Certain nouns of Number; viz. Cardinals and Ordinals; as, Four of the Judges.

It is not yet apparent who was the eighth of the wise men.

3. Nouns of the Comparative and Superlative degree; as,

Of the hands the right is the stronger.

The middle finger is the longest among the fingers.

1 Obs. Yet these in another sense will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as,

The first from Hercules. The third from Arcas.

2 And in another sense a Dative; as,

Second to none in godliness.

3 They

Obtemperatio legibus.

Quid tibi curatio est hanc rem?

## Cap. 3.

## §. VII. Regula, De Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus.

VII

**G**enitivum etiam regunt Adjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, curam, timorem, aut ejusmodi animi affectionem significant; ut, Est natura hominum *novitatis avida*.

2 Adjectivo-  
rum, cum  
Genitivo.

Mens est *presaga futuri*.Vive *memor mortis*. Timidus *procellæ*.Rudis *literarum*.III. Verbalia in *ax*, ut,Virtus est *vitiorum fugax*.Tempus *edax rerum*.IV. Partitiva; ut, *Aliquis vestrum*.*utrum horum* mavis accipe.V. Partitivè posita; *viz.* quæ per *de, è, ex*, aut *inter* exponuntur, cujusmodi sunt,1 Interrogativa quædam; ut, *Quis fratrum?*An *quisquam hominum* est æquè miser ut ego?2 Certa Numeralia; *viz.* Cardinalia & Ordinalia; ut, *Quatuor judicum*.*Sapientum octavus* quis fuerit nondum constar.

3 Comparativa &amp; Superlativa; ut,

*Manuum fortior* est dextra.*Digitorum medius* est *longissimus*.

1 Obs. Hæc tamen in alio sensu Ablativum exigunt cum præpositione; ut,

*Primus ab Hercule. Tertius ab Anea:*

2 In alio verò sensu Dativum; ut,

*Nulli pietate secundus,*

2 usur;

3 They are used also with the Præpositions, by which their Genitive case is explained; as,  
*One of you is a god. One alone of a great many.*  
*The cheif amongst all.*

VI. Besides a great company of other Adjectives (*viz. Compos, reus, exfors, particeps*, and the like) which may better be learned by frequent readings, as,  
*That hath got his desire. Accused of theft. Exempted from all fault. Partaking of his counsel.*

Touching which see LINACER'S and DISPAUTER'S Grammars.

## VIII.

## §. VIII. Rule of Adjectives governing a Dative case.

## 2 A Dative.

**T**hese govern a Dative case;  
 „ 1. Adjectives that betoken

1 Profit or Disprofit; as,

*O be good and favourable to thine own.*

*Fit for the Country, profitable for the field.*

*A rout grievous to the peace, and enemy to gentle rest*

„ 2 Likeness or Unlikensse; as,

*A Poët is very near to an Orator. Equal to Hector.*

*Disagreeing to the truth.*

„ 3 Pleasure; as, *Pleasum to all persons.*

„ 4 Submitting; as, *Beseeching his Father.*

„ 5 Belonging to any thing; as,

*Idleness will be troublesome to thee.*

*There is no way unpassable for vertue.*

6 Hitherto are refer'd nouns compounded with Con; as, *Cognatus mihi*, a kin to me.

1 *Obs.* Yet some of these which signifie Likensse may have a Genitive case; as,

*Thou art like thy Master.*

*He was equal to this man. Partaker of his rogery*

2 *Obs.*

3 Usurpantur etiam cum Præpositionibus per quas Genitivus exponi solet; ut,

*Est Deus è vobis alter. Solus de plurimis.*

*Primus inter omnes.*

VI. Ingens præterea Adjectivorum turba (*viz. Compos, reus, exfors, particeps, &c.*) crebrâ lectione melius addiscendâ; ut,

*Compos voti. Reus furti. Omnis culpæ exfors.*

*Illius consilii particeps.*

De quibus videfis LINACRUM & DESPAUTERIUM.

§. VIII. Regula, De Adjectivis Dativum regentibus.

VIII.

**D**ativum regunt:

2 Dativo.

1. Adjectiva quibus significatur,

1 Commodum aut Incommodum; ut,

*Sis bonus, & felixque tuis.*

*Patriæ idoneus, utilis agro.*

*Turba gravis paci, placidaque inimica quieti.*

2 Similitudo aut Dissimilitudo; ut,

*Est finitimus Oratori Poëta. Aqualis Hæctori.*

*Veritati dissentaneum.*

3 Voluptas; ut, *Fucundus omnibus.*

4 Submissio; ut, *Parenti supplæx.*

5 Relatio ad aliquid; ut,

*Orium tibi molestum erit.*

*In via virtutis nulla est via.*

6 Huc referuntur ex *Con* Præpositione composita;

ut, *Mibi cognatus.*

1 *Obs.* Quædam tamen ex his quæ similitudinem significant, Genitivo gaudent; ut,

*Domini similis es.*

*Par hujus erat. Affinis scelæris vel sceleris.*

P

2 *Obs.*



2 Obs. *Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius* and *superstes* will have diverse cases; as,

*Common to all living creatures.*

*Death is common to all men.*

*This is common betwixt me and thee.*

*unmeet for the purpose. Far from ambition.*

*Estranged from Scevola's studies.*

*Free from this evil. Free to all.*

*We are free from those evils.*

*It's proper to fools. Proper to me.*

*I am guilty to my self of no fault.*

*He was privy to the prank.*

*He out-lived his honour.*

*That surviveth all other things.*

3 Obs. *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehement, aptus, ineptus, par, equalis*, will have sometimes an Accusative case with a Preposition; as,

*Born to glory. Shoes fit for the feet.*

*A man good of no side.*

*Virtues are equal and even amongst themselves.*

„ II. Nouns Adjectives derived of Verbs, and of „ the passive signification in *bilis*; as,

*He is dead, being to be lamented of all good men.*

*And more to be lamented by none than thee.*

IX.

### §. IX. Rule, Of Nouns that govern an Accusative case.

3 An Accu-  
sative.

„ A Djectives govern an Accusative, which signifie „ the measure of length, bredth, or thickness of „ any thing; as, *A foot high. An hand broad.*

*Three fingers thick, Seven foot long.*

But they sometimes  
also govern

{ A Genitive case, as, *Borders  
ten foot broad.*  
An Ablative; as, *A Well  
three foot wide.*

Sec.



2 Obs. Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius & superstes variis casibus serviunt; ut,

*Commune animantium omnium.*

*Mors omniibus communis est.*

*Hoc mihi tecum commune est.*

*Alienum consilii. Alienus ambitioni.*

*Alienus à Scevolæ studiis.*

*Immunis huius mali. Omnibus immunis.*

*Immunes ab illis malis sumus.*

*Proprium est stultorum. Mihi proprium.*

*Mihi nullius culpæ conscius sum.*

*Is conscius ille facinori fuit.*

*Superstes dignitati suæ vixit.*

*Superstes omnium rerum.*

3 Obs. Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, equalis, interdum etiam Accusativo cum Præpositione junguntur;

*Natus ad gloriam. Calcei ad pedes apti.*

*Homo ad nullam partem utilis.*

*Virtutes ipsæ inter se æquales & pares.* Cic.

II. Verbalia in bilis accepta passivè; ut,

*multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.*

*Nulli flebilior, quàm tibi.*

### §. IX. Regula, De Nominibus Accusativum regentibus.

IX.

» A Djectiva regunt Accusativum significantem 3 Accusati-  
longitudinem, latitudinem, aut crassitiem; ut, vus.

*Altus pedem. Latus manum.*

*Crassus tres digitor. Septem pedes longus.*

Sed interdum } Genitivum; ut, *Aræ latæ pedum*  
regunt } *denum.*  
Ablativum; ut, *Fons latus pedibus*  
tribus.

X.

## §. X. Rule, Of Nouns governing an Ablative case.

An Ablative

I. These govern an Ablative case.

I Nouns and Adverbs of the Comparative degree, having *than*; *by* or *in* after them; as,  
*Silver is baser than Gold, and Gold than Virtue.*  
*No Theatre to truth is greater than Conscience.*  
*Higher by a foot. To excel in strength.*

I Obs. *Tantū, quantū, multū, paulū, nimis, cō, quō, hō;* *etate, natū*, are joyned to both degrees of comparison; as,

*He is far more skilfull than the rest, but not much better.*

*By how much one is less learned, by so much he is more impudent. The greatest in age, i.e. The eldest. The least by birth, i.e. The youngest.*

II. These Adj. ctives *dignus, indignus, praeclitus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus;* as,  
*Thou art worthy of hatred,*  
*unbefitting the gravity of a wise man.*

*Endued with every vertue. Deprived of eyes.*  
*Get thee hence, content with thy condition.*

*Banish'd from his own house. Trusting to thy clemency*

I Obs. But *dignus*, and *indignus* will have sometimes a Genitive case; as, *A warfare worth thy labour.*  
*Not unworthy of his great Ancestors.*

III. Nouns of diversity will have an Ablative case, with a Preposition; as, *Another thing from this.*  
*Another man from him.*

And sometimes a Dative; as, *Different from this thing*

IV. Adjectives and Verbs that signifie plenty or want, will have an Ablative, and sometimes a Genitive case; as, *Love is very full both of honey and gall.*  
*Love is a thing full of thought some fear.*

Thou

## §. X. Regula, De Nominibus Ablativum regentibus.

X.

4 Ablativo.

**A**blativum regunt,  
I. Comparativa (Nomina, Verba, & Adverbia) quum exponuntur per *quam*, aut post se habent nomen significans mensurum excessus; ut,

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.*

*Nullum Theatrum veritati conscientiam majus est.*

*uno pede altior. Viribus prestare.*

I. Obs. *Tanquam, quam, multo, paulo, nimis, eo, quod, hoc, etate, natu, utriusque* gradui apponuntur.

Longè ceteris peritior est, sed non multo melior.

*Quod quis indoctior, eo impudentior.*

*Maximus etate. Minimus natu.*

II. *Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus*; ut,

*Dignus es odio.*

*Indignum sapientis gravitate.*

*Omni virtute præditus. Captus oculis.*

*Sorte tuâ contentus abi.*

*Extorris suâ domo. Fretus tuâ clementiâ.*

„ I. Obs. *Dignus & indignus* interdum etiam Genitivum vendicant; ut *Militia operis digna tui*,

*Magnorum non indignus avorum.*

„ III. *Nomina diversitatis, Ablativum sibi cum Prepositione subjiciunt*; ut, *Aliud ab hoc. Alter ab illo.*

Et nonnunquam *Dativum*; ut, *Huic diversum.*

„ IV. *Adjectiva & verba quæ ad copiam egestatemve*

*pertinent*, interdum *Ablativo*, interdum & *genitivo*

*gaudent*; ut, *Amor & melle & felle est facendissimus.*

*Res est solliciti plena timoris amor.*

*Thou aboundest in love. Thou wantest virtue.  
 Rich in white cattle. Rich in grounds.  
 Void of guile. Blessed with grace.  
 Go on or increase in virtue. Upright in life.*

„ 1 *Obs.* Some of these will have also an Ablative case  
 „ with a Preposition; as, *Void of anger.*

„ V. Any Adjective or Verb will have an Ablative case,

1 *Of the Instrument; as, Stout at the Sword.*

*Better at Oars. Jesus vanquished the Devil, not  
 with weapons, but with death.*

2 *Of the Cause; as, Pale with anger.  
 Worse for too much liberty.*

3 *Of the Circumstance, of the manner of doing, or  
 of the thing; as,*

*An envious man groweth lean at the prosperity of a-  
 nother. By name a Grammarian, but indeed a Bar-  
 barian. A Trojan by birth, a Syrian by nation.*

*Crooked old age will come by & by with a still pace.*

1 *Obs.* But sometimes the Ablative case of the cause,  
 or manner of doing, will have a Preposition; as,  
*unprovided of money.*

*He used the man with a great deal of courtesie.*

„ VI. Adjectives and Verbs of *buying and selling* will  
 „ have an Ablative case of the *price*; as,

*Cheap at twenty pounds. Dear at a farthing.*

*Not to be sold for pearls, or purple, or gold.*

*That victory cost much blood, and many wounds.*

*He taught for wages. Wheat is sold at a low rate.*

*To hire for a penny. To let for a shilling.*

*He lives at ten pounds rent.*

1 *Obs.* Yet these words, when they are without  
 Substantives, are put after Verbs in the Genitive  
 case; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; as,

*I sell not for more than others, but for less.*

*Things are so much worth, as they may be sold for.*

„ VII. Adjectives, and Verbs Passives and Neuters  
 „ that

*Amore abundas. Cares virtute.*

*Dives Niwei pecoris. Dives agris.*

*Expers fraudis. Gratiâ beatus.*

*Masse sis virtute. Integer vita.*

1 *Obs.* Ex his quædam junguntur Ablativo cum Præpositione; ut, *Vacuus iræ, irâ, ab irâ.*

*V. Quodvis Nomen aut Verbum* admittit Ablativû,

1 *Instrumenti*; ut, *Euse validus. Melior remis.*

*Dæmona non armis, sed morte subegit Iesus.*

2 *Causæ*; ut, *Pallidus irâ.*

*Deteriores licentiâ.*

*Invidus alterius rebus macrescit opimis.*

3 *Circumstantiæ* modi actionis aut rei; ut,

*Nomine Grammaticus, re Barbaras.*

*Trojanus origine, Syrus natione.*

*Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede :*

1 *Obs.* Sed Ablativo causæ aut modi aliquando additur Præpositio; ut,

*Imparatus à pecuniâ.*

Cic.

*Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem.*

„ VI. *Adjectiva & Verba mercandi* regunt Ablativum pretii; ut,

*Vilis viginti minis. Asse carus.*

*Nec gemmis, nec purpurâ venale, nec anro.*

*Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea victoria stetit.*

*Mercede docuit. Vili venit triticum.*

*Addicere denario. Locare solido.*

*Habitat decem minis.*

1 *Obs.* Hæc tamen sine Substantivis posita, Verbis subjiciuntur in Genitivo; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; ut,

*Non Vendo pluris quàm alii, sed minoris.*

*Tanti valent res, quanti vendi possunt.*

„ VII. *Adjectiva, & Verba Passiva, Neutra, significancia*

that signifie some property or passion, will have an Accusative case, or Ablative, signifying the part or place wherein the property or passion is; as,

*He is diseased in his feet. He is sick in minde rather than in body.*

*He hath red hair. Red-haired.*

1 *Obs.* But the part affected is sometimes put in the Genitive case; as, *O thou ! that hast a happy wit. Thou troublest thy self in minde.*

2 *Obs.* These be Greek phrases :

*Merry as concerning other things. Like in other things. Like him both in speech and colour.*

XL

### §. XI. Rule, Of the Ablative case Absolute.

N. B. **A** Noun or Pronoun Substantive, joyned with a Participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word whereof it may be governed, shall be put in the Ablative case Absolute; as,

*The King coming, the enemies ran away, i.e. when the King comes. I being Captain.*

And it may be resolved by *whilest, when, if, &c.*

### Chap. 4.

#### Of the Government of Pronouns.

2 Of Pronouns.

**T**Hese Genitive cases of the Primitive *Mei, tui, sui nostri* and *vestri*, be used when suffering or passion is signified; but *Meus, tuus, suus, noster* and *vester* be used when action or possession is signified; as,

*Part of thee, Thy part. The image of us, Our image. The love of himself, His own love.*

1 *Obs.* Possessives are sometimes put for Primitives; as, *He did it for my sake.*

2 *Obs.* *Nostrium* and *vestrum* be used after Distributives, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives; as,  
Some

nificantia aliquam proprietatem vel passionem, possunt regere Accusativum, vel Ablativum, significantem partem in qua est proprietas aut passio; ut,

*Ager pedes, vel pedibus. Agrotat animo magis quam corpore.*

*Rubet Capillos. Ruber crine.*

1 *Obs.* Sed pars affecta interdum in Genitivo ponitur; ut, *O te ! felicem cerebri.*

*Angis te animi.*

2 *Obs.* Græcæ phrasæ sunt,

*Cætera letus. Cætera similis.*

*Huic vocemque coloremque similis est.*

§. XI. *Regula, De Ablativo absolutè posito.*

XL

N.B. **A**blativus absolutè ponitur expressio Participio, vel subaudito; ut,

*Rege veniente hostes fugerunt,  
Me duce.*

Et resolvitur per *Dum, cum, si, &c.*

Cap. 4.

*De Regimine pronominum.*

**M***Ei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri,* ponuntur cum passio; sed *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester,* cum actio vel possessio significatur; ut,

*Pars tui, pars tua. Imago nostri, Imago nostra.*

*Amor sui, Amor suus.*

1 *Obs.* Possessiva verò interdum pro Primitivis usurpantur; ut, *Meâ causâ fecit, i.e. meâ.*

2 *Obs.* *Nostrium & vestrum* sequuntur Distributiva, Partitiva, Comparativa & Superlativa; ut,

*Aliquis*



Some of you. The bigger of you. The eldest of us.  
 3 Obs. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, will have certain Genitive cases after them, viz. *Ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium*, &c. *omnium, plurium, paucorum*, and the Genitives of participles, which are referred to the Primitive, understood in the Possessive; as,

Thou maiest guess out of thine own minde.

Thou hast seen the eyes of me weeping.

II. *Ipse* and *idem* may be joyned to all persons.

I myself will see. Thou thy self go on to do it.

Plato himself said. He himself did it.

*Idem* governeth sometimes a Dative case; as,

He that saveth a man against his will, doth the same as he that kills him.

But more commonly an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *The same with it*.

III. *Ille* noteth the eminency or worth of a thing; and *iste* the baseness or contempt of it; as,

That brave Alexander the great. That mean fellow.

*Hic* is for the most part referred to the later Antecedent, and the nearer to its self; *Ille* to the former, and the further from it; as,

The Husbandmans aim is contrary to the shepherds, he looks for profit from his land, and he from his stock of cattle.

## Chap. 5.

### Of the government of Verbs.

V	Erbs governa	Nominative	} Cases	Sect. XII.
		Genitive		Sect. XIII.
		Dative		Sect. XIV.
		Accusative		Sect. XV.
		Ablative		Sect. XVI.

To



*Aliqua vestram. Major vestram. Maximus natu-  
stram.*

3 *Obs. Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, quosdam Ge-  
nitivos post se recipiunt; viz, Ippus, solius, unius, duo-  
rum, trium, omnium, plurimum, paucorum, & Genitivos  
Participiorum qui referuntur ad Primitivum in Pos-  
sessivo inclusum; ut,*

*Ex tui ipsius animo conjecturam feceris.*

*Nostros vidisti stentis ocellos.*

II. *Ipse & idem omnibus personis adjungi possunt; ut,  
Ego ipse videbo. Idem perge facere.*

*Ipse Plato dixit. Hic idem fecit.*

*Idem regit aliquando Dativum; ut,*

*Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti.*

Sed frequentius Ablativum cum Præpositione; ut

*Idem cum illo.*

III. *Ille eminentiam rei denotat; Iste verò con-  
temptum; ut,*

*Alexander ille. Iste homuncio.*

*Hic ad posterius & propius antepositum; Ille ad  
prius & remotius usitatissime refertur; ut,*

*Agricolæ contrarium est Pastoris propositum;*

*ille fructum è terrâ sperat; hic è pecore.*

### Cap. 5.

#### De Regimine Verborum.

V	Erba re- gunt	{	Nominativum	{	Culum,	Sect. XII.
			Genitivum			Sect. XIII.
			Dativum			Sect. XIV.
			Accusativum			Sect. XV.
			Ablativum			Sect. XVI.
						Quibus

To which also belong the Rules	Of Verbs passives;	Sect. XVII.
	Of such as have a diverse } construction, }	Sect. XVIII.
	Of the Infinitive mood,	Sect. XIX.
	Of the Gerunds and Supines,	Sect. XX.
	Of the Gerunds in { Di, Do, Dum,	Sect. XXI.
		Sect. XXII.
		Sect. XXIII.
	Of the first Supine,	Sect. XXIV.
	Of the latter Supine,	Sect. XXV.
	Of time,	Sect. XXVI.
	Of Space,	Sect. XXVII.
	Of Place,	Sect. XXVIII.
	Of Impersonals,	Sect. XXIX.

## XII.

## §. XII. Rule, Of Verbs governing a Nominative case.

¶ Of Verbs  
with,  
¶ A Nomi-  
native.

¶ Verbs Substantives, certain Passives, & Verbs,  
of Gesture will have a Nominative case after  
them, as well as before them; as,  
*God is the chiefest good.*  
*Faith is accounted the foundation of our Religion.*  
*An evil shepherd sleepeth void of care.*  
*He will become a learned man.*

¶ *Obs.* All manner of Verbs (almost) will have after them a Nominative case of the Noun Adjective that agreeth with the Nominative case of the Verb, in Case, Gender, and Number; as.

*The earth remaineth unmoveable. I write very seldom.*  
*Good boyes learn diligently. I speak often.*

## XIII.

## §. XIII. The Rule of Verbs governing a Genitive Case.

¶ A Genitive

¶ These Verbs govern a Genitive case:  
I. *Sum*, when it betokeneth possession, or otherwise

Quibus accidunt Regule	De Verbis Passivis,	Sect. XVII.
	De variam constructionem habentibus,	Sect. XVIII.
	De modo Infinitivo,	Sect. XIX.
	De Gerundiis & Supinis,	Sect. XX.
	De Gerundiis in { Di, Do, Dum,	Sect. XXI.
		Sect. XXII.
		Sect. XXIII.
	De priore Supino,	Sect. XXIV.
	De posteriore Supino,	Sect. XXV.
	De Tempore,	Sect. XXVI.
	De Spatio,	Sect. XXVII.
	De Loco,	Sect. XXVIII.
	De Impersonalibus.	Sect. XXIX.

§. XII. Regula, De Verbis Nominativum regentibus.

XII.

Verba Substantiva, passiva quædam, & Verba gestûs, utrinque Nominativum expetunt; ut, *I* Verborum cum, *I* Nominativus.

Deus est *summum bonum*.  
Fides Religiones nostræ *fundamentum habet*.  
Malus pastor *dormit supinus*.  
Hic *evadet vir doctus*.

*I* Obs. Omnia ferè Verba post se Nominativum habebunt Adjectivi nominis, quod cum Supposito Verbi, casu, genere, & numero concordat; ut,  
*Terra manet immobilis. Scribo rarissimus.*  
*Boni discunt seduli. Loquor frequens.*

§. XIII. Regula, De Verbis Genitivum regentibus.

XIII.

Genitivum regunt :  
*I* Sum, quoties significat possessionem aut ad *2* Genitivum aliquid

otherwise pertaining to a thing, as a property or duty; as, *This house is my Fathers house.*

*It is (the duty) of a young man to reverence his elders.*

*It is (the property) of a good shepherd to shear his sheep, not to pill them.*

1 *Obs.* But some Adjectives, as *meum, tuum, humanum*; &c. are put in the Nominative case, where *officium* or *munus* (a duty) seems to be understood by an *Ellipsis*; as,

*It is not my duty to speak against the Authority of the Senate.*

*It is incident to a man to be angry, but a beastly part to rage.*

*It is a Kingly part to do well.*

„ II. Verbs that betoken to esteem or regard; as, *Honesty is reckoned little worth.*

*Money is every where much regarded.*

*I care not this for thee, who valuest mee but an hair.*

*I take it in good part.*

1 *Obs.* But *estimo* will have an Ablative case; as, *Virtue is much to be esteemed.*

*He valued it at three-pence.*

2 *Obs.* *Valio* will have a Genitive, an Accusative, or an Ablative case; as, *It is so much worth.*

*It is worth two farthings.*

3 *Obs.* We say also, *I account, or esteem it as nothing.*

„ III. Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, or acquitting, will have a Genitive case of the crime or punishment; as, *It behooveth him to look to himself, that accuseth another of dishonesty.*

*They condemned most innocent Socrates to lose his life.*

*He admonished me of a mistake.*

*He is acquitted of theft.*

1 *Obs.* And this Genitive case is turned sometimes into

aliquid pertinere; ut,  
*Hæc domus est patris.*  
*Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.*

*Boni Pastoris est tondere pecus, non deglubere.*

1 *Obs.* At hi Nominativi *meum, tuum, humanum,*  
 &c. usurpantur ubi *officium* aut *munus* subintelligi vi-  
 detur per *Ellipsin*; ut,

Non est *meum* contra Authoritatem Senatûs dicere.

*Humanum* est irasci; *Belluinum* verò scire.

*Regium* est benefacere.

II. Verba æstimandi; ut,

*Parvi penditur probitas.*

*Plurimi passim sit pecunia.*

Non *hujus* te facio, qui me *pili* æstimas.

*Aqui, boni consulo* vel *facio.*

1 *Obs.* *Æstimo* Ablativum etiam adsciscit; ut,

*Magna virtus æstimanda* est,

*Tribus denariis æstimavit.*

2 *Obs.* *Valeo* cum Genitivo, frequentius autem cum  
 Accusativo, & Ablativo junctum reperitur; ut,

*Tanti valet. Valet duos asses, vel duobus assibus.*

3 *Obs.* Dicimus etiam, *Pro nihilo puto, habeo, duco,* &c.

„ III. Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, &  
 „ absolvendi, Genitivum criminis, vel poenæ postu-  
 „ lant; ut, *Qui alterum incusat probri, cum ipsum*  
*se intueri oportet.*

*Socratem innocentissimum capitis condemnabant,*

*Admonuit me errati.*

*Furti absolutus est.*

1 *Obs.* Vertitur hic Genitivus aliquando in *Abla-*  
*tivum* vel cum *Præpositione*, vel sine *Præpositione*;  
 ut,

into an Ablative either with, or without a Preposition; as, *I will condemn thee of the same fault.*

*Is he accused of theft, or dishonesty? Of both.*

*I thought that thou wert to be admonished of that matter.*

IV. *Sarago, misereor and miseresco,*  
*He is busy about his own matters. Pity the pains.*  
*Pity thine own stock.*

*Obs.* But *misereor* and *miserescō*, are sometimes read with a Dative case; as,

*Pity this man. Have compassion on the bad.*

V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor and memini;* as,  
*He remembereth his promise. It is the property of*  
*fools to see other mens faults and forget their own.*  
*I will make thee to remember me alwaies.*

*Obs.* And these will have also an Accusative case; as, *I remember my lesson. I forget the song.*

VI. Some also after the manner of the Greeks will have a Genitive case; as,

*Cease thy womanish complaints.*

*It is time to give over the fight.*

*He is worthy of all mischief, that blusheth at his fortune.*

XIV.

#### § XIV. Rule, Of Verbs governing a Dative case.

§ Dative

ALL manner of Verbs put acquisitively (*i. e.* which are known commonly by these tokens *to* or *for* after them) will have a Dative case; as,  
*I have it for this man, and not for thee.*  
*I sleep not to all men. Neither is there sowing nor mowing for me there.*

And to this rule do also belong Verbs that becom-

» I To

tivum vel cum Præpositione, vel sine Præpositione;  
ut, *Condemnabo te eodem crimine.*  
*Accusatur furti, an stupri? utroque, vel de utroque.*  
*Puravi eâ de re admonendum esse te.*

„ IV. *Satago, misereor, miseresco; ut,*  
*Is rerum suarum satagit, Misereve laborum.*  
*Generis miseresce tui.*

1 Obs. At *misereor & miseresco* rarius cum Dativ  
vo leguntur; ut,  
*Huic misereor. Miseresce malis.*

„ V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, & memini; ut,*  
*Data fidei reminiscitur. Proprium est stultorum,*  
*aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.*  
*Faciam ut meâ semper memineris.*

1 Obs. Et hæc Accusativum etiam desiderant; ut,  
*Reminiscor lectionem. Obliviscor carmen.*

„ VI. Quædam etiam, more Græcorum, Genitivum  
admittunt; ut,

*Desine mollium querelarum.* Hor.  
*Tempus desistere pugnae.* Virg.  
*Dignus est omni malo, qui erubescit fortune.* Curt.

§. XIV. Regula, De Verbis Dativum  
regentibus.

XIV.

„ Dativum regunt,  
„ Omnia Verba acquisitivè posita; ut,  
*Huic habeo, non tibi.*  
*Non Omnibus dormio.*  
*Mihi istic nec feritur, nec metitur.*

3 Dativo.

Atque huic regulæ appendent Verba.

Q

„ 1 Sig-



- „ 1 To profit or disprofit; as,  
*It cannot profit or disprofit me.*  
*He hurteth the good, who spareth the bad.*
- „ 2 To compare; as,  
*To compare great things with small.*  
*He made himself equal to his brother.*  
 1 *Obs.* But these will have sometimes an Accusative or an Ablative case with a Preposition; as,  
*If he be compared to him, he is nothing.*  
*I compare Virgil with Homer.*
- „ 3 To give or to restore; as, *Fortune hath given too much to many, enough to none.*  
*He is ungrateful that requies not a favour to him that deserveth it.*
- „ 3 To promise or pay; as,  
*I promise thee these things.*  
*He hath paid the debt unto me.*
- „ 5 To command or to shew; as,  
*Mony hoarded up commandeth or serveth every body.*  
*Take heed oft-times what thou sayest of any body, and to whom.*
- „ 6 To trust; as, *Believe not a woman, no though she seem dead.* *I commit this to thy trust.*
- „ 7 To Obey, or to be against; as,  
*A dutiful Son atwaies obeyeth his Father.*  
*Fortune resisteth sluggish prayers.*
- „ 8 To threaten or to be angry with; as,  
*He threatned death to them both.*  
*I am angry with thee.*
- „ 9 *Sum* with its Compounds, except *Possum*, as,  
*He is a father to the City, and a husband to the City.*  
*Many things are wanting to them that desire many things.*  
 1 *Obs.* Likewise *Sum* and *Suppetit* signifying to have; as, *Every man hath his own liking.*  
*We have mellow apples.*



1 Significancia Commodum aut Incommodum;  
ut,

Non potest mihi *commodare* nec *incommodare*.  
*Bonis nocet, qui malis parcit.*

2 Comparandi; ut,  
*Parvis componere magna.*  
*Pratri se adequavit.*

1 Obs. His autem interdum additur Accusativus  
aut Ablativus cum Præpositione; ut,  
*Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est.*  
*Comparo Virgilium cum Homero.*

3 Dandi & reddendi; ut, *Fortuna multis nimium  
dedit, nulli satis.*  
*Ingratus est qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit.*

4 Promittendi ac solvendi; ut, *Hæc tibi promitto.*

*Æs alienum mihi numeravit.*

5 Imperandi aut nuntiandi; ut,  
*Imperat, aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.*

*Quid de quoquo viro, aut cui dicas, sæpe caveo.*

6 Fidendi; ut, *Mulieri nē credas, nē mortua qui-  
dem. Hoc tuæ mando fidei.*

7 Obsequendi & repugnandi; ut,  
*Semper obtemperat pius filius patri.*  
*Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat.*

8 Minandi & Irascendi; ut,  
*Utrique mortem minatus est.*  
*Irascor tibi.*

9 Sum cum compositis, præter possum; ut  
*urbi pater est, urbi que maritus.*  
*Multa petentibus desunt multa.*

1 Obs. Item Sum & suppetit, pro habes; ut,  
*Velle suum cuique est.*  
*Sunt nobis mitia poma.*

He is not poor, *who bath the use of things.*  
 2 *Obs.* *Sum*, with many others will have a double Dative case; as,

The Sea is a destruction to greedy seamen.

A good King is an ornament to the Commonwealth.  
 Thou hopest it will be a praise to thee, which thou imputeest as a fault to me.

13 Verbs compounded with the Adverbs, *Satis*, *bene*, *ma'le*, and the Prepositions. *Præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, and *inter*; as,

He hath done good to many, he hath done ill to none.  
 I prefer no man before thee.

A new relator addeth something to things he hath heard.

1 *Obs.* A few of these sometimes change their Dative case into another case; as,

One man excels another in wit.

I forbid thee fire and water.

2 *Obs.* But *Præco*, *præcedo*, *præcurro*, with some other Compounds of *præ*, will have rather an Accusative case; as, *Thou shalt go before me.*

3 *Obs.* There is oft-times a Pleonasm or redundancy of the Dative cases, *Mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*; as,

I slay this man with his own sword.

N.B. Sometimes a Dative case is put figuratively in stead of an Accusative or Ablative with a Preposition; and of some it is called the eighth case; as,

The cry goeth unto heaven. Keep the hear from the cattle.

XV.

§. XV. Rule, Of Verbs governing an Accusative case.

4 An Accusative.

Verbs Transitives are all such as have affected them an Accusative case of the doer or sufferer; as, *Fear God. Honour the King.*

It's

*Pauper non est cui rerum suppetit usus.*

2 *Obs.* *Sum* cum multis aliis *geminum* adfiscit  
Dativum; ut,

*Exitio est avidis mare nautis.*

*Rex pius est Reipublicæ ornamento.*

*Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis.*

„ 10 Composita cum Adverbiis, *Satis. bene, malè,*

„ & Præpositionibus, *præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in,*

„ *inter;* ut,

*Benefecit multis, malef. cit nulli.*

*Neminem tibi antepono.*

*Auditis aliquid novus adjicit Auctor.*

1 *Obs.* *Pauca* ex his mutant Dativum aliquoties in  
alium casum; ut.

*Præstat ingenio aulus alium.*

*Interdico tibi aquâ & igni.*

2 *Obs.* Sed *Præco, præcedo, præcurro,* & quædam alia  
Composita cum *præ* Accusativo potius junguntur;  
ut, *Præibis me.*

3 *Obs.* Sæpe fit Pleonasmus sive redundancia Dativorum,  
*Mihi, tibi, sibi;* ut,

*Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.*

N.B. Aliquando Dativus figuratè ponitur pro Accusativo aut Ablativo cum Præpositione: & à nonnullis dicitur octavus casus; ut,

*It clamor cælo, pro ad cælum.*

*Solstitium pecori defendite, pro à pecore.*

### §. XV. Regula, De Verbis Accusativam regentibus.

XV.

„ **V**erba Transitiva exigunt Accusativum; ut,

4 Accusativus.

*Deum time. Regem horora.*

Q3

Filii

Its a sons duty to reverence his Parents,  
The fierce Lionesse followeth the Wolf, and the  
Wolf the Kid.

1 *Obs.* Verbs absolute may have an Accusative case of their own signification, and sometimes an Ablative; as, *I live a life. To live a life long.*

*Thou sleepest Endymions sleep. They rejoiced with exceeding great joy. To go a long way. To go the right way. He died a sudden death.*

2 *Obs.* Some Verbs will have an Accusative case figuratively; as, *He smells like a Goat. Thy voice sounds like a man. He offends in the same thing. They counterfeite sober men, and live riotously.*

3 Verbs of asking, teaching, and arraying, will have two Accusative cases, one of the Person, and another of the Thing; as,

*Do thou only ask God leave.*

*Hunger teacheth a man many things.*

*He put on his shoes which he had first put off.*

4 But some of these sometimes change the one Accusative case into the Dative or Ablative; with, or without a Preposition; as, *I put on thy coat, or I put thy coat on thee. He informeth the Senate of his journey. Let us intreat leave of him.*

XVI.

### §. XVI. Rule, Of Verbs governing an Ablative case.

§ Ablative

**T**Hese govern an Ablative case,  
I. All Verbs, so that the  
Ablative case be,

1 Of the Instrument.

2 Of the Cause.

3 Of the manner of doing.

II. Verbs of Price.

III. Verbs that signifie some property or passion.

Concerning  
which we  
have spoken  
before in the  
Regiment of  
Nouns. p. 18

IV

Filii est, revereri parentes.

Torva Leana Lupum sequitur, Lupus ipse Capellam.

1 Obs. Verba absoluta Accusativum admittunt cognatæ significationis & aliquando Ablativum, ut, *Vivo vitam. Vitâ diu vivere.*

Endymionis somnum dormis.

Gaudebant gaudium valdè magnum.

Longam ire viam. Ire rectâ viâ.

Morte abiit repentinâ.

2 Obs. Quædam etiam figuratè Accusativum habent; ut,

Olet hircum. Vox sonat hominem

Eadem peccat. Curiosi simulant & Bacchanalia vivunt.

3 Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, duplicem regunt Accusativum; unum personæ, alterum rei; ut,

Tu modò posce Deum veniam.

Multa hominem fames docet.

Induit se calceos quos priùs exuerat.

4 Sed interdum mutant alterum Accusativum in Dativum vel Ablativum, cum, vel sine Præpositione; ut,

Induo te tunica, vel tibi tunicam. Senatum edocet de itinere. Veniam oremus ab ipsa.

## §. XVI. Regula, De Verbis Ablativum regentibus.

XVI

**A**blativum regunt  
I. Quodvis Verbum; modò  
iste Ablativus sit,

1 Instrumenti,

2 Causæ,

3 Modi Actionis,

II. Verba pretii.

III. Verba proprietatem vel passionem significantia.

§ Ablativo

De quibus in  
Regimine  
Nominum  
supradictum  
est. p. 219.

Q 4

IV.

## IV. Verbs of plenty or scarcenesse.

## V. Some certain Deponents and Neuters, viz,

<i>Fungor,</i>	}	They that would get true glory,
<i>Error,</i>		must discharge the duties of Justice
<i>utor,</i>		It's the best to make use of anothers
<i>Vescor,</i>		madness.
<i>Nitor,</i>		It helpeth in a bad matter, if thou
		canst use a good courage,
		I eat flesh.
		I trust to my strength. It becometh
		one to rely on his virtue, not his
		blood. (honour.
<i>Dignor,</i>	> as, {	I think not my self worthy of such
<i>Prosequor,</i>		I pursue thee with love, i.e. I love
		thee
<i>Muto,</i>		He changeth square things for round
<i>Munero,</i>		He rewarded him with the fellow-
		ship of his Kingdome.
<i>Supersedo</i>		We must leave off the multitude of
		examples. (at my table.
<i>Communico</i>		I will give thee allowance alwaies
<i>Afficio,</i>		I affect thee with joy, or I make
		thee glad, with some few others.

## VI. Verbs of Comparing or Exceeding; as,

*I prefer this man by many degrees.*

*He is beyond him but a little space.*

*It is seemly to be overcome in virtue by those whom thou excellest in eminency of place.*

„ VII. Verbs that betoken receiving, distance, or taking away, will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *I heard it of many. It is far distant from us. I delivered thee from the evils.*

1 *Obs.* And this Ablative may be turned into the Dative; as, *He took his life from him.*

VIII. *Merco* will have an Ablative case with the Preposition *De*; as,

*Thou*

## IV. Verba Abundandi, &amp; Implendi.

## V. Certa quædam Deponentia &amp; Neutra, viz.

<i>Fangor,</i>		Qui adipisci veram gloriâ volunt, Justitiæ fungantur officiis.
<i>Fruor,</i>		Optimum est alienâ insanîâ frui.
<i>utor,</i>		In re malâ animo si bono utare, juvat.
<i>Vescor,</i>		Vescor carnibus.
<i>Nitor,</i>		Nitor meis viribus. Virtute decet, non sanguini niti.
<i>Dignor,</i>	} ut,	Haud equidē tali me dignor honore Prosequor te amore.
<i>Prosequor,</i>		
<i>Muto,</i>		Mutat Quadrata rotundis.
<i>Munero,</i>		Regni cum societate munerauit.
<i>Superseco</i>		Exemplorum multitudine superse- dendum est.
<i>Communico</i>		Cōmunicato te semper mensâ meâ.
<i>Afficio,</i>		Afficio te gaudio, cum paucis aliis.

## VI. Verba quæ vim Comparisonis obtinet; ut,

*Præfero hunc multis gradibus.**Paulo intervallo illum superat.*

Deforme est ab iis virtutibus superari, quos dignitate præstas.

## „ VII. Verba Accipiendi, Distandi &amp; Auferendi

„ Ablativum cum Præpositione optant; ut,

*Audivi ex multis. Longè distat à nobis.**Eripuit te à malis.*i Obs. Vertitur hic Ablativus aliquando in Dativum; ut, *Eripuit illi vitam.*

## VII. Mereor Ablativo adhæret cum Præpositione

*De;* ut,*De*



*Thou never deservedst well of me.*

*Cataline deserved very ill of the Common-wealth.*

## XVII.

## §. XVII. Rule, Of Verbs Passives.

**V**erbs Passives will have after them an Ablative case with a Preposition, and sometimes a Dative; as, *Virgil is read of me.*

*A Boar is oft-times held by a little dog.*

*Honest things, nor hidden things, are desired of good men.*

1 *Obs.* The other cases remain in the Passives which belong to their Active; as,

*Thou art accused by me of theft.*

*Thou shalt be made a mocking-stock.*

2 *Obs.* *Vapulo, venio, liceo, exsulo* and *fio*, do follow the construction of Passives, i. e. they govern an Ablative case with a Preposition, or a Dative; as,

*Thou shalt be whipt by the Master. I had rather be spoiled by a Citizen, than sold by an enemy.*

*What will become of him? Virtue is cheapned by all at a low rate. Why is Philosophy banish'd from banquets?*

## § XVIII.

## §. XVIII. Rule, Of Verbs having diverse Constructions.

With a diverse Construction.

I. **T**he same Verb may have diverse cases in a several respect or consideration; as,  
*He gave me his garment for a pawn, thou being present, with his own hand.*

II. These Verbs have a diverse Construction,

1 In the same signification; as,

1 *I flatter thee.*

2 *He bespotted me.*

3 *I hearken to thee.*

4 *I agree with thee.*

5 *I dissent from thee.*

6 *I bestow a book on thee.*



De me nunquam bene meritus es.

Catilina pessimè de Republica meruit.

## §. XVII. Regula, De verbis Passivis.

XVII

**V**erba Passiva admittunt Ablativum cum Præpositione; & interdum Dativum; ut,  
Virgilius legitur à me.

A cane non magna sæpe tenetur Aper.

Honesti bonis viris, non occulta petuntur.

1 Obs. Ceteri casus manent in Passivis qui fuerunt Activorum; ut,

Accusaris à me furti.

Habeberis ludibrio.

2 Obs. Vapulo, venco, liceo, exsulo, &c. Passivorum constructionem habent, i. e. Ablativum admittunt cum Præpositione, vel Dativum; ut,

A Præceptore vapulabis.

Malo à civē spoliari, quam ab hoste venire.

Quid fiet ab illo? Virtus paivo pretio licet omnibus.

Cur à convivis exsulat Philosophia?

## §. XVIII. Regula, De Verbis variam Constructionem habentibus.

XVIII

I. **E**idem Verbo diversi casus diversæ rationis apponi possunt; ut,

Dedit mibi vestem pignori, te prasente, propriam manu.

Cum diversa significati-  
one.

II. Hæc variam habent constructionem,

1 In eadem significatione, viz.

1 { Aduo { tibi } 2 Aspersus { mibi labem.  
{ Adulor { te } { me labe.

3 Attendo { tibi } 4 Consentio { tibi.  
{ te } { tecum.

{ Dissentio { tibi, à te, } 6 Dono { tibi librum.  
5 { Dissideo { tecum } { te libro.

7 Illu-

- 7 I mock thee.  
 8 I bestow my means on thee.  
 9 I put on thy coat.  
 10 He spread his cloak on the horse  
 11 I forbid thee this thing  
 12 I cure { my son  
                   { that disease  
 13 I moderate my affection  
 14 I deprave thee  
 15 I tarry for thee  
 16 I forbid thee the house  
 17 I go into the house  
 „ 2 In a different signification; as,  
 1 I assent } to thee  
   I come }  
 2 I envy. } thee  
   I imitate }  
   I obey }  
 3 I hear } thee  
   I see to thee  
 4 { I avoid thee  
   I make a caution, or I am careful for thee  
  
   I give place to thee  
 5 { I go out of the City  
   I Give mee a book  
   I advise, or look to thee  
 6 { I ask advice of thee  
   I resolve concerning thee  
   I hapneth to me  
 7 { It toucheth me  
   I favour thee  
 8 { I desire thee  
   It is wanting to me  
 9 { He faileth me  
   He revolte:h from me

- 7 Illudo { tibi } 8 Impertio { tibi fortunas meas  
te } { te fortunis meis
- 9 Induo { tibi tunicam } 10 Instravit { equo penulam  
te tunicâ } { equum penulâ
- 11 Interdico tibi hanc rem, vel te hâc re
- 12 Medicor { gnato rno  
istum morbum.
- 13 Moderor { affectui,  
affectum } 14 Obtrecto { laudem  
laudi
- 15 Praestolor { tibi } 16 Prohibeo { te domo  
te } { tibi domum
- 17 Subeo { rectum  
recto
- 2 In diversâ significatione. (video
- 1 Accedo { tibi, i. e. Assentior } 2 Amulor { tibi, i. e. in-  
te, i. e. Adeo } { te, i. e. imitor
- 3 Ausculto { tibi, i. e. Obedio  
te, i. e. Audio
- 4 Caveo { tibi i. e. periculum à te avertio  
te } { i. e. declino  
à te } { de te, i. e. do aliquid ad cautionem
- 5 Cedo { tibi  
urbe  
librum
- 6 Consulo { tibi i. e. consilium do, vel proſpicio  
te, i. e. consilium à te peto  
in te, i. e. statuo
- 7 Contingit { mibi, i. e. accidit  
me, i. e. tangit
- 8 Cupio { tibi, i. e. faveo  
te, i. e. expeto
- 9 Deficit { mibi, i. e. deest  
me, i. e. defituit  
à me, i. e. in alteram partem transit.

- 10 { I give or send to carry to one  
letters to thee to read.
- 11 { I lend thee on usury  
I borrow of thee on usury
- 12 { I am sick of a Feavour  
I take pains for the publick safety
- 13 { I am careful for thee  
I am afraid of thee
- 14 { I remember thee  
I speak of thee
- 15 { I conquer the City  
I obtain my desire
- 16 { I promise you  
I entertain you
- 17 { I betake my self home  
I report it to you
- 18 { I propound it to you  
I refuse a gift
- 19 { I declare him consul  
I pay thee
- 20 { I free thee  
I endeavour this
- 21 { I desire this  
I labour about trifles
- 21 { I have leasure for trifles  
I am void of blame
- The place is empty.  
Use will teach the rest,

## XIX.

## §. XIX. Rule, Of the Infinitive mood.

Of the Infinitive mood.

Verbs of the Infinitive mood are put after Verbs or Adjectives; as,  
Ponticus, wilt thou be made rich? Thou must desire nothing.

And

- Do tibi literas, i.e. ut ad aliquem feram  
 10 Mitto ad te literas, i. e. ut legas  
 Fænero, tibi, i.e. do ad usuram.  
 11 Fæneror ab te, i.e. accipio ad usuram  
 12 Laboro { febrī  
               de salute publicā  
 Metuo, Timreo, tē, vel à te, i.e. nē mibi noceas  
 13 Formido, tibi, vel de te, i. e. sollicitus sum.  
 14 Memini tui, te, de te  
 15 Potior urbis. Potior voto  
 16 Recipio { tibi, i.e. promitto  
               te, i.e. accipio  
               domum i.e. confero  
 17 Refero { tibi, i.e. narro  
               ad te, i.e. propono  
 18 Renuntio { muneri, i.e. recuso  
               consulem, i.e. declaro  
 19 Solvo { tibi, i. e. satisfacio  
               te, i. e. libero  
 20 Studeo { huic, i.e. operam do  
               hoc, i.e. cupio  
               nugis, i. e. operam do  
 21 Vaco { ad nugas, i. e. otium habeo  
               culpā, i.e. careo  
               Vacat locus.

Cætera docebit usus.

## §. XIX. Regula, De Infinitivo modo.

XIX.

- 1, I. Verba Infinita quibusdam tum Verbis tum  
 2, Adjectivis subjiciuntur; ut,  
 Vis fieri dives, Pontice ? nil cupias.

De Infinitivo]  
modo.

Et

And he was worthy to be loved.

Bold to endure all things. Enduring to be called.

1 Obs. They have an Accusative case before them in stead of a Nominative; as, *I bid thee to go hence.*

*I bid thee be in good health.*

Which may be resolved by *that*; as, *I bid that thou go hence. I am glad that thou art in good health.*

2 Obs. They have like cases before and after them; as, *An Hypocrite desireth to seem just.*

Nature hath granted to all men to be happy, if any knew how to use it.

3 Obs. They are sometimes put absolutely by an Ellipsis; as,

That these villanies should be committed, i.e. It is fit  
The Lamb trembled, i.e. Begun to tremble.

## XX.

## §. XX. The Rule of the Gerunds.

Of the Gerunds in

**G**erunds and Supines will have such a case as the Verbs that they come of; as,

*We must use age. To hear a sermon.*

And they are as it were Nouns of both Numbers :

These in  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Di} \\ \text{Dum} \\ \text{Do} \end{array} \right\}$  of the  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Genitive} \\ \text{Accusative} \\ \text{Ablative} \end{array} \right\}$  Case,

as  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{An occasion of studying.} \\ \text{Fit to study.} \\ \text{Weary with studying.} \end{array} \right\}$

Hence is it that,

## XXI.

Di.

1 The Gerund in *Di* may be used after certain Substantives and Adjectives that govern a Genitive case; as,

*There is no place for telling.*

*The wicked love of having.*

*Certain of going. Skilfull in darting.*

1 Obs.

Et erat tum dignus amari.

*Audax omnia perpeti. Patiens vocari.*

1 *Obs.* Pro Nominativo Accusativum ante se statunt; ut, Jubeo te abire.

Gaudeo te bene valere.

Atque resolvuntur per quoddam & ut; ut, Jubeo, ut tu abeas. Gaudeo, quod tu bene valeas.

2 *Obs.* Utrunque eisdem casus habent; ut,

*Hypocrita cupit videri iustus, vel se videri iustum.*

*Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit, si quis cognoverit uti.*

3 *Obs.* Ponuntur interdum absolute per *Ellipsin*;

*Hæcine fieri flagitia?*

i. e. *decer.*

*Agnus trepidare?*

i. e. *cœpit.*

## §. XX. Regula, De Gerundiis.

XX.

**G**erundia & Supina regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut,

De Gerundiis in

*u. end. meſt ætate. Auditum concionem.*

Et se habent ut nomina utriusque numeri.

1.  $\left. \begin{array}{l} Di \\ Dum \\ Do \end{array} \right\} \text{tanquam} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Genitivi} \\ \text{Accusativi} \\ \text{Ablativi} \end{array} \right\} \text{Casus.}$

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Occasio studendi.} \\ \text{Aptus ad studendum.} \\ \text{F. ſus ſtudento.} \end{array} \right\}$

Hinc est quoddam

1 Gerundia in *Di* pendent à quibusdam tum Substantivis tum Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus; **XXI.**

ut,

*Non est narrandi locus.*

*Amor ſcleratus habendi.*

*Certus cundi. Peritus jaculandi.*

R

1 *Obs.*

1 *Obs.*

1. *Obs.* This Gerund is often joyned with a Genitive case plural ; as,

*For the cause of seeing them.*

*Leave off getting apples.*

*Liberty of encreasing new Comedies.*

2. *Obs.* The Infinitive mood is sometimes put instead of this Gerund ; as,

*Skilful to beal.*

## XXII.

*Do,*

2. Gerunds in *Do* be used with one of these Prepositions ; *A, ab, abs, de, è ex, cum, in, pro* ; as,

*Idle boyes are quickly frightened from learning.*

*The manner of right writing is joyned with speaking.*

1. *Obs.* Sometimes they are used without a Preposition ; as,

*We learn by teaching.*

## XXIII.

*Dum,*

3. The Gerund in *Dum* is used after one of these Prepositions, *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter* ; as,

*In supper while bee merry.*

*Christ dyed to redeem us.*

1. *Obs.* When you have this English *must* or *ought*, it may bee put in the Gerund in *Dum*, with the Verb *est*, and a Dative case exprest or understood ; as,

*I must go hence, we ought to pray*, that there may bee a sound minde in a sound body.

N. B. Gerunds are often turned into participials in *Dus*, which agree with their Substantives ; as ;

*In reading old Authors* thou shalt profit.

It is the next to theft to be drawn on by a reward to accuse men.



1 Obs. Hoc Gerundium sæpissime conjungitur Genitivo plurali; ut,

*Illorum videndi gratiâ.*

*Licentia diripiendi pomorum.*

*Crescendi copia novarum.*

2. Obs. Infinitivus aliquando loco hujus Gerundii ponitur; ut,

*Peritus medicari.*

XXII.

2. Gerundia in *De* pendent ab his Præpositionibus; *A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro;* ut,

*De;*

*Ignavi à discendo citò deterrentur.*

Rectè scribendi ratio *cum loquendo* conjuncta est.

1 Obs. Ponuntur & absque Præpositione; ut,

*Docendo discimus.*

XXIII.

3. Gerundia in *Dum* pendent ab his Præpositionibus; *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter;* ut,

*Dum;*

*Inter cœnandum hilares este.*

*Christus moriebatur propter nos redimendum.*

1 Obs. Cùm significatur necessitas, ponuntur citra Præpositionem, addito Verbo *est*, cum Dativo expresso vel subintellecto; ut,

*Abeundum est mihi. Orandum est, ut sic mens sana in corpore sano.*

N. B. Sæpe vertuntur Gerundia in Participialia in *Dus*, quæ suis Substantivis conveniunt; ut,

*Legendis veteribus proficies.*

*Ad Accusandos homines duci præmio proximum latrocinio est.*

## XXIV.

## §. XXIV. Rule, Of Supines.

Of the  
Supines,

1773

I. **T**He first *Supine* is put after Verbs and Participles that betoken *moving to a place*; as,  
*They come to look on.*

*Why goest thou about to undo thy self.*

1 *Obs.* But these have a motion scarce discernable.

*I set to sale. I bestow my Daughter to be married.*

2 *The Poets say, I go to visit. I go to see.*

## XXV.

\*,

II. The latter *Supine* is put after Nouns Adjectives, as, *Easie to be done. unhoneſt to be spoken.*

## XXVL

## §. XXVI. Rule, Of Time.

Of Time.

**N**Ouns are commonly used,  
1. In the *Ablative* case, which betoken part of time; i. e. with answer to *when*; as,  
*No man is wise at all hours.*

*Thou wakeſt in the night, and sleepeſt in the day.*

2. In the *Accuſative* case, which signifie continual term of Time, without ceasing or intermiſſion; i. e. with answer to the question *how long*? as,

*Thou sleepeſt the whole winter.*

*Black Pluto's Gate lieth open night and day.*

1 *Obs.* Sometimes a Preposition is added; as,

*Three months ago. About three years. In a few daies. For a day. About that age. About that time*

## §. XXIV. Regula, De Supinis

XXIV.

I. **P**rius Supinum sequitur Verbum aut Participium significans motum ad locum; ut, *Spektatum veniunt?*

De Supinis  
um,

Cur te is perditum.

1. *Obs.* Illa verò, *Do venum, do filiam nuptum*, latentem habent motum.

2. Poëtice dicunt, *Eo visere. Vado videre.*

II. Posterius Supinum sequitur nomina Adjectiva;

XXV.

*Facile factum. Turpe dictum.*

",

## §. XXVI. Regula. De Tempore.

XXVI.

**F**requentius usurpantur

1. In Ablativo, quæ significant partem temporis, i. e. quando? ut, De tempore.

*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.*

*Nocte vigilas, luce dormis.*

2. In Accusativo, quæ durationem temporis denotant, i. e. quamdiu? ut,

*Hiemem totam stertis.*

*Noctes atque dies patet atri janua Ditis.*

1. *Obs.* Interdum additur Præpositio; ut,

*Ante tres menses Per tres annos. In paucis diebus.*

*Circa id ætatis. Id tempus per vel sub.*

## XXVII. §. XXVII. Rule. Of space or distance of place.

Of space.

**N**Ouns that betoken space between place and place be commonly put in the Accusative case, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,

Depart not a *foot-breadth* from a good conscience.  
They are not *many paces* one from another.

## XXVIII §. XXVIII. Rule. Of Nouns of Place.

Of Place.

**N**Ouns of place, when they follow a Verb that signifieth action or motion,

1, *In* a place, *to* a place, *from* a place, or *by* a place (if they be Nouns Appellatives, or proper names of great places) be put with a Preposition; as,

He is *in the Market*.

I live *in England*. He went hence to the *Church*.

He came *through France* into *Italy*.

He is gone *out of the Town*.

1. *Obs.* But sometimes the Preposition is understood; as, He went *to Italy*.

2. *In* a place or *at* a place, (if they be proper names of Cities or Towns) of the first or second Declension and the Singular number, be put in the Genitive case; But if of the third Declension or Plural Number, only in the Ablative; as,

What should I do *at Rome*.

He lived *at London*.

He was born *at Athens*.

I being unconstant love *Tibur at Rome*, and *Rome at Tibur*.

3. *To* a place (if they be proper names) are put in the Accusative case; as,

I go *to London* to buy wares.

I went *to Cambridge*.

4. *From*

## §. XXVII. Regula, De Spacio Loci. XXVII.

**S**pacium loci in Accusativo effertur, interdum & De spacio;  
in Ablativo ; ut,

A rectâ conscientiâ transversum *pedem* nè discedas.  
Nec *Multis* inter se *passibus* absunt.

## §. XXVIII. Regula, De Loco. XXVIII

**N**omina loci cûm apponuntur Verbis significan. De Loco.  
tibus actionem aut motum ,

1. *In loco, ad locum, à loco, aut per locum* (si sint  
nomina Appellativa, vel nomina majorum locarum)  
adduntur ferè cûm præpositione, ut, *In foro* versan-  
tur.

*Vivo in Angliâ. Ad Templum* abiit.

*Venit per Galliam in Italiâ.*

*Profectus est ex oppido.*

1 *Obs.* Sed omittitur aliquando Præpositio ; ut,  
*Italiâ* petiit.

2. *In loco aut ad locum* (si sint propria nomina Ur-  
bium aut oppidorum) primæ vel secundæ Declinati-  
onis & singularis Numeri, Genitivum; sin tertiæ  
Declinationis & pluralis duntaxat Numeri, Ablati-  
vum admittunt; ut,

*Quid Romæ* faciam?

*Londini* vixit.

*Athenis* natus est.

*Romæ Tibur* amo ventosus, *Tibure* Romam.

3. *Ad locum* (si sint propria) ponuntur in Accu-  
sativo; ut,

Eo *Londinum* ad merces emendas.

Concessi *Cantabrigiam*.

4 From a places or by a place\* (if they be proper names) are put in the Ablative case, as,

He *went* by London to Cambridge.

He *went* from London.

*Obj.* *Humilis, militia, bellum, domus*, and *rus* do follow the rules of proper names of Cities or Towns; as,

We live together at home, and in the wars.

He was brought up in the Country.

I will go into the Country.

Go home.

He is returned out of the Country.

He is newly got from home.

XXIX.

§. XXIX. Rule, Of government of Impersonals.

Of Impersonals,  
I Active.

I. Impersonals of the Active voice govern

1. A Genitive case, viz. *Interest, refert*, and *est* for *intere est*; as, *It concerneth all men to do well*

*It much concerneth a Christian Common-wealth,*  
*that the Bishop be learned and pious.*

1 *Obj.* Except these Ablative cases, *Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra* and *cuius*; as,

*It is expedient to thee to know thy self.*

*It little concerneth you.*

2 *Obj.* *Est* in such clauses as these, is put for *licet* after the Greek fashion; viz.

*You may see.*

*Nor is it for any man to deceive you.*

II. A Dative, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert*, &c which be put acquisitively; as,  
*It is not lawful for any man to sin.*

*It is better for me to dye manfully, than to live with dishonour.*

*I am resolved to run all hazards*

III. An Accusative, 1. Only, viz. *Juvat, deest, delectat, oportet*; as, *It becometh not men to scold like women,*

2 With

4 *A loco aut per locum (si sint propria) ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,*

*Profectus est Londino (vel per Londinum) Cantabrigiam. Discessit Londino.*

*Obs. Humus, militia, bellum, domus & rursus, propriorum sequuntur formam; ut,*

*Domi bellicque simul vivimus.*

*Rur e educatus est.*

*Ego us ibo,*

*Ite domum.*

*Rur e reversus est.*

*Nuper domo exiit.*

§.XXIX. Regula, De regimine Impersonalium.

XXIX.

I. Impersonalia activæ vocis regunt

De Impersonalibus,  
I Activæ.

1. Genitivum, viz. *Interest, refert, & est* pro *esse* est; ut, *Interest omnium rectè agere.*

*Refert multum Christianæ Re. publicæ, Episcopos doctos & pios esse*

1 *Obs. Præter ablativos, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ & casû, ut,*

*Tuâ refert te ipsum nōsse.*

*Vestrâ parvi interest.*

2 *Obs. Est in hujusmodi clausulis ponitur pro licet ad imitationem Græcorum; viz.*

*Videre est.*

*Neque est te fallere cuique.*

II. Dativum, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, &c.* quæ acquisitivè ponuntur; ut,

*Peccate nemini licet.*

*Emori per virtutem mihi præstat, quàm per dedecus vivere.*

*Stat mihi casus renovare omnes.*

III. Accusativum, i. solum, viz. *Juvat, decet, delectat, oportet;* ut, *Dedecet viros muliebriter rixari.*

2 Cum

2 With the Prepositiō *ad*, viz. *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, as  
*It belongeth to thee. It belongeth to all men to live well*

3 With a Genitive, viz. *Pavet et, tædet, miseret,*  
*miserescit pudet, piget*, as,

*It repenteth everyone of his own estate.*

*It irketh me of my life.*

II. Passives.

II. Impersonals of the Passive voice have such cases as other Verbs Passive have; as,

*Neither is there sowing nor mowing there for mee.*

*He is gone to Athens. They slept all night.*

*The enemies fought stoutly.*

1 Obs. Yet many times the case is not express; as

*What do they in the School? they ply their books.*

### Chap. 6.

XXX.

§XXX. Rule. Of the government of Participles.

6 Of Participles.

**P**articiples govern such cases as the Verb that they come of; as, *Like to enjoy his Friends.*

*Taking order for thee. Called the seven wise men.*

1 Obs. But when they be changed into Nouns, they will have a Genitive case; as,

*Greedy of another mans goods. Most desirous of thee*

2 Obs. Participles in *Dus* will have a Dative case; as, *He is to bee earnestly entreated by me.*

3 Obs. *Exosus* and *Perosus* having the active signification, will have an Accusative case; as,

*Hating cruelty.*

But having the Passive, a Dative; as,

*Hated of God and good men.*

4 Obs. *Pertæsus* will have a Genitive or an Accusative case; as, *Wearry of wedlock. Wearry of his sluggishness*

5 Obs. *Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus*, will have an Ablative case; as,

*O thou that art born of a Goddes!*

*A good woman come of good Parents.*

*Of what blood is he come?*



deffat, as  
live well  
miseret,  
luch ca-  
for mee.  
rest; as  
ooks.

1. Cum Præpositione, ad; viz. *Attinet, pertinet, spectat,*  
α. *Ad te attinet. Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.*

3. Cum Genitivo, viz. *Ponit, tædet, miseret,*  
*miserescit, pudet, piget; ut,*

*Sux quemcumque fortuna præbitet.*

*Tædet me vita.*

luch ca-  
for mee.

II. Impersonalia passivæ vocis similes cum perso- 3 Passivis.  
nalibus passivis casus obviunt; ut,

*Mihi istic nec feritur, nec metitur.*

*Itur Athenas. Dormitur totam noctem.*

*Ab hostibus constanter pugnatur.*

rest; as  
ooks.

1 Obs. Sed & horum casus interdum non expri-  
muntur; ut, *Quid agitur in ludo literario? Studetur.*

iciples.  
rb thar  
ds.  
se-men-  
ns, they  
of tbee  
e case;  
e signi-

Cap. 6.

XXX. Regula, De Regimine Participiorum.

XXX.

**P**articipia regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut,  
*Fruiturus amicis.*

6. Participiorum.

*Consulens tibi. Septem vocati sapientes.*

1 Obs. Sed cum sunt nomina Genitivum possu-  
lant; ut,

*Alieni appetens. Cupientissimus tui,*

2 Obs. Quæ in Duo verò Dativum, ut,

*Mihi exorandus est.*

3 Obs. *Exosus* & *perosus* activè significantia regunt  
Accusativum; ut,

*Exosus sævitiam.*

Passivè verò Dativum; ut,

*Exosus Deo & sanctis.*

accusa-  
islozeis  
reatus,

4 Obs. *Pertasus* nunc Genitivum, nunc Accusativum  
regit, ut, *Pertasus thalami. Pertasus ignaviam suam,*

5 Obs. *Natus, prognatus, factus, cretus, creatus, ortus,*  
*editus,* in Ablativum feruntur; ut,

*Nate Deū.*

*Bona bona prognata Parentibus.*

*Quo sanguine cretus?*

The

6. Peri-

6 The words put in stead of a Verb by way of circumlocution, do sometimes govern the Case of the Verb; as, *Hee doth earnestly minde that.*

*Do you perswade me to that?*

XXXI.

# Chap 7. §. XXXI. Rule, Of the Government of Adverbs.

## I Of Adverbs which govern cases.

7. Adverbs  
I With  
Case.

**A**dverbs govern  
I. A Nominative case, viz. *Essee*, and *Esee* behold, being Adverbs of Shewing; as,  
*Behold Priam. Loe two Altars.*

1 *Obs.* But being Adverbs of upbraiding, they will have an Accusative, as,

*See his habit or fashion. Look thou the other fellow.*

II. A Genitive, viz. Adverbs of quantity, time, and place; as, *In what Country. To what Land. At that time. An abundance of tales. Words enough.*

*Part of the men.*

1 *Obs.* So also *E.gò* for *causa*; as, *For his sake.*

2 *Obs.* *Pridie* the day before, and *Postridie* the day after, will have a Genitive or an Accusative case, as,  
*The day before that day. The day after the Kalends.*

3 *Obs.* *Minimè gentium* in no wise, is a proper phrase, or manner of speech.

III. A Dative, viz. such as bee derived of Nouns that govern a Dative case, as, *He came to meet him. He singeth like him. Heliverth unprofitable to himself.*

1 *Obs.* These Datives bee used Adverbially, *Temporè* betime, *lucè* by day, *vesperè* at even, as,

*We must rise betime. We must go to bed at even. Wee must take pains by day.*

IV. An Accusative case of the preposition they be come of; as, *Nearer the City. Next to Spain.*

N. B. Plàs

6 Periphrasis etiam verbi aliquando regit casum ipsius; ut.

*Id studiose operam dat. i. e. curat :*

*Idne estis autores mihi ? i. e. id suadetis.*

Cap. 7. §. XXXI. *Regula, De Regimine Adverbiorum.* XXXI.

I *De Adverbiis quæ casus regunt.*

**A**dverbia regunt.

I. Nominativum, viz. *En, & Ecce*, demonstrandi; ut *En Priamus. Ecce duo altaria.*

7. Adverbi-  
orum.

I Cum

Casu,

I *Obs.* Exprobantis verò Accusativo junguntur; ut, *En habitum : Ecce alterum.*

II. Genitivum, viz. Adverbia loci, temporis; & quantitatis; ut, *ubi gentium. Quo terrarum. Tunc temporis. Abundi fabularum. Satis verborum. partim virorum.*

I. *Obs.* Sic & ergo pro causa; ut, *illius ergo.*

2. *Obs.* Pridie & Postridie Genitivum aut Accusativum regunt; ut, *Pridie ejus diei.*

*Postridie Kalendas, sive Kalendarum.*

3 *Obs.* Minime gentium peculiaris phrasis est.

III. Dativum, viz. quæ derivantur à Nominibus Dativum regentibus; ut, *Venit obviam illi.*

*Canit similiter huic. Sibi inutiliter vivit.*

I *Obs.* Sunt & hi Dativi, Adverbiales, *Tempori, luci, vesperi*, ut.

*Tempori surgendum. Vesperi cubandum.*

*Luci laborandum.*

IV. Accusativum Præpositionis unde sunt prosecta; ut, *Propius urbem. Proximè Hispaniam.*

N. B. Plus

N. B. *Plus, minus, amplius*, will have a Nominative, a Genitive, a Dative, and an Ablative case; as,  
*Above three hundred wagons : Above fifty men :  
 Above half a mile : More than that.*

## 2. Of Adverbs, which govern Moods.

2 With a Mood.

1. **U**bi when, *postquam* after that, *cum* when, do govern an Indicative; as, *when I shall sacrifice an heifer for my fruits, come thou.*  
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *when I sung of Kings, and warres, Apollo pulled mee by the ear.*
2. *Donec* until, governs an Indicative; as, *until he had to fold the sheep and count them.*  
 Or a Subjunctive; as *untill that water which thou hast set on, be boyled.*  
*Donec* as long as, an Indicative; as,  
*As long as I was safe.*
3. *Dum* whilst, or as long as, governs an Indicative; as, *whilst the maid is making ready.*  
*As long as thou doest what becometh thee.*  
*Dum* so that, or until, doth govern a Subjunctive, as, *So that I may profit thee.*  
*until the third Summer shall see him reigning in Italy.*
4. *Quoad* as long as, governs an Indicative; as,  
*As long as thou expectest thy Chamber-fellow,*  
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *As long as I could.*  
*Quoad* until doth govern a Subjunctive; as,  
*I will keep all things safe till the Army bee sent hither.*
5. *Simulac & Simulatque* as soon as, do govern an Indicative; as, *As soon as hee was able to abide war.*  
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *As soon as his age waxed ripe.*
6. *Quemadmodum* as, *ut* as, *utrumque* as, *sicut* as, do govern

N. B. *Plus, minùs, ampliùs*, Nominativo, Genitivo, Accusativo & Ablativo junguntur; ut,  
*Plus trecenta vehicula. Plus quinquaginta hominum.*  
*Plus quingentos passus. Plus eo.*

## 2. De *Adverbiis*, quæ *Modos* regunt.

1. **U**bi, *postquam*, & *cum*, Indicativum regunt; <sup>2</sup> Cum <sup>3</sup> Modo.  
 ut, *Cum faciam vitulâ* pro frugibus, ipse venio.

Et Subjunctivum; ut,

*Cum canerem* Reges, & prælia, Citharus autem vellit.

2. *Donec* pro *quousque* regit Indicativum; ut,

Cogere *donec* oves stabulis numerumque; referre *jussit*

Aut Subjunctivum; ut,

*Donec* ea aqua, quam adjeceris, *decocta sit*.

*Donec* pro *quamdiu* regit Indicativum; ut,

*Donec* eram *sospes*.

3. *Dum* de re imperfectâ, regit Indicativum; ut,

*Dum* apparatur virgo.

*Dum* quodque dignum est *facis*.

*Dum* pro *quamdiu*, *dummodo*, & *donec*, regit Subjunctivum; ut, *Dum* *prosim* tibi.

Tertia *dum* Latio regnantem *viderit* estas.

4. *Quoad* pro *quamdiu*, Indicativum regit; ut,

*Quoad* expectes contubernalem.

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, *Quoad* *possem* & *liceret*.

*Quoad* pro *donec* regit Subjunctivum; ut,

Omnia integra servabo, *quoad* exercitus huc *miratur*.

5. *Simulac*, *Simulatque* Indicativum regunt; ut,

*Simulac* belli patiens erat.

Vel Subjunctivum; ut, *Simulatque* *adoleverit* ætas.

6. *Quemadmodum*, ut, *utcumque*, *sicut*, regunt Indicativum;

vern an Indicative; as, *As thou saluteſt, ſo ſhalt thou be ſaluted again.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *As thou ſhalt ſow, ſo ſhalt thou reap.*

It after that, doth govern an Indicative; as,  
*After that they came into the City*

7 *Quaſi* as, *cen* as, *tanquam* as, *perinde acſi* like as,  
*Haud ſecus acſi*, no otherwiſe than as, do govern a Subjunctive; as,

*As though we knew not our ſelves among our ſelves.*  
And theſe alſo couple like caſes; as,

*I knew the man even as thy ſelf.*

*He ſmileth on me as on a friend,*

8 *Nē* not, an Adverb of Forbidding, doth govern an Imperative; as, *Be not ſo wick.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *This is a great knave, do not fear him.*

XXXII. Chap. 8. §. XXXII. Rule, Of the Government of Conjunctions.

I Of Conjunctions which do couple Words.

§ Of Conjunctions which do couple.

**C**onjunctions Copulatives and Diſjunctives, and theſe four *quā, niſi, praterquam, an*, do couple like caſes, and moſt commonly like moods and tenſes; as, *The night, and love, and wine* do perſwade no moderate thing.

*He is younger than thou art.*

*He pleaſeth no body but himſelf.*

*Peter and John did pray and preach in the Temple,*

I *Obſ.* But oftentimes ſome particular reaſon of words, requireth divers caſes, moods and tenſes; as,

*I bought a book for an hundred aſſes and more.*

*I lived at Rome and at Venice.*

*I gave thee thanks, and will do ſo whilſt I live.*

2 *Obſ.*

rum; ut, *Ut salutabis, ita & resalutaberis.*

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, *ut sementem feceris, ita & metes.*

*ut postquam* Indicativum regit; ut,

*ut ventum est in Urbem.*

7 *Quasi, & ut, tanquam, perinde ac si, haud secus ac si,* regunt Subjunctivum; ut,

*Quasi non noverimus nos inter nos.*

Arque hæc copulant similes casus; ut,

*Novi hominem tanquam te.*

*Arridet mihi quasi amico.*

8 *Nè* Prohibendi Imperativum regit; ut,

*Nè sevis tantopere.*

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, *Hic nebulo magnus est,*

*nè metuas.*

Cap. 8 § XXXII. Regula. De Regimine  
*Conjunctionum.*

XXXII.

I De Conjunctionibus qua voces copulant.

**C**onjunctiones Copulativæ & disjunctivæ, Cum his quatuor, *quàm, nisi, præterquam, an,* similes omnino casus, & aliquoties similes modos & tempora conglutinant; ut, *Nox, & Amor, vinumq;* nihil moderabile suadent.

8 De Conjunctionibus. I. qua copulant.

*Est minòr natu quàm tu.*

*Nemini, nisi sibi, placet.*

*Petrus & Joannes precabantur & docebant in templo*

1 *Obs.* Sæpe verò dictionum aliqua privata ratio diversos casus, modos & tempora postulat; ut,

*Emi librum centum & pluris.*

*Vixi Roma & Venetiis.*

*Tibi gratias egi, atque agam dum vivo,*

S

1 *Obs.*



3 *Obſ. cum* and *tum*, and *tum* being doubled, will couple like caſes; as,

He embraceth all learned men, but eſpecially *Marcellus*. He hateth both learning and virtue.

## 2. Of Conjunctions which govern Moods.

3 Govern  
Moods.

1 **E** *ſi* although, *tamenſi* although, *etiameſi* although, *quamquam* although, in the beginning of a Speech govern an Indicative; as,

*Though* no news was brought.

But in the middle of a Speech a Subjunctive: as,  
Thou blameſt me, *though thou haſt done* it thy ſelf.

2 *Quamvis* although, *licet* although, commonly do govern a Subjunctive; as,

*Though thou comeſt* thy ſelf.

3 *Ne* except, *ſi* unleſs, *ſi* it, *ſiquidem* if ſo be, *quod* that, *quia* becauſe, *quam* than, *poſtquam* after, *poſteaquam* after that, *ubi* for *poſtquam*, *nimquam* never, *priuſquam* before that, do

govern	{	An Indicative,	{	as	{	I am glad that thou	
		or,					
		Subjunctive,					

*Si* if, doth govern an Indicative; as,

*If thou beſt well*, it is well.

Or a Subjunctive; as, *If thou ſhalt deny*, thou ſhalt be whipt.

*Si* uſed for *quamvis* though, a Subjunctive: as,

No not *though ſhe intreat* me.

4 *Quando* ſeeing that, *quandoquidem* ſeeing that, *quoniam* becauſe, do govern an Indicative: as,

Say on, *ſeeing that wee ſit together* on the ſoft graſſe.

5 *Quippe* becauſe, doth govern an Indicative; as,  
*Becauſe he is ſick*.

*Quippe*



2 *Obs.* Cū & tum, item tum geminatum, similes casus copulant, ut,  
*Amplectitur Cū eruditos omnes, tum imprimis Marcellum. Odix tum literas, tum virtutem.*

## 2. De Conjunctionibus quæ modos Regunt.

1. **E** *Ts, tametsi, etiamsi, quanquam*, in principio orationis regunt Indicativum, ut,  
*Esti nihil novi afferebatur.* 3 Regunt Modos.

Sed in medio Orationis, Subjunctivum, ut,  
*Me culpas, etiamsi ipse feceris.*

2 *Quamvis, & licet* frequentius Subjunctivum regunt, ut,  
*Ipsæ licet venias.*

3 *Ne, nisi, si, siquidem, quod, quia, quā, postquam, posteaquam, ubi pro postquam, nunquam priusquam,*  
 regunt  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Indicativum,} \\ \text{aut,} \\ \text{Subjunctivum,} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ut,} \\ \text{(vel redieris) inco-} \\ \text{lumis, gaudeo.} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Indicativum; ut, Si vales, bene est.} \\ \text{\&} \\ \text{Subjunctivum: ut, Si negaveris, vapulabis} \end{array} \right.$

*Si pro quamvis Subjunctivum: ut,*  
*Non, si me obsecrer.*

4 *Quando, quandoquidem, & quoniam* regunt Indicativum: ut,

*Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consedimus herba.*

5. *Quippe* regit Indicativum: ut,

*Quippe egrotas.*

*Quippe* *qui* as he that, doth govern an Indicative;  
or Subjunctive, as,

*As he hath twice forsworn himself.*

*Qui*, when *quippe* is understood, signifying a Cause  
a Subjunctive; as,

Thou art a fool to believe this fellow, i. e. *because*  
thou believest.

6 *Cum* for *quam*: *Id* although, *quandoquidem* seeing  
that, *quoniam* because, govern a Subjunctive; as,  
Seeing thou art fit.

7 *Nē*, *in, num*, whether of asking, will have an In-  
dicative; as, *Whether is hee alive or no?*

Of doubting, a Subjunctive; as,

See *whether* hee be returned.

8 *U* to the end that, for *nē non* lest not, for *quan-*  
*quam* although, and *utpote* because, governs a Subjunc-  
tive, as, *to the end that* hee might be with you.

I am afraid he *cannot stand it out.*

*Though* all things fall out as I would.

*Because* thou hast deceived me so oft.

*Ut* for *postquam* after that, *quemadmodū* even as, *si-*  
*cut* as or used in asking, will have an Indicative; as,

*After that* I went from the City.

Go on to do, as thou doest.

*Like as* is his madness: How doth hee?

### Chap. 9. § XXXIII. Rule. Of the Govern- ment of Prepositions.

9 Of Prepo-  
sitions.

I. **T**hirty Prepositions govern an accusative  
case. viz.

- |                  |                           |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 To the Church, | 5 Towards thee;           |
| 2 At the market, | 6 On this side Thames     |
| 3 Before death,  | 7 On this side the River, |
| 4 Against two,   | 8 About the Town.         |

9 About

*Quippe qui*, Indicativum & Subjunctivum; ut,  
*Quippe qui bis pejeravit*, sive *pejeraverit*.

*Qui*, cum *quippe* subintelligitur, habens vim cau-  
 salem, Subjunctivum; ut,  
*Stultus es qui huic credas*.

6 *Cum* pro *quavis*, *quandoquidem*, & *quoniam*,  
 regit Subjunctivum; ut,  
*Cum sis aptus*.

7 *Nē*, *an*, *num*, Interrogandi regunt Indicativum;  
 ut, *Saperātne?*

Dubitandi, Subjunctivum; ut,  
*V. se num redierit*.

8 *Ut*, causalis, & pro *nē* *non*, pro *quanquam*, &  
*utpote*, Subjunctivum regit; ut,  
*Ut una esset tecum*.

*Metuo ut fuisset*.

*Ut omnia contingant*, quæ volo.

*Ut qui toties fecilleris*.

*Ut* pro *postquam*, *quemadmodum*, *sicut*, & Inter-  
 rogativum regit Indicativum; ut,

*Ut ab Urbe discessi*.

*Perge facere, ut facis*.

*Ut est dementia. Ut valet?*

### Cap. 9. §. XXXIII. Regula, De Regi- mine Præpositionum.

XXXIII

I. **T**riginta Præpositiones Accusativum regunt; 9 Præposi-  
 tionum.

1 *Ad Ecclesiam*

2 *Apud forum*

3 *Ante obitum*

4 *Adversus duos*

5 *Adversum te*

6 *Cis Tamesin*

7 *Citra fluvium*

8 *Circa oppidum*

S. 3

9 *Cir-*

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 9 About the hill             | 20 Through the plain fields |
| 10 About two thousand        | 21 Behinde the back         |
| 11 Against the prick         | 22 After death              |
| 12 Towards the people        | 23 Besides the Cottage      |
| 13 Without the house         | 24 For my neighbour         |
| 14 Betwixt the cup & the lip | 25 According to Aristotle   |
| 15 Within the house          | 26 By the water-courses     |
| 16 Below all men             | 27 Above his capacity       |
| 17 By the well               | 28 Beyond the Alps          |
| 18 For a reward              | 29 Towards London           |
| 19 In his power              | 30 Beyond the Indians       |

II. And twelve govern an Ablative case, viz.

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 From God          | 7 Concerning trifles |
| 2 From an enemy     | 8 Out of a well      |
| 3 Of any body       | 9 From an high Rock  |
| 4 Without mony      | 10 Before all things |
| 5 Before the Master | 11 Without bread     |
| 6 With loss.        | 12 For the poor      |

III. Five govern an accusative and an Ablative case.

1 Privy to his Father

- |                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 2 { Into the house        | 4 upon a stone    |
| { In the house            |                   |
| 3 { A little before night | 5 under the earth |
| { In the night            |                   |

6 So procul when it is a Preposition; as,  
 Far from the City. Far from the wall.  
 To which you may add Tenus up to; as,  
 Up to the privy parts.  
 up to the breast. up to the ears.

1 Obs. A Preposition is often understood; as,  
 I expect to day, or at the furthest to morrow.  
 He appeared in the shape of a man.

2 Obs.

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 9 Circum montem         | 20 Per Campos             |
| 10 Circiter duo millia  | 21 Pone tergum            |
| 11 Contra flumē         | 22 Post mortem            |
| 12 Erga populum         | 23 Præter casam           |
| 13 Extra aedes          | 24 Propter vicinum        |
| 14 Inter salicē & labrū | 25 Secundum Aristotelem   |
| 15 Intra domum          | 26 Secus decursus aquarum |
| 16 Infra omnes          | 27 Supra captum           |
| 17 Juxta fontem         | 28 Trans Alpes            |
| 18 Ob præmium           | 29 Londinum versis        |
| 19 Penes illum          | 30 ultra Indos            |

II. Duodecim vetō regunt Ablativum, viz.

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 A Deo            | 7 De nugis        |
| 2 Ab inimico       | 8 E fonte         |
| 3 Abs quovis       | 9 Ex altâ rupe    |
| 4 Absque pecuniâ   | 10 Pro omnibus    |
| 5 Coram Præceptore | 11 Sine Pane      |
| 6 Cum damno        | 12 Pro Pauperibus |

III. Quinque regunt Accusativum & Ablativum

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Clam { patrem<br>{ patre | 4 Super { lapidem<br>{ lapide |
| 2 In { testum<br>{ testō   |                               |
| 3 Sub { noctem<br>{ nocte  | 5 Subter { terram<br>{ terra  |

6. Item Procul quando fit Præpositio; ut,  
Procul urbem. Procul muro.

Quibus addas Tenus; ut,

Pube tenus.

Pectoribus tenus Aurium tenus.

1. Obs. Præpositio sæpe subauditur; ut,

Exspectat hodie, aut \* summum cras

Apparuit † humanâ specie.

S 4

\* ad.

† Sub

2 Obs.

3 Obs.

2 *Obs.* And oft times it is more than needs; as, *Ab-  
stain from vices. I will call my friends to this matter.*

3. *Obs.* A Preposition in Composition doth some-  
times govern the same case, which it governed being  
without composition; as;

*I pass by thee unsaluted. I leave my Office.*

4 *Obs.* These seem to be singular expressions; as  
*To go out of the doors.*

*To prevent the windes in running.*

XXXIV.

### Chap. 10 §. XXXIV. Rule, Of the Govern- ment of Interjections.

10 Inter-  
jections.

**C**ertain Interjections govern cases, viz.  
1 O of Exclamation, a Nominative, Accu-  
sative, and Vocative; as,

*O glad some day. O happy Husbandman. O pretty boy!*  
But of calling, a Vocative onely; as,

*Come hither O Galatée!*

2. *Heus*, and *obe*, a Vocative; as,

*O Syrus! Ho little Book!*

3 *Pro* and *Prob*, *ah* and *vah*, an Accusative and Vo-  
cative; as *O the faith of God and man!*

*O holy Jupiter! Ah me poor man! Ah the Inconstancy!*

*Alas unhappy maid! Oh you Villain!*

4 *Heu*, a Nominative, Dative, and Accusative, as,  
*Alas the Godliness. O the hated stock.*

*Alas for me poor man.*

5 *Hem* and *apage*, an Accusative; as, *Fy upon craft.*  
*See Davus for you. Away with such complements.*

6 *Hei* and *væ*, a Dative; as, *Wee is me.*  
*Wee be to thee.*

1 *Obs.* Interjections are often put without a case;  
as, *Alas, I am afraid.*

*What madness, with a mischief.*

2 *Obs.*

2 *Obs.* Sæpe verò redundat; ut; Abſtine à virtutis.  
Amicos ad vocabo ad hanc rem.

3 *Obs.* Præpoſitio in compoſitione eundem non-  
nunquam, caſum regit quem & extra compoſitionem  
regebat; ut,

*Prætereo te in ſalutatum. Deceſſo magiſtratu.*

4 *Obs.* Limen exire. Curſu prevenire ventos, &c.  
videntur ſingularia.

Cap 10. §. XXXIV. Regula, De Re-  
gimine Interjectionum.

XXXIV.

**Q**uædam Interjectionum regunt caſus, viz.

1 *O* Exclamantis, Nominativum, Accuſa-  
tivum, & Vocativum; ut,

10 Interje-  
ctionum.

*O feſtus dies! O fortunatos agros! O formoſe puer!*  
Vocantis verò Vocativum tantum; ut,

*Huc ades ô Galatæa.*

2 *Heus* & *obe*, Vocativum; ut,

*Heus Syre! Obe libelle!*

3 *Pro* & *proh*, *ah* & *vah*, Accuſativum & Vocati-  
vum; ut, *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem!*

*Proh ſancte Juniter! Ah me miſerum! Vah incon-  
ſtantiam! Ah virgo infelix! Vah ſcelus!*

4 *Heu*, Nominativum, Dativum, & Accuſativum; ut,

*Heu pietas. Heu ſerpem inviſam.*

*Heu miſero mihi.*

5 *Hem* & *apage*, Accuſativum; ut, *Hem aſtutias*

*Hem Davum tibi. Apage iſtiusmodi ſalutem.*

6 *Hei* & *væ* Dativum; ut, *Hei mihi.*

*Væ tibi.*

1 *Obs.* Interjectiones non rarò abſolutè & ſine ca-  
ſu ponuntur; ut,

*Hei vereor. Quæ malum dementia?*

2 *Obs.*

2 *Obs.* And they are often understood ; as,  
O mee poor wretch ! O the base prank !  
I think you wonder, *Sirs* !

## Chap. 11.

xxxv.

## §. XXXV. Rule. Of the Figures of a word.

Of Figures  
1 Of a  
Word.

**F**igure is a kinde of speaking on some new fashion; or, the altering of a word or speech from the usual manner of speaking, and that by authority of good writers.

Figure is  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ Of a word :} \\ \text{of two} \\ \text{sorts,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{which} \\ \text{belongs} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Etymology.} \\ \text{10} \\ \text{Syntaxis.} \end{array} \right.$

A Figure of a word (for that which belongs to Etymology) is that which any way changeth the form of a word; and these bee its chief kindes.

1 *Prosopesis*, is the putting a letter or syllable to the beginning of a word; as, *Gratus* for *natus*, *retuli* for *tuli*.

2 *Apharesis*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *Ruit* for *eruit*, *temere* for *contemere*.

3 *Epanthesis*, is the putting of a letter or syllable into the middle of a word; as, *Religio* for *religio*, *induperator* for *imperator*.

4 *Syncope*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the middle of a word, as, *Abiit* for *abivit*, *dixi* for *dixisti*.

5 *Paragoge*, is the putting of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *Dicier* for *dici*, *emorer* for *emori*.

6 *Apocope*, is the taking of a letter or syllable from the end of a word; as, *Ingeni* for *ingenii*.

7 *Dieresis*, the dividing of one syllable into two; as, *Aula* for *Aula*, *evoluisse* for *evoluisse*.

8 *Synaresis*,



3. *Obs.* Sepe etiam subintelliguntur; ut,  
*Me miserum ! Facinus indignum !*  
*Credo vos mirari, iudices !*

## Cap. II.

## §. XXXV. Regula, De Figuris dictionis XXXV.

De Figuris  
I. Dictionis.

**F**igura est novata arte aliqua dicendi forma; sive mutatio formæ dictionis aut orationis, à comuni loquendi consuetudine, idque bonorum scriptorum auctoritate.

Est autem  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{Dictionis :} \\ \text{Figura} \\ \text{duplex,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quæ} \\ 2. \text{Constructionis :} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Etymologica} \\ \text{Synaxi} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{accidit} \\ \text{ad} \end{array} \right.$   
**Figura Dictionis** (sive **Etymologica**) est quæ dictionis formam aliquo modo mutat; ejus hæ sunt præcipuæ species.

1. **Prothetesis**, (sive **adjectio**) est appositio literæ vel syllabæ ad principium dictionis; ut, *Gaatus* pro *natus*, *tetuli* pro *tuli*.

2. **Aphæresis**, (sive **detractio**) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ à principio dictionis; ut, *Ruit* pro *eruit*, *temnere* pro *contemnere*.

3. **Epenthesis**, (sive **insertio**) est interpositio literæ vel syllabæ, in medio dictionis; ut, *Religio* pro *reli-gio*, *induperator* pro *imperator*.

4. **Syncope** (sive **concisio**) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ à medio dictionis; ut, *Abiit* pro *abivit*, *Dixi* pro *dixisti*.

5. **Paragoge**, (sive **productio**) est appositio literæ vel syllabæ ad finem dictionis; ut, *Dicier* pro *dici*, *emorier* pro *emori*.

6. **Apocope**, (sive **abscissio**) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ à fine dictionis; ut, *Ingeni* pro *Iugeni*.

7. **Diæresis** (sive **divisio**) est divisio unius, syllabæ in duas; ut, *Aulæ* pro *aula*, *evoluisse* pro *evoluisse*.

3 Synæresis

8 *Synæresis*, is the contracting of two vowels into one syllable, which belong to two diverse syllables; as, *Thesēi* for *Thesēi Vēmens* for *vehemens*.

9 *Metatbesis*, is the mis-placing of a Letter or syllable; as, *Pistris* for *pristis*, a long Ship.

10 *Antithesis*, or *Antistichon*, is the putting of a letter for a Letter; as, *Olli* for *illi*.

11 *Tmesis*, is the parting of a compound word betwixt the parts whereof another is put; as, *Qua mihi canque placent*, What things soever please me.

12 *Enallage*, is the putting of the Parts of Speech or their Accidents one for another; as The people being as King i. e. ruling all abroad *Agnus trepidare* for *trepidabat*, The Lamb did tremble.

13 *Archaismus*, is an old fashion of speaking, which is now out of use; as, *Valde tonit* for *tonuit*, It thundered exceedingly. *Tam nulli consilii*. So void of counsel. *Operam abuti*. To bestow his labour to a wrong end.

14 *Metaplasmus*, is any change (at all) in a word; as, *Agreste* for *agrestis*.

## Chap. 12.

XXXVL

### §.XXXVI. Rule. Of the Figures of Construction

2 Of Construction.

**A** *Figure of Construction*, is that which any way changeth the frame of a Speech. Its kinds are,

1 *Appositio*, is the putting together of two or more Substantives in the same case; as, *The River Rhine. The City Athens. M. T. C.*

2 *Restrain generality*; as, *A living Creature, an Horse.*

3 *Take away equivocation*; as, *The Dog-star.*

4 *To attribute a propriety to one*; as, *Erasmus a man of most exact judgment.*

2 *Syllep-*

8 *Synæresis*, (sive *complexio*) est contractio duarum vocalium (quæ ad diversas syllabas pertinent) in unâ syllabam; ut, *Theſei*, pro *theſei*; *vemens* pro *vehemens*.

9 *Metathesis* (sive *trajeſtio*) est transpositio literæ vel syllabæ; ut, *Piſtris* pro *piſtis*.

10 *Aniſtheſis*, sive *Antiſtaſchon*, (sive *oppositio*) est positio literæ pro literâ; ut, *Olli* pro *illi*.

11 *Imeſis*, est defectio vocis compositæ, cujus partibus alia interponitur; ut, *Qua mihi cunq;e placet*.

12 *Enallage* (sive *Antimeria*) partes Orationis, earumque Accidentia alia pro aliis ponit; ut, *Populum latè Regem*, i. e. *regnantem*. *Agnus trepidare*, pro *trepidabat*.

13 *Archaïſmus*, est vetus & jam obſoletus loquendi mos; ut, *Valde tonit* pro *tonuit*. *Tam nulli conſilii*, pro *nullius conſilii*. *Operam abuti*.

14 *Metaplaſmus* (sive *transformatio*) est quævis mutatio vocis; ut, *Agreſſe* pro *Agreſti*.

## Cap. 12.

### § XXXVI. Regula, De Figuris Constructionis XXXV

**F**igura Syntaxeos sive Constructionis, est quæ orationis structura aliquo modo mutat. Ejus Species sunt

2 Constr-  
ctionis.

1 *Appositio*, est duorum vel plurium Substantivorum ejusdem casus conjunctio; ut, *Flumen Rhenus. Urbs Athenæ. M. T. C.*

Fit autem causâ { 1 Restringendæ generalitatis; ut, *Animal equus*.

2 Tollendæ æquivocationis; ut, *Canis astrum*.

3 Ad proprietatem attribuendam; ut, *Erasmus vir exactissimo judicio*.

2 Syllepsis

2. *Syllepsis*, is the comprehending of the more unworthy gender or person under the more worthy; as,  
*I and my brother are white. Mars and Venus, both being naked, lie tyed fast together in the snares*

3 *Prolepsis*, is a brief expression of things; as,  
*Two Eagles flew, this from the East, that from the West. The people live, some in want, some in delights. Bear ye one anothers burdens. Let both of us take an equal share.*

4 *Zeugma*, is the bringing back of one Verb or Adjective to diverse Suppositives, to one expressly, and to the other by supplying it; as,

*John was a Father, and Peter.*

*The Husband and the wife is angry.*

5 *Synchesis*, is a Speech which agreeth in sense, though not in words; as, *An armed nation fall on. We are both hurt. A brood-Goose. Two thousand slain.*

6 *Antiphrasis*, is the putting one case for another; as,  
*All kinde of elegancy: Are ye Authors of it?*

7 *Synecdoche*, is when that which belongs to a part, is spoken of the whole; as,

*A Black-moor having white teeth: Wounded in the forehead: Flowers that have the names of Kings written on them.*

8 *Ellipsis*, is the want of a word in a speech; as,  
*I remember that (I saw:)*

*I (thought) presently with my self.*

9 *Pleonasmus*, is the abounding of a word in a speech beyond any necessity of it; as,

*I saw it with these eyes.*

*I slaughtered him with his own sword.*

10 *Asyndeton*, is the want of Conjunctions in a speech; as, *It shall bee done, will thou, will thou: Eat, drink, play.*

11 *Polysyndeton*, is an over-plus of Conjunctions in a speech; as,

2 *Syllepsis*, est comprehensio indignioris generis vel personæ sub digniore; ut,

*Ego & frater sumus candidi.*

*Mars & Venus, impliciti laqueis, nudus uterq; jacet.*

3 *Prolepsis*, est pronuntiatio quædam rerum summaria; ut, *dua aquila volaverunt, hæc ab Oriente, illa ab Occidente. Populus vivit, alii in penuriâ, alii in deliciis. Alter alterius onera portate.*

*Curemus æquam uterque partem.*

4 *Zengma*, est Verbi vel Adjectivi, ad diversa supposita reductio, ad unum quidem expressè, ad alterum vero per supplementum; ut,

*Joannes fuit Piscator & Petrus.*

*Maritus & uxor est irata.*

5 *Synchæsis*, est Oratio congrua sensu non voce; ut,

*Gens armati runt.*

*uterque læsi sumus. Anser fœta. Duo millia cæsi.*

6 *Antiptosis*, est positio casus pro casu; ut, *Omne genus elegantiss, i. e. omnis generis. Idne estis auctores, i. e. ejus.*

7 *Synecdoche* est, cum id quod partis est, attribuitur toti; ut *Æthiops albus dentes, Saucius frontem, vel fronte. Flores inscripti nomina Regum.*

8 *Ellipsis* est, defectio vocis in Oratione; ut,

*Memini \* videre, i. e. \* me.*

*Ego continuo \* mecum, i. e. \* cogitabam.*

9 *Pleonasmus*, est abundantia vocis in oratione supra necessitatem; ut,

*Vidi hunc oculis.*

*Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.*

10 *Asyndeton*, est conjunctionum in Oratione defectus; ut *Velis, nolis, fiet.*

*Ede, bibe, lude.*

11 *Polyasyndeton*, est Conjunctionum in Oratione redundantia; ut,

*Somnus,*

Sleep, and wine, and good chear, and whores, and baths, do weaken mens bodies and mindes.

12 *Anastrophe*, is when a Preposition is set before its case; as,

The command is in thy power.

13 *Synchysis*, is a confused order of words; as,

1 2 3 4 5  
For it is bad for such as have bleared-eyes and raw  
6 7  
stomacks to play at ball.

14. *Hypallage*, is a placing of words contrariwise; as,

To commit the South-windes to the Ships.

15 *Hellenismus*, is a going from the Latine use to imitate the Greeks; as,

Do not fight against two.

The rest which belong rather to the handsonings, than the making of a Speech, are to be sought for among the Rhetoricians.

Somnus, & vinum, & epulæ, & scorta, & balnea corpora atque animos enervant.

12 *Anastrophe*, est cum Præpositio suo casui postponitur; ut,

*Te pendens imperium.*

13 *Synchysis*, est ordo Verborum confusus; ut,

<sup>1</sup> Namque <sup>7</sup> pilâ <sup>3</sup> lippis <sup>2</sup> inimicum <sup>4</sup> & <sup>6</sup> ludere <sup>5</sup> crudis.

14 *Hypallage*, est mutua casuum permutatio; ut,

*Dare classibus Austros.*

15 *Hellenismus*, sive *Gracismus* est recessus à Latina consuetudine in imitationem Græcorum; ut,

*Noli pugnare duobus, i. e. contra duos.*

Cæteræ, quæ ad ornatum magis Orationis, quam structuram ejus spectant, à Rhetoricis inquirendæ sunt.



## BOOK. IV. OF PROSODIE

IV.  
Profodie,

treateth of

**P**ROSODIE is the fourth part of Grammar, which teacheth the *right pronunciation* of words. A *right pronunciation* is that which observeth in every word, the Spirit, Tone, and time of the Syllables.

Profodia therefore teacheth } *1 Of the Spirits.*  
  } *2 Of the Tones or Accents* } Chap. 1.  
  } *3 Of the time or Quantity of Sylla-*  
  } *bles, Chap. 2, 3.*

### Chap. 1. Of Spirits and Tones, or Accents.

1 Spirits.

**1** A Spirit is the manner of uttering of a syllable with a breath; And it is

{ Sharp, with which a syllable is sharply uttered; as, *Hamus, homo.*  
Gentle or flat, with which a syllable is gently pronounced; as, *Amo, omni.*

2 Tones.

**2** A Tone, or Accent is the manner of pronouncing a syllable by lifting it up, or letting it down; as, *Probitatem vituperare.*

There  
be  
three  
sorts of  
Accents

1 An *Acute*, which sharpneth or lifteth up a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke ascending towards the right hand ( ' )  
2 A *Grave*, which flatteth or letteth down a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke descending towards the right hand ( ` )  
3 A *Circumflex*, which uttereth a syllable with a longer stay, lifting it up as the *Acute*, and letting it down as the *Grave* Accent, and it is marked with a figure made of an *Acute* and *Grave* ( ^ )

There



## LIB. IV.

## DE PROSODIA,

**P**ROSODIA est quarta pars Grammatices, quæ rectam vocum pronuntiationem tradit.

IV.  
Prosodia.

Recta pronuntiatio est, quæ observatur in unaquâque voce Spiritum, Tonum, & Tempus Syllabarum.

Dicendum } 1 Spiritibus, &  
ergo in } 2 Tono, sive Accentibus } Cap. 1.  
Prosodiâ de } 3 Tempore sive Quantitate Syllabarum  
Cap. 2, 3.

agit de

## Cap. 1.

## De Spiritibus &amp; Tonis, sive Accentibus

1 **S**piritus est ratio proferendi syllabam cum Spiritu, } **Asper**, quo asperè proferitur 1 Spiritibus.  
estque vel } **Lenis**, quo syllaba leniter proferitur; ut, *Amo, omnis*.

2 **Tonus** sive **Accentus** est ratio pronuntiandi syllabam, eandem elevando vel deprimendo; ut, *Præbitatem vituperare*.

Est autem Accentus triplex, } 1 **Acutus**, qui syllabam acuit, sive attollit, & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dextram ascendente ( ' )  
} 2 **Gravis**, qui syllabam gravat sive deprimat, & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dextram descendente ( ' )  
} 3 **Circumflexus**, qui syllabam longiori morâ effert; pariter attollens cum Acuto, & deprimens cum Gravi, & signatur notâ ex Acuto & Gravi conflatâ ( ^ )

T 2

TONORUM

There be three Rules of Tones or Accents.

1 A word of one syllable being short or long by Position, hath an *Acute* Accent; as, *Mél, párs*: but if it be long by Nature, it is Circumflected; as, *Spés, flós*.

2 In a word of two syllables, if the first be long by Nature, and the latter short, the first is Circumflected; as, *Lána, mása*; but otherwise it hath an *Acute*; as, *Bónus, Déus, sólers*.

3 A word of many syllables, having the last syllable save one long, when a long syllable followeth, it hath an *Acute* in the last syllable save one; as, *Libértas*; but when a short syllable followeth, it hath a Circumflex in the last syllable save one; as, *Amáre, Romárus*.

But if it hath the last syllable save one short, the syllable before the last save one will have an *Acute* accent; as, *Dóminus, Póntifex*.

The rest of the syllables in words of many syllables have Grave accents (though not marked), as *Celebèrrimus*.

1 *Obs.* The Compounds of *Fació* have an *Acute* in the last syllable save one; as, *Benefácius, malefáciis*.

2 *Obs.* The Compounds of *Fis, fit*, have an *Acute* in the last syllable; as, *Calefit, benefít*.

3 *Obs.* Grammarians do often confound a Circumflex with an *Acute*, because it is scarce differenced from it in pronunciation.

*Tonorum regulæ sunt tres.*

1 Monosyllaba dictio, brevis, aut Positione longa, acuitur; ut, *Mél, párs*; at Naturâ longa Circumflectitur; ut, *Spés, flós.*

2 In Dissyllabâ dictione, si prior longa fuerit naturâ, & posterior brevis, prior Circumflectitur; ut, *Lúna, mûsa*; in cæteris verò acuitur; ut, *Bónus, Déus, sólers.*

3 Dictio Polysyllaba, si penultimam longam habet sequente longâ, penultimam acuit; ut, *Libértas*; sequente verò brevi, Circumflectit penultimam; ut, *Amâre, Românus.*

Sin brevem habet penultimam, acuit antepenultimam; ut *Dóminus, Póntifex.*

Cæteræ omnes syllabæ in Polysyllabis gravantur, et si non noventur, ut, *Celebérrimus.*

1 *Obs.* Composita à *Facio*, penultimam aciunt, ut, *Benefácis, malefácis.*

2 *Obs.* Composita à *Fis, fit*, ultimam aciunt, ut, *Calefít, malefít.*

3 *Obs.* Grammatici circumflexum cum acuto sæpe confundunt, quòd ab eo vix prolatione discernitur.

There be five things which alter the Rules of the Accents.

I. *Difference*, for which sake

1 Some words are *Circumflexed* in the last syllable, as the Ablative case of the first Declension *Musâ*, whereby it may differ from the Nominative and Vocative *Musa*. Thus *ergô* for *causâ* differs from *ergô* the Conjunction.

2 Some have an *Acute* accent in the last syllable, as many Adverbs, to difference them from other parts of Speech; viz. *urâ, aliquâ, putâ, ponè, &c.* which in the end of a sentence have an *Acute* accent, but in the beginning or middle thereof a *Grave* accent.

3 Some have an *Acute* in the syllable before the last syllable save one; as, *Déinde, déorsum, quîni-mo, intercâloci, nibilô minus, quâtenus, &c.* when they are not several words; as are *intêrea lóci, nibilo minus, pûbe ténus, &c.*

N B. An Accent is now seldome marked, except for difference sake, for then it is noted not only in the last syllable, but also in the last syllable save one, and in that which is before the last save one; as, *occido, occido.*

II. *Transposition*, or mis-placing words. For when prepositions be set after their cases, they have a *Grave* accent; as, *Transstra pèr & remos. Te penès imperium.*

III. *Attraction*, when the last syllable of the word going before doth draw unto it the 'accent of the Inclivative Conjunction; as, *Luminâque laurûsque Dei.*

But when there is an apparent Composition, the accent is not altered; as, *ûaque, ûndique, hiccine.*

IV. *Concision*, when words are cut off by *Syncope*, or *Apocope*, for then they keep the accent of the whole word; as, *Virgili* for *Virgilii*. *Arpinâs* for *Arpinâtis*. So also *hûc, illûc,* for *hûcce, illûcce;* and the Compounds of *dic, duc, fac;* as, *Benedic, redûc, benefâc.*

V. *Tec*

Quinque sunt quæ Tonorum regulas perturbant, sive Tonus mutant.

I. *Differentia*, cujus causâ

1 Quædam dictiones *Circumflectuntur* in ultima; ut, Ablativus primæ Declinationis *Musâ*, quo differat à Nominativo & Vocativo *Musa*, Sic ergo pro causâ differt ab ergo Conjunctione.

2 Quædam acuuntur, ut Adverbia plurima, nè videantur esse aliæ partes Orationis; viz. *unâ*, *aliquò*, *putâ*, *ponè*, &c. quæ in fine sententiarum acuuntur, in consequentia vero gravantur.

3 Quædam Antepenultimam suspendunt; ut, *Deinde deorsum*, *quinimo*, *interea loci*, *nihilò minus*, *quatenus*, &c. cum non sunt orationes diversæ; ut sunt, *Interea loci*, *nihilò minus*, *pube tennus*, &c.

N.B. Accentus nota nusquam ferè jam apponitur, nisi differentia causâ, tunc enim signatur non tantum in ultima, sed etiam in penultimo, & antepenultimâ; ut, *occido*, *occido*.

II. *Transpositio*, Præpositiones enim postpositæ suis casibus gravantur; ut, *Transstra per* & remos, *Te penès* imperium.

III. *Attractio*, cum scil. ultima syllaba præcedentis dictionis attrahit sibi Accentum Encliticæ Conjunctionis; ut, *Luminâque laurisque Dei*.

1 *Obs.* Ubi vero manifesta est Compositio, non variatur tonus; ut, *itaque*, *indique*, *hæcine*.

IV. *Concisio*, cum dictiones per *Syncopam* aut *Apocopen* castrantur; tunc enim tonum retinent integræ dictionis; ut, *Virgili* pro *Virgilii*, *Aspinâs* pro *Aspinatis*. Sic *huc*, *illuc*, pro *hucce*, *illucce*; & Composita à *Dis*, *duc*, *fac*; ut, *Benedic*, *reduc*, *benefac*.

V. *The idiom*, or the propriety of the language. For Greek words, if they come whole to the Latines, (*i. e.* if they bee expressed with the very same letters) they keep their own accent: as, *Metamórphosis*, *Orthographia*.

But if they become altogether Latine, they keep the Latine accent: as, *Geórgica*, *Philosóphia*, *idólum*.

N. B. If the proper accent of a strange word bee unknown, it will be most safe to pronounce it according to the Latine accent.

2 Those syllables which are common, are pronounced short in Prose, *i. e.* where a mure and a liquid do follow a short vowel, as, *Célebris*, *Cáthedra*: otherwise they are pronounced long, as, *unús*, *illús*, *ubíque*.

3 An Interrogation doth alter the accent: as, *Sic cine aís Pyrménó?*

## Chap. 2.

### Of the Quantity of the First and Middle Syllables.

3 Time or Quantity.

**T**ime, or Quantity, is the measure of pronouncing a Syllable, or the space of tuning a Vowel, whereby we measure how long it is a pronouncing.

According to { *Short*, which hath one time, or which is quickly pronounced: as, *Légerè*, whose time is thus marked ( ^ )  
*Time*, or { *Long*, which hath two times, or which hath the space of two short times, as, *Audíre*, whose long time is thus marked ( - )  
*Quantity*, a {  
*Syllable* is said to be {

According

## V. Idioma, sive linguæ proprietas.

Dictiones enim Græcæ, si integræ ad Latinos veniant, (i.e. si iisdem planè literis proferantur) servant tonum suum: ut, *Metamórphosis, Orthographia*.

Sin prorsus Latinæ sunt, Latinum quoque tonum servant; ut, *Geórgica, Philosophia, idolum*.

N.B. 1 Si ignoretur proprius peregrinæ vocis tonus, tutissimum fuerit juxta Latinum accentum illam enuntiare.

2 Syllabæ communes (si. e. ubi muta cum liquida sequitur vocalem brevem) in prosa oratione corripuntur; ut, *Célebris, Cathedra*; in aliis verò dictionibus producantur; ut, *unius, illius, ubique*.

3 Interrogatio etiam tonum transfert; ut, *Siccine ais Parmenó?*

## Cap. 2.

## De Tempore, sive Quantitate Primarum &amp; Mediarum Syllabarum.

**T**empus, sive Quantitas, est syllabæ pronuntiandæ mensura, sive spatium modulandæ vocalis quo scil. moram ejus in pronuntiando metimur.

3 De Tempore sive Quantitate.

Secundum  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Brevis, quæ unum habet tempus, sive} \\ \text{quæ celeriter pronuntiatur; ut, } \textit{Lēgēre}; \\ \text{cujus tempus breve sic notatur (')} \\ \text{Tempus,} \\ \text{five Quan-} \\ \text{titatem, syl-} \\ \text{laba dicitur} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Longa, quæ duo tempora habet, sive} \\ \text{quæ spatium duarum brevium exigit;} \\ \text{ut, } \textit{Aūdīunt}, \text{ cujus tempus longum sic} \\ \text{notatur (-)} \end{array} \right.$

Secun-

According to the order which they have in words, Syllables are nam'd

First,	} which	first	} place	
Middle		have		middle
Last,		the		last

in a word

Of the first.

The quantity of the first syllables are known eight manner of waies : by

- I. Position.
- II. A vowel before a vowel.
- III. A Diphthong.
- IV. Derivation.
- V. Composition.
- VI. Preposition.
- VII. Rule.
- VIII. Example or Authority.

But the Middle Syllables have besides these a particular way of being known, which you may see IX.

I. According to Position,

1 A Vowel set before two Consonants, or a double consonant in the same word, is long; as, *Vēnus, axis, patrīzō*. But the Compounds of *jugum* make *i* short; as, *Bijugum*.

2 And if a Consonant doth close the foregoing word, and the word following beginneth with a consonant, the vowel foregoing shall be long; as, *Majōr sūm quān cui possit fortuna nocere*.

3 A short vowel in the end of a word, when the word following beginneth with two consonants, sometimes, but seldome is made long; as,

*Occultā spolia, & plures de pace triumphos*.

4 A short vowel before a mute, with a liquid following is common, i.e. long or short; as,

*Et primū volūcri similis, max vera volūcris*,

But a long vowel is not changed; as, *Aratrum, Simulacrum*.

II. A Vowel before another in the same word is short; as, *Dēus, nihil*.

But



Secundùm ordi-  
nem suū quem  
habent in di-  
ctionibus syl-  
labæ dicuntur

<p><i>Prima</i> <i>Media</i> <i>ultima</i></p>	<p>quæ</p>	<p><i>primum</i></p>	<p>locum in dictione quævis occu- pant</p>
		<p><i>medium</i></p>	
		<p><i>ultimū</i></p>	

## I. Positione.

II. Vocali ante vocalem.

III. Diphthongo.

IV. Derivatione.

V. Compositione.

VI. Præpositione.

VII. Regulâ.

VIII. Exemplo, seu Autoritate.

Primarum sylla-  
barum quantitas  
octo modis cog-  
noscuntur, viz.

I  
Primarum.

Mediarum verò peculiaris est cognoscendi modus  
quem videre licet IX.

## I. Iuxta Positionem

1 Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in  
eadem dictione longa est; ut, *Ventus*, *axis*, *patrî-  
zo*: Sed Composita à iugum corripunt; ut, *Býjū-  
gum*.

2 Quod si consonans priorem dictionem claudat,  
sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præ-  
cedens longa erit; ut,

*Majôr sūm quam cui possit fôrtuna nocere.*

3 Vocalis brevis in fine dictionis, sequente à dua-  
bus consonantibus inchoante, interdum, sed rariùs  
producitur; ut,

*Occultâ spolia, & plures de pace triumphos.*

4 Vocalis brevis ante mutam sequente liquida,  
communis redditur; ut,

*Et primò vo'ûcrî similis, mox vera vo'ûcris.*

Longa verò vocalis non mutatur; ut, *Arâtrum*,  
*Simulâcrum*.

II. Vocalis ante alteram in eadem dictione brevis  
est; ut, *Dêus*, *nâbil*.

Sed

But 1 Genitive cases in *i*us, make the last syllable save one common; as, *iunius, illius*. Except that *i* in *alterius* is alwaies short, and in *alius* alwaies long.

2 In the fifth Declension *e* between a double *i* is long; as, *Faciēi*.

3 *Fi* in *Fio* is every where long, but where *e* and *r* follow it both together; as,

*Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.*

4 *O*be hath the first syllable doubtful; *eben* alwaies long.

5 A Vowel before another in Greek words is long; as, *Dicite Pærides*; and in Possessives; as, *Anēa nutrix*.

But the quantity of Greek syllables is better to be found from the Greeks.

6 In forrain words the quantity is doubtful; as, *Michaël, Abraham*.

III. Every Diphthong is long; as, *Aûram, Mûse*. And syllables that are Contracted; as, *Côgo, nîl*.

But *præ* before a vowel is often made short; as, *Ver præit æstatem*; and but seldome long; as, *Domus præit Arion*. *e* in *Maotis* is doubtful.

IV. Derivatives have the same quantity that their Primitives have; as, *âmore* of *âmo*. Yet there be some excepted.

1 Which are derived from them that be short, and are long; *viz.*

<i>Vox, vōcis,</i>	} of	<i>Vōco.</i>	<i>Jūcundus</i>	} of	<i>Jūvo.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis,</i>		<i>Lēgo.</i>	<i>Vōmer</i>		<i>Vōmo.</i>
<i>Rex, rēgis,</i>		<i>Rēgo.</i>	<i>Lāterna</i>		<i>Lāteo.</i>
<i>Sēdes,</i>		<i>Sēdeo.</i>	<i>Tēgula</i>		<i>Tēgo.</i>
<i>Jūnior,</i>		<i>Jūvenis</i>	<i>Mācero</i>		<i>Mācer</i>
<i>Hūmanus,</i>		<i>Hūmo.</i>	<i>Pēnuria</i>		<i>Pēnus.</i>

Sed 1 Genitivi in *ius*, penultimam habent communem; ut, *unius*, *illius*. Licet *i* in *alterius* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2 In quinta declinatione *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *Faciēi*.

3 *Fi* in *Fio* ubique longa est, nisi sequatur *e* & *r* simul; ut,

*Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.*

4 Obe primam syllabam ancipitem habet; *eben* semper longam.

5 Vocalis ante alterum in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit; ut, *Dicite Pierides*; & in Possessivis, ut, *Anēia nutrix*.

Sed Græcarum quantitas à Græcis rectius addiscenda est.

6 In peregrinis quantitas est ambigua; ut, *Michaël*, *Abraham*.

III. Omnis *Diphthongus* longa est; ut, *Aurum*, *Mûsa*. Syllabæ item *Contractæ*; ut, *Cûgo*, *ûil*.

Sed *præ* ante vocalem sæpius corripitur; ut, *Ver præit æstatem*; rarius producitur; ut, *Domino præiret Arion*. *æ* in *Mæotis* est anceps.

IV. *Derivata* eandem cum *Primitivis* quantitatem fortiuntur; ut, *âmore* primâ brevi ab *âmo*. Excipiuntur tamen quædam.

1 *Deducta* à brevibus, quæ producuntur, *vir*.

<i>Vox, vûcis,</i>	}	}	<i>Vûco.</i>	}	}	<i>Jûcundus,</i>	}	<i>Jûvo.</i>
<i>Lex, lêgis,</i>			<i>Lêgo.</i>			<i>Vûmer,</i>		<i>Vûmo.</i>
<i>Rex, rêgis,</i>			<i>Rêgo.</i>			<i>Lâterna,</i>		<i>Lâteo.</i>
<i>Sêdes,</i>			<i>Sêdeo.</i>			<i>Têgula,</i>		<i>Têgo.</i>
<i>Jûnior,</i>			<i>Jûvenis</i>			<i>Macero,</i>		<i>Mâcer.</i>
<i>Hûmanus,</i>			<i>Hûmo</i>			<i>Pênuria,</i>		<i>Pênus.</i>

2 Which are derived of them that are long, and are short, viz.

Dux, dūcis,	} of	Dūco	Frāgor,	} of	Frā-
Dīcar,		Dīco	Frāgilis		go.
Fīdes,		Fīo	Nōto, tas,		Nōtu.
ārena, ārista		āreo	Nāto, tas,		Nātu.
Pōsui,		Pōno	Dīsertus,		Dīsser.
Gēnu,		Gīgno	Sōpor,		Sōpio.

And some others of both sorts.

V. Compound words have the quantity of the Simple; as, Pāteus, impūteus, Sōlor, consōlor.

Except	Innūba,	} of Nūbo	Cognitum,	} of Nōtum
	Pronūba,		Agnitum,	
	Dejēro,	} of Jūvo	Perstūrus,	} of Stātūrus,
	Pejēro,		Restūrus,	

2 Also the Compounds of Dico, that end in dīcus; as, Maledīcus.

3 Ambītus the Noun hath ī short, Ambītus the Participle hath ī long.

4 Idem in the Masculine gender hath ī long, in the Neuter ī short.

5 In words that are Compounded

1 With Verbs, the former part ending in e is short; as, Valēdico.

2 With Participles, bi, tri, tre, du, the same are short; as, Bīceps, trīceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.

3 With Nouns the former part ending in i, y, u, is short; as, Tardīgradus, Polīdorus, cornūpetā.

Except quīvis and some others.

6 These words make long the last syllable of their simples which is common, viz. ubique, ubilibet, ibidem, quandoque, quādcunque, but dō in quā dō quidē is short.

VI. Of the Prepositions,

1 A, de, e, se, prae, and those that end in a, are long, except a vowel follow; as, unda dēbiscens.

2 Pro the Latine syllable is long, except in these words,

2 Deducta à longis, quæ corripuntur, viz.

Dux, dūcis,	Dūco.	Frāgor,	Frā-
Dīcax	Dīco.	Frāgilis,	go.
Fīdes,	Fīo.	Nōto, as	Nōtu
āvena, ārista	āreo.	Nāto, as	Nātu.
Pōsui,	Pōno.	Dīsertus	Dīssero.
Gēnui,	Gīgno.	Sōpor,	Sōpio.

Atque alia nonnulla utriusque generis.

V. *Composita* simplicium quantitatem sequuntur; ut, *Pōtens, impōtens. Sōlor, consōlor.*

1 Exci-	Innūba,	Cognitum,	à Nūtū
piuntur	Pronūba	Agnitum,	à Nūtū
tamen	Dejēro,	Perfisturus	à Stātū-
	Pejēro	Refisturus	rus.

2 Item *Composita* à *Dīco* in *dīcus*; ut, *Maledī-*  
*cus.*

3 *Ambītus* Nomen corripitur, *ambītus* Participium producitur,

4 *Idem* Masculinum producit *i*, Neutrum verò corripit.

5 In *Compositis*.

1 Cum verbis, prior pars vocis in *e* desinens corripitur; ut, *Valēdicō.*

2 Cum particulis, *bi, tri, tre, du*, eadem corripuntur; ut, *Bīceps, trīceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.*

3 Cum Nominibus, prior pars exiens in *i, y, u*, corripitur; ut, *Tardīgradus, Potīdorus, cornūpeta*, excipe *quīvis* & pauca alia.

6 He voces ultimam syllabam simplicium, quæ communis est, producant, viz. *ubique, ubīlet, ibīdem, quandōque, quandōcunque*, sed do in *quandōquidem* corripitur.

VI. Ex *Præpositionibus*.

1 *A, de, è, se, præ*, & quæ in *a* desinunt, ubique producantur, nisi vocali sequente; ut, *unda dēhiscens.*

2 *Pro* Latina longa est, præterquam in istis,  
*Pro-*

words, *Pröcella*, *pröfugus*, *prötervus*, *prönepos*, *prönep-  
tis*, *pröfanus*, *pröfiteor*, *pröfundus*, *pröficiſcor*, *pröfawis*,  
*pröparo*, *pröfugio*, *pröfectö*, *pröpello*, *pröpulſo*. But

1. { *Pröpagö*, *gas*, }  
and  
{ *Pröpagö*, *gänis* } have *Pro* doubtful,

2 *Pro* the Greek ſyllable is ſhort; as, *Pröpheta*,  
*Prölogus*, *Prömetheus*, &c. but in *Propino* it is  
doubtful.

3 *Di* is long, except in *Dörimo*, and *döſertus*.

4 The reſt of the Prepoſitions be ſhort, if poſition  
do not hinder; for *re* in *reſert* it is good, cometh of  
*res*, and is therefore long.

VII. There be { 1 Of Preterperfect tenſes and Su-  
two Rules, { 2 Of Preterperfect tenſes that dou-  
ble the firſt ſyllable.

1 Every Preterperfect tenſe and Supine of two  
ſyllables, hath the firſt ſyllable long; as, *Légi*, *ēmi*, *mö-  
tum*, *lätum*. Except

1 Six Preterperfect tenſes, *Fidi*, *bibi*, *dēdi*, *ſcidi*,  
*tuli*, *ſiēti*.

2 Nine Supines, *Dätum*, *fätum*, *cätum* (of *cico*)  
*ätum*, *lätum*, *quätum*, *ſtatum*, *rätum*, *rätum*.

2 Preterperfect tenſes that double the firſt ſylla-  
ble of their Preſent tenſe, have their firſt ſyllable  
ſhort; as, *Pēpendi*, *mömorödi*, *ſpöſpondi*.

VIII. The quantity of ſuch ſyllables as come not  
under the rules aforegoing is to be known by the  
*Example* and *Authority* of Poëts, and this is the moſt  
certain and moſt general way.

1 Becauſe every rule reſteth upon the Authority  
of the Antients.

2 Becauſe the quantity of many ſyllables is not  
known but by examples.

1 Theſe words have their firſt ſyllable common,  
*viz.*

words, *Præcella, præfugus, prætervus, prænepos, prænep-  
tis, præfanus, præfiteor, præfundus, præfiscor, præfari,  
præpero, præfugio, præfecto, præpello, præpullo. Sed,*

1.  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Propago, gas,} \\ \text{\&} \\ \text{Propago, gnis} \end{array} \right\} \text{Pro habent ancipitem,}$

2. *Pro Græca corripitur; ut, Præpheta, prælogus,  
Præmetheus, &c. Sed in propino anceps est.*

3. *Di producitur, nisi in dīrimo, & disertus.*

4. *Reliquæ Præpositiones, si positio finat, corri-  
piuntur; nam re in refert pro utile est, à nomine rex  
est, ideòque producitur.*

VII. *Regula*  $\left. \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ De Præteritis \& Supinis dissylla-} \\ \text{bis.} \\ 2 \text{ De primam Præteriti geminanti-} \\ \text{bus.} \end{array} \right\}$   
est duplex

1 Omne Præteritum & Supinum dissyllabum prio-  
rem habet longam; ut, *Lēgi, ēmi, mōtum, sātum.*  
Excipiuntur tamen,

1. *Sex Præterita, Fidi, bībi, dēdi, sēdi, tūli,  
fēci.*

2. *Novem supina, dātum, sātum, cūtum (à cico)  
ūtum, lītum, quītum, sītum, rātum, vītum.*

2. *Primam præteriti geminantis, primam itidem  
breve habent; ut, Pēpendi, mōmordi, spōspondi.*

VIII. *Quarum syllabarum quantitas sub prædictas  
rationes non cadit, à Poëtarum usu, Exemplo, atque  
Auctoritate petenda est; atque hæc ratio est omnium  
certissima & generalissima,*

1 *Quia regula omnis auctoritate veterum ni-  
titur.*

2 *Quia multarum syllabarum modulus non nisi  
exemplo cognoscitur.*

1. *Hæc primam syllabam habent communem;*



viz. *Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cossyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, Orion, Pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rudo, Sycheus, Sycanus, &c.*

2 And these their middle; *Batavus, connubium, ficedula, male, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.*

2  
Middle.

IX. Middle syllables are partly known the same way that the first, and partly 1 By the increase of the Genitive case, And 2 the Analogy of the Conjugation.

1 The increase of the Genitive case is, when a Noun hath more syllables in the Genitive case singular, than it had in the Nominative, and according to it, the last syllable save one of Nouns increasing,

1 Sharp, is long.

2 Flat, is short,

2 The Analogy of Conjugation is, when Verbs follow their common Rule of Conjugating, and according to this.

a	{ the character or note of the	First	{ Conjugation is	long.
e		Second		long.
e		Third		short.
i		Fourth		long.

But in *Do* and its Compounds, when they are of this Conjugation, *a* is short; as in *dāmus, circumdāmus, dābis, circumdābis, dāre, circumdāre.*

The syllables *rimus* and *ritis* in the Preterperfect tense of the Subjunctive mood are short; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*; but long in the Future tense; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis.*

Latine Adjectives in *inus* make (*i*) long; as, *claudius, mediastinus.* Except these following, *Diutinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, serotinus, Oleaginus, faginus, cedrinus, carbasinus,* and others that signify matter, or that come of the names of metals, and end in *inus*; as, *Chrysalinus, myrrhinus, &c.* which are derived of Greek Nouns.



viz. Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, orion, pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rudo, Sycaus, Sycanius, cum quibusdam aliis.

2 Hæc verò mediam; Batavus, connubium, Ficodula, melea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.

IX. Mediæ syllabæ partim eadem ratione quâ primæ, partim etiam; 1 Ex incrementis Genitivi, atque, 2 Conjugationis Analogiâ cognosci possunt. 2 Mediarum,

1 Incrementum Genitivi est quando Nomen plures habet syllabas in Genitivo singulari, quàm in Nominativo; juxta hoc, penultima Nominum crescentium.

1 Acutè, longa est.

2 Graviter brevis est.

2 Analogia Conjugationis est, quando Verba sequuntur communem regulam conjugandi; & juxta hanc.

ā	index	Primæ	Conjugationis	longa	est.
ē		Secundæ		longa	
ē		Tertiæ		brevis	
ī		Quartæ		longa	

Sed in *Do* & ejus Compositis, quando primæ sunt Conjugationis, a brevis est; ut, *Dāmus*, *circumdāmus*, *dābis*, *circumdābis*, *dāre* *circumdāre*.

Syllabæ *rimus* & *ritis* in Præterito modi Subjunctivi sivi sunt breves; ut, *Amaverim*, *amaveritis*; in Futuro verò longæ; ut, *Amaverimus*, *amaveritis*.

Adjectiva in *inus* Latina penultimam producant; ut, *Clandestinus*, *mediastinus*, &c. Præter hæc sequentia, *diutinus*, *crastinus*, *pristin*, *perendinus*, *hormotinus*, *serotinus*, *oleaginus*, *faginus*, *cedrinus*, *carbassinus*, & reliqua materialia, sive à metallorum nominibus formata in *inus*; ut, *Chrysellinus*, *myrrhinus*, &c. à Græcis deducta.

## Chap. 3.

## Of the Quantity of the last syllables.

3  
And last  
Syllables.

**T**He last syllables are reckoned according to the order of the letters with which words do end; thus,

- Words that end in
- A** are long; as, *Amā, contrā, ergā.*  
 Except  
 1 *Putā, itā, quā, ejā.*  
 2 Likewise all cases in *a*, besides Vocatives in *a*, of Greek Nouns in *as*; as, *ō A-ueā*, and the Ablative case of the first Declension; as, *Musā.*  
 3 Numerals in *ginta*, which have *a* common; as, *Triginta, quadraginta.*
- B** are short; as, *ab.*  
 Except  
 1 Hebrew words; as, *facōb.*
- C** are long; as, *ac, sic*, and *hic* the Adverb.  
 Except  
 1 *Lāc, nēc, donēc*, which are short.  
 2 *Fat*, and the Pronoun *hic* are common, as, also its Neuter Gender *hoc*, so that it be not of the Ablative case.
- D** are short; as, *ad.*  
 1 Except Hebrew words; as, *Davīd.*
- E** are short; as, *Marē, pēnē, legē, scribē.*  
 Except  
 1 Nouns of the Fifth Declension in *e*; as, *Fidē, diē, rē*, with the Adverbs that come of them; as, *Hodiē, quāē.*  
 2 *Fame*, now of the Third Declension short, was heretofore of the Fifth long.

## Cap. 3.

## De Ultimarum Syllabarum Quantitate.

**U**ltimæ syllabæ numerantur juxta ordinem litterarum finalium; sic,

3  
Et ultimæ  
sunt syllabæ  
barum.

**A** producuntur; ut, *amā, contrā, cigā.*

Excipe

1 *Putā, uā, quā, eā.*

2 Item omnes casus in *a*, præter Vocativos in *a*, à Græcis in *as*; ut, *ō Anā,* & Ablativum primæ declinationis; ut, *Masā.*

3 Numeralia in *ginta*, quæ *a* habent communem; ut, *Triginta, quadraginta.*

**B** brevia sunt; ut *ab.*

Excipe

1 Hebræa; ut, *īacob.*

**C** producuntur; ut, *ac, sic, & hic* Adverbia.

Excipe

1 *Lac, nec, donec*, quæ contrahuntur.

2 *Fac*, & pronomen *hic* sunt communia, item & ejus Neuterum *hoc*, modò non sit Ablativi casus.

**D** brevia sunt; ut, *ad.*

1 Excipe Hebræa; ut, *David.*

**E** brevia sunt; ut, *Marē, penē, legē, scribē.*

Excipe

1 Voces Quintæ Inflectionis in *e*; ut, *Fide, diē, rē*, cum Adverbis inde enatis; ut, *Hic, quā.*

2 *Famē*, quæ nunc Tertriæ Inflectionis brevis, olim quintæ longa fuit.

3 The second person singular of the Imperative mood, of the Active voice, of the second Conjugation; as, *Docē, morē, manē*.

But *e* in *Cave, vide, salve*, and *vale* is sometimes short.

4 Monosyllables in *e*; as, *Mē, tē, cē*, except, *quē, nē, vē*, the Inclipative Conjunctions.

5 Adverbs in *e* derived of Adjectives; as, *Doctē, valdē, and fermē, feryē* : yet *benē* and *maē* are short.

6 Words that in Greek are writ with an *Eta*, or *e* long; as, *Auchisē, celē, tempē*, are long; as, *Dominī, amarī*.

Words that end in

Except

1 *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* for *ut*, and *cui* a word of two syllables, which are common.

2 *Nisī* and *quasī* which are short, as are also the Vocative cases of Greek Nouns, whose Genitive singular endeth in *os*; as, *Paḷlīdī, Daphnī*.

L are short; as, *Animāl, mēl*.

Except

1 *Sāl*, and *Sōl*.

2 Hebrew words which are writ in Greek with a long vowel; as, *Michaēl*.

N are long; as, *Peān, Hymēn, nōn*.

Except

1 *Forsān, forsitān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, veruntamēn*.

2 Words cut off by Apocope; as, *Mēn', vidēn'*.

3 *In* with its Compounds; as, *Exān, subīn, &c.*

4 Nouns ending in *en*, whose genitive case singular hath *is* short; as, *Carmēn, peccēn, tibiēn*.

5 Greek

3 Secundæ personæ singulares imperativo-  
rum Activorum secundæ Conjugationis; ut,  
*Docē, movē, manē.*

Sed e in *Cave, vide, salve, & vale* quando-  
que etiam corripitur.

4 Monosyllaba in e; ut, *mē, rē, cē*, præter  
*quē, vē*, Encliticas Conjunctiones.

5 Adverbia in e, ab Adjectivis deducta;  
ut, *doctē, valdē*, item *fermē, & ferē*. *Benēta-*  
*ment & malē* corripuntur.

6 Quæ à Græcis per η scribuntur; ut, *An-*  
*chisē, cetē, tempē.*

longa sunt; ut, *Dominī, amarī.*

Excipe

1 *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* pro ut, & cui  
disyllabum, quæ sunt communia.

2 *Nisī & quasī* quæ corripuntur, ut & Da-  
tivi & vocativi Græcorum, quorum Geniti-  
vus in os breve exit; ut, *Pallidī, Dapnī*

corripuntur; ut, *Animāl, mēl.*

Excipe

1 *Sāl & sōl.*

2 Hebræa, quæ Græcè scribuntur per voca-  
lem longam; ut, *Michaēl*

producuntur; ut, *Peān, hymēn, nōn.*

Excipe

1 *For sān, for sītān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, ve-*  
*runtamēn.*

2 Voces per Apocopen castratas; ut, *Mēn',*  
*vidēn'.*

3 In cum Compositis; ut, *Exān, subīn, &c.*

Nomina in en, quorum Genitivum in is  
correptum habet; ut, *Carmēn, pectēn, tibicēn.*

3 The second person singular of the Imperative mood, of the Active voice, of the second Conjugation; as, *Docē, movē, manē*.

But *e* in *Cave, vide, salve*, and *vale* is sometimes short.

4 Monosyllables in *e*; as, *Mē, tē, cē*, except, *quē, nē, vē*, the Inclipative Conjunctions.

5 Adverbs in *e* derived of Adjectives; as, *Docē, valdē, and fermē, seyē* : yet *benē* and *malē* are short.

6 Words that in Greek are writ with an *Eta*, or *e* long; as, *Auchisē, celē, tempē*, are long; as, *Dominī, amarī*.

Words that end in

I

Except

1 *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* for *ut*, and *cui* a word of two syllables, which are common.

2 *Nisī* and *quasī* which are short, as are also the Vocative cases of Greek Nouns, whose Genitive singular endeth in *os*; as, *Paḷidī, Daphnī*.

L

are short; as, *Animā, mēl*.

Except

1 *Sāl*, and *Sōl*.

2 Hebrew words which are writ in Greek with a long vowel; as, *Michaēl*.

N

are long; as, *Peān, Hymēn, nōn*.

Except

1 *Forsān, forsitan, ān, tamēn, atamēn, veruntamēn*.

2 Words cut off by Apocope; as, *Mēn, vidēn*.

3 *In* with its Compound; as, *Exīn, subīn, &c*.

4 Nouns ending in *en*, whose genitive case singular hath *is* short; as, *Carmēn, petīēn, tibiēn*.

5 Greek

3 Secundæ personæ singulares imperativorum Activorum secundæ Conjugationis; ut, *Dorè, movè, manè.*

Sed e in *Cave, vide, salve, & vale* quandoque etiam corripitur.

4 Monosyllaba in e; ut, *mè, rē, cē*, præter *quē, uē, vē*, Encliticas Conjunctiones.

5 Adverbia in e, ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *doctè, valdè*, item *fermè, & ferè*. *Benè* tamē & *malè* corripuntur.

6 Quæ à Græcis per η scribuntur; ut, *Archisē, cetē, tempē.*

longa sunt; ut, *Dominī, amarī.*

Excipe

1 *Mihī, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* pro *ut*, & *cui* dissyllabum, quæ sunt communia.

2 *Nisī & quasī* quæ corripuntur, ut & Dativi & vocativi Græcorum, quorum Genitivus in *os* breve exit; ut, *Pallidī, Daphnī*

corripuntur; ut, *Animāl, mēl.*

Excipe

1 *Sāl & sōl.*

2 Hebræa, quæ Græcè scribuntur per vocalem longam; ut, *Michaēl*

producuntur; ut, *Peān, hymēn, nōn.*

Excipe

1 *For sān, for sītān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, vēruntamēn.*

2 Voces per Apocopen castratas; ut, *Mēn', vidēn'.*

3 In cum Compositis; ut, *Exān, subīn, &c.*

Nomina in *en*, quorum Genitivum *inis* correptum habet; ut, *Carmēn, pessēn, tibicēn.*

V 4

5 Græca

5. Greek Nouns in *on* by little *o*; as, *Ilion*, *Pellion*, *Caveasion*.

6 Greek Nouns in *in*, *yn*, and *an*, whose Nominative case is short; as, *Alexin*, *Ityn*, *Maiān*.

*O* are common; as, *Amo*, *virgo*, *porro*, *docendo*,  
Except

1 Oblique cases in *o* which are alwaies made long; as, *Dominō servō*.

2 Adverbs derived of Adjectives; as, *Tantō*, *falsō*, &c. But *sedulō*, *crebrō*, and *mutuō* are common, rather to be made long.

3 Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *dō*, *stō*, and *ergō* for *causā*.

4 *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *ciō*, *modō*, with its compounds, are seldome read long.

5 Greek words in *o* are long; as, *Sappho*, unless they come of Nominative cases in *on* from which (*n*) is taken away; as *Leo*, *Plato*, which for the most part are short.

*R* are short; as, *Cesar*, *torcular*, *pēr*, *diciēr*,  
Except,

1 *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, and *pār*, with its compounds. *Cor* is once read long in Ovid.

*Molle meum levibus cōr est violabile telis*.

2 Greek words that end in *er* with *e* long; as, *Aēr*, *cratēr*, except *patēr*, *matēr*.

*S* have terminations answerable to the number of vowels.

*as* are long; as, *Amās*, *Musās*.

Except.

1 Greek nouns, whose Genitive case singular endeth in *as*; as, *Arcās*, *Pallās*.

2 The Accusatives plural of Nouns increas- ing; as, *Heidas*, *Phillidas*.

*es* are long; as *Anchisēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*.

Except

Words that end in



5 Græca in *on* per *o* parvum; ut, *Ilīōn*, *Peliōn*, *Caucasōn*.

6 Græca in *in*, *yn*, & *an*, quorum Nominativus est brevis; ut, *Alexin*, *Ityn*, *Maiān*.

**O** Communia sunt; ut, *Amo*, *virgo*, *porro*, *docendo*,  
Excipe.

1 Obliquos in *o*, qui semper producuntur; ut, *Dominō*, *servō*.

2 Adverbia ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *Tantō*, *falsō*, &c. Sed *sedulō*, *crebrō*, *mutuō*, sunt communia tutius producenda.

3 Monosyllaba in *o* producuntur; ut, *dō*, *stō*, item ergo pro *causā*.

4 *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *citō*, *modō*, cum compositis vix leguntur producta.

5 Græca per *o* producuntur; ut, *Sapphō*, nisi descendant, à Nominativis in *ay* quibus *y* adimitur; ut, *Leo*, *Plato*, quæ plerunque corripuntur.

**R** Corripuntur; ut, *Cæsār*, *torculār*, *pēr*, *diciēr*,  
Excipe.

1 *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, & *pār*, cum compositis, Cor semel apud Ovidium producitur.

*Molle meum levibus cor est violabile telis.*

2 Græca in *np* er, ut, *Aēr*, *Cratēr*, excipe *patēr* & *matēr*.

**S** pares cum numero vocalium terminationes habent.

as producuntur; ut, *amās*, *musās*,

Excipe

1 Græca, quorum Genitivus singularis in *dos* exit; ut, *Artās* *Pallās*.

2 Accusativos plurales nominum crescentium; ut, *Herōās* *Phillidās*.

es longa sunt; ut, *Anchisēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*.

Excipe

Except

1 Nouns in *es* of the Third Declension that increase short; as, *Milēs, divēr*. But of these, *Cerēs, abicēs, arīēs, panīēs* and *pēs*, with its Compounds, are long.

2 *Es* of *sum*, with its Compounds, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*, and *penēs* the Preposition, are short.

Neuters singular, and Nominatives plural of Greek Nouns that end in *es* not *eas*; as, *Cacoethēs, Cyclopēs*, are short; as, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs*.

Except

1 Oblique cases plural in *is*; as, *Musīs, dominīs*, and *quēis* for *quibus*.

2 Words that make long the last syllable save one of the Genitive case increasing; as, *Samnīs, nitīs*.

3 Which are made in *is* of the Diphthong *ei*; as, *Omnīs, Simōis*.

4 All Monosyllables; as, *Vīs, līs*, besides *īs, bīs*, and *quīs*.

5 *Vellīs* with its Compounds, *malīs, nolīs*, and *ausīs, faxīs*.

6 The second persons singular of the Indicative mood present tense of the fourth Conjugation; as, *Audīs, dormīs*.

7 The second persons of the Future tense of the Subjunctive mood, which are common; as, *dederīs, amaverīs*,

are long; as, *Herōs, bonōs, dominōs*.

Except

1 *Compōs, impōs*, and *ūs, ossis*.

2 Greek Nouns with little *o*; as, *Deūs, Palladōs*,

are short; as, *Famulōs, tempōs*.

Except

Words that end in

*is*

*os*

*us*

## Excipe

1 Nomina in *es* tertie Declinationis gravior crescentia; ut, *miles*, *divēs*. Sed ex his, *Cerēs*, *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, & *pēs* cum Compositis longa sunt.

2 *Es* quoque à *sum* unà cum Compositis; *potēs*, *adēs*, *provēs*, *obēs*, & *penēs* Præpositio corripuntur.

3 Item Neutra singularia: & Nominativi plurales Græcorum in *es* breve non *eis* desinentia; ut, *Cacoethēs*, *Cyclopēs*.  
is brevia sunt; ut, *Parīs*, *panīs*, *tristīs*.

## Excipe

1 Obliquos plurales in *is*; ut, *Amisīs*, *dominīs*, & *quīs* pro *quibus*.

2 Producentia penultimam Genitivi crescentis; ut, *Samnīs*, *niīs*.

3 Quæ sunt in *is* ab *eis* Diphthongo; ut, *Omīs*, *Simīs*.

4 Monosyllaba omnia; ut, *Vīs*, *līs*, præter *īs*, *bīs*, & *quīs*.

5 *Velīs*, cum Compositis, *malīs*, *noīs*, item *avis*, *faxīs*.

6 Secundas personas singulares Indicativi præsentis quartæ Conjugationis; ut, *Audīs*, *dormīs*.

7 Secundas personas Futuri Subjunctivi, quæ sunt communes; ut, *dederis*, *amaveris*.

os producuntur; ut, *Herōs*, *bonōs*, *dominōs*.

## Excipe

1 *Compōs*, *impōs*, & *ōs*, *offis*.

2 Græca per *o* parvum; ut, *Delōs*, *Palladōs*.

us corripuntur; ut, *famulūs*, *tempūs*.

Excipe

Except

1 The Nominative cases of Nouns that increase long; as, *Virtūs, salūs.*

2 The Genitive cases singular, the Nominatives, the Vocatives and Accusatives plural of the fourth Declension; as, *hujus manūs, hæ manūs, hæ manūs, 6 manūs.*

3 Monosyllables in *us*; as, *pūs, crūs.*

4 Words which are writ in Greek with *us*; as, *Panthūs, Cliūs.*

And the name *Jesūs* to be revered of all good men.

u are long; as, *manū, genū.*

y and ys are short; as, *Moly, Tiphy's,*

The last syllable in every verse is common; i.e. it may be either long or short.

---

Appendix

---

## Excipe

1 Nominativos acutè crescentium; ut, *Vir-*  
*tūs, salūs.*

2 Genitivos singulares, Nominativos, Vo-  
cativos, & Accusativos plurales Quartæ De-  
clinationis; ut, *hujus manūs, hæ manūs, has*  
*manūs, ô manūs.*

3 Monosyllaba in *us*; ut, *pūs, crūs.*

4 Quæ à Græcis scribuntur per *us*; ut,  
*Panthūs, Clyūs.*

*Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iesus.*

*u* producuntur; ut, *Manū, genū.*

*y s* & *ys* corripuntur; ut, *Moly\*, Tiphy\*s.*

Ultima cujusque versūs syllaba habetur  
communis.

Finita in

---

Appendix

---

## Appendix Grammaticæ.

Appendix  
Grammaticæ.

2011

De Ordine.

**H**æc genus de vocum Elementis, Accidentibus, Constructione & Pronunciatione, quæ quidam quatuor, quas jam diximus, Partes Grammaticæ tanquam propria & partialia singularum subjecta, constituant, & ipsam orationem juxta Regulas Grammaticæ componendâ (tanquam subjectum hujus Artis, ut Logici dicunt, adequatâ, totale & principale) conspiciunt.

Nunc verò de Ordine vocû pauca subjiciemus. Nam & hoc etiam ad finem Grammatici aliquo modo conducit, ut quo ordine voces sint collocandæ, ad orationem melius eloquendam, aut scribendam intelligat.

28 MR 59

## Cap. I.

## De Ordine vocum Grammatico.

Dictionum  
sive vocum

**O**rdo Dictionum est earundem inter se collocatio, ita ut alia necessario præcedat, alia sequatur.

Eit autem Ordo triplex.	1 Grammaticus.	} quem observant	Grammatici	} in Oratione componendâ
	2 Oratorius.		Oratores	
	3 Poëticus.		Poëte	

1 Grammatico.

1 Ordo Grammaticus sive naturalis est, quando voces in oratione juxta naturam suam collocantur, nullo observato sonorum numero.

Atque hic ordo è sermone vernaculo præcipuè cognoscitur.

Secundum hunc ordinem composita oratio Translatio dicitur.

In Translatione verò sic collocentur voces.

1 Vocativus, vocandi particulæ, & quæ ab illis pendunt.

2 Nominativus, & quæ ab eo pendunt.

3 Verbum

- 1 Verbum principale, & quæ ab eo pendent, viz.  
 2 Infinitum, 2 Casus Verbi, & quæ ab illis pendent.

Hic tamen observandum.

- 1 Adverbium Verbo subjungitur.

- 2 Subjunctivum & Adjectivum conjungi debent.

Item Præpositio & sunt casus.

- 3 Interrogativa, Relativa, Indefinita, & Partitiva,

Adverbia quædam & Conjunctiones præcedunt alias voces.

- 4 Impersonale quandoque incipit orationem.

5 Accusativus ante verbum Impersonale exponi debet per *quod* vel *ut*.

- 6 Si quid defuerit suppleri debet.

*Exemplum Ordinis Grammatici.*

Scipio & Læli, artes exercitationesque virtutum sunt omnino arma aptissima senectutis; quæ culturæ afferunt fructus mirificos in ætate omni, cum vixeris multum diuque, non solum quia deserunt nunquam, nè quidem in tempore extremo ætatis, quanquam id est maximum; verum etiam quia conscientia vitæ actæ bene, recordatisque benefactorum multorum est jucundissima.

## Cap. 2. De Ordine vocum Oratorio.

**O**rdo Oratorius est quando voces in oratione juxta Artem Oratoriam collocantur, observatis quidæ certis, sed omnino dissimilibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem compositæ voces *Prosa* five solutam Orationem (quam & κατ' ἐξελω Oratio-  
nem dicimus) constituunt.

In oratione componendâ,

- 1 Obliquus in principio, Nominativus in medio, & Verbum in fine collocetur.

- 2 Adjectivum præcedere, Substantivum verò sequi debet.

- 3 Inter

3. Inter Adjectivum & Substantivum aliæ voces interseruntur.
4. Adverbia Præpositionesque cum sua casu venustius ante Verbum vel Participium suum collocantur.
5. In prosâ versum fugito : citare tamen potes.
6. Principium vel exitum carminis, nec principium nec exitum prope facito.
7. Principii cura sit major, medii penè nulla, clausulæ verò maxima.
8. In fine & principio periodi commendantur dictiones polysyllabæ, sed clausula varianda est maximè.
9. Artificium numeri nunquam longius senis à fine syllabis observetur.
10. Ex longis omnibus clausula rarior est, rarissima ex omnibus brevibus, at ex temperatione longarum & brevium frequentior.
11. Vocalium in diversis vocibus concursus sit quàm rarissimus.
12. In sublimi stylo adhibendæ sunt longæ syllabæ; in humilli verò breves.

*Exemplum Ordinis Oratorii.*

Optissima omnino sunt Scipio & Læli, arma senectutis artes exercitationesque virtutum; quæ in omni ætate cultæ, cum multum disque vixeris, mirificos afferunt fructus; non solum quia nunquam deserunt, nè in extremo quidem tempore ætatis, quanquam id maximum est; verum etiam quia conscientia beneactæ vitæ, multorumque bene factorum recordatio, jucundissima est.

N. B. Neque tamen hæc præcepta sunt ita mordicus tenendâ, quin ut puer ex doctissimorum observatione potiora iis apprehendat, & in componenda oratione proprias aures & pulmones consulat.

Itaque



Itaque sex septemve periodos à se compositas semel Inque iterum reciter; sic enim experietur orationem suam numerosam esse, vel hiantem & asperam deprehendat.

## Cap. 3.

## De Ordine vocum Poëtico.

**O**rdō Poëticus est quando voces in oratione juxta Artem Poëticam collocantur, observatis quidem & certis & similibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem constricta Oratio *Carmen* sive Poëma dicitur.

3 Poëtico

Juxta quem  
*Carmen*  
constituitur.

- |   |                        |  |
|---|------------------------|--|
| 1 Versus<br>(qui Græcis <i>Colon</i><br>sive membrum dicitur) | } usitate dividitur in | 1 <i>Monocolon</i> , quod constat unius generis metro.     |
|   |                        | 2 <i>Dicolon</i> , ubi duo sunt genera versuum.            |
|   |                        | 3 <i>Tricolon</i> , ubi triplex est metrum.                |
|   |                        | 4 <i>Polycolon</i> , in quo plura metri genera concurrunt. |

Carmen

1 Pro Diverficate

2 *Strophæ*, sive redimitionis ad idem versuum gen.

usitate dividitur in

- |                |            |          |  |
|----------------|------------|----------|--|
| 1 Distrophon,  | } eum post | secundum | } versum ad primum generis versum redimus. |
| 2 Tristrophon, |            | tertium  |  |
| 3 Tetra-       |            | quartum  |  |
| strophon,      |            | quintum  |  |

X

2 Pro

2 Pro Ratione	Numeri Versuum,	usitate dicitur	Hemistichon, Distichon,	quod continet	dimidium versus. duos ver- sus.
			Tetra- stichon, Hexa- stichon,		quatuor versus. sex ver- sus.
			Eteostichon, Hemaro- stichon,		annorum numerus dierum numerus
			Acrostichis,		cujus initiales, finales; aut mediae literae, collectae certum sensum praebent.
					Comcedia, Tragcedia, Bu- colica, Elegia, Ode, Hy- mnus, Georgica, Satira, Epigramma, Epitaphium, Epithalamium, Genethli- acum, &c.

In quo dig-  
noscendi  
sunt.

In *Carmine* verò ritè constituendo summa cura ad-  
hibenda est ad dignoscendos pedes, & diversa versu-  
um genera. Ex pedibus enim conjunctis sunt Versus,  
& ex Versibus Carmen.

#### Cap. 4.

#### De Pedè, & ejus generibus.

¶ *Pes*.

**P**ES est duarum syllabarum pluriùve constitu-  
tio, ex certâ temporum sive quantitarum obser-  
vatione.

*Pes*

**Pes** est { **1 Simplex**, **1 Dissyllabus**, qui constat ex **2 simplicibus**  
 { **arque is** { duabus syllabis.  
 { **2** **Trißyllabus**, qui constat ex  
 { **aut** { tribus syllabis.  
 { **2 Compositus**, qui constat ex simplicibus  
 { **pedibus conjunctis**

**Dissyllabi** { **Spondæus**, { **qui constat ex** { **duabus longis.** **a**  
 { **Pyrrhychius** { duabus brevibus. **b**  
 { **Trochæus**, { priore longâ, & po- **c**  
 { **Iambus**, { steriore brevi. **d**  
 { **pedes** { priore brevi, & po-  
 { **sunt** { steriore longâ.  
 { **quatuor** {

ut, **a** *Virtūs*, **b** *Dēūs*, **c** *annūs*, **d** *āmāns*.

**Trißyllabi** sunt octo { **qui constat ex** { **tribus longis.** **e**  
 { **Molossus**, { tribus brevibus. **f**  
 { **Tribrachus**, { primâ longâ, reliquis **g**  
 { **Dactylus**, { duabus brevibus. **h**  
 { **Anapæstus**, { primis duabus brevibus, **i**  
 { **Bacchius**, { postremâ longâ. **k**  
 { **Antibacchius**, { primâ brevi, reliquis **l**  
 { **Amphimacer**, { duabus longis. **m**  
 { **Amphibrachus**, { primis duabus longis, **n**  
 { **postremâ brevi.** **o**  
 { **primâ longâ, mediâ bre-** **p**  
 { **vi, ultimâ longâ.** **q**  
 { **primâ brevi, mediâ lon-** **r**  
 { **gâ, ultimâ brevi.** **s**

ut, **e** *Māgnatēs*. **f** *Dōmīnūs*. **g** *Scribēre*. **h** *Piētās*.  
**i** *Hōnētās*. **k** *Aūdīre*. **l** *Chāritās*. **m** *Vēnīre*.

**Pedes compositi**, porius pedum conjunctiones; quam **2 Compositi**  
 Pedes à quibusdam vocantur, atque ab aliis omittun-  
 tur tanquam non multum ad institutum Grammatici  
 pertineant. Hos tamen tetrasyllabas nihilominus ad-  
 jecimus, propter aliquem eorum usum in Carminibus  
 illis quæ ab his notien acceperunt, viz Choriambicum  
 Ionicum, &c.

*Pedes igitur compositi precipui sunt 18.*

Proceleusmaticus  
 Dispondeus  
 Choriambus  
 Antispastus  
 Diambus  
 Dichoræus  
 Ionicus à majore  
 Ionicus à minore  
 Epitritus primus  
 Epitritus secundus  
 Epitritus tertius  
 Epitritus quartus  
 Paon primus  
 Paon secundus  
 Paon tertius  
 Paon quartus

qui constat ex

duobus Pyrrichijs. a  
 duobus Spondeis. b  
 Trochæo & Iambo. c  
 Iambo & Trochæo. d  
 duobus Iambis. e  
 duobus Trochæis. f  
 Spondeo & Pyrrichio. g  
 Pyrrichio & Spondeo. h  
 Iambo & Spondeo. i  
 Trochæo & Spondeo. k  
 Spondeo & Iambo. l  
 Spondeo & Trochæo. m  
 Trochæo & Pyrrichio. n  
 Iambo & Pyrrichio. o  
 Pyrrichio & Trochæo. p  
 Pyrrichio & Iambo. q

Ut, a Hōmīnībūs. b Cōcludētiēs. c Hīstōria.  
 d Alexāder. e Sēvēritās. f Cōmprōbārē. g Cāntab-  
 mūs. h Vēdērantēs. i Sālūtātiēs. k Cōcūtiātī. l Cōm-  
 mūncānt. m Incāntārē. n Cōfūctiē. o Rēfōlverē.  
 p Sōciārē. q Scleritās.

Ex pedibus autem, Iambus & Trochæus, Spondeus  
 & Dactylus, Anapæstus & Tribrachus, usitatissimi sunt.

## Cap. 5.

### De Versuum variis generibus.

2 Versus,

**V**ersus est oratio iusto atque legitimo pedum  
 numero constricta.

& eorundem  
 1 Scansio.

Versum composituro discendum est, pedibus ipsius  
 ritè metiri (sive in suos pedes distinguere) quam Scan-  
 sionem sive Dimensionem vocant; ut,

Pārvē nēc || invādē || ō sinē || mē /z bēy || z bās in ū-  
 Hēi mēbz || quōd dōmz || nō || nōn /z gēy || trē tū || ō.

Scansio

*Scansioni accidunt hæc Figure; viz.*

Cutaccidunt,  
I Cæsura.

I Cæsura quum ita secatur vox ut posterior ejus pars initium sit pedis sequentis; ut,

*Sic cān|būs cāt|lōs sēm|lēs sēt|matrīb|ūs|bādōs.*

Species ejus sunt quatuor,

- |                   |      |          |                |            |               |           |             |
|-------------------|------|----------|----------------|------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 Triemimeris,    | } et | } primum | } pedem relin- |            |               |           |             |
| 2 Penthemimeris,  |      |          |                | } secundum | } quitur syl- |           |             |
| 3 Hephthemimeris, |      |          |                |            |               | } tertium | } laba; ut, |
| 4 Encemimeris,    |      |          |                |            |               |           |             |

*Ille|lātūs nīvē|lūm mōllī|fūl|tūs hyā|cīnībō.*

Ob Cæsuram, syllaba brevis in fine dictionis aliquando extenditur.

*Pectōrē|būs inhī|lāns spī|rāntiā|cōnsūlit|ēxiā;  
Omniā|vīncit|ā|mōr, et|nōs cē|dām|ūs|ā|mōrē.  
Osten|t|ans|artē|m|pārē|tēr|ā|cūm|quē|d|vāntē  
Ille|lātūs|nīvē|lūm mōllī|fūl|tūs hyā|cīnībō.*

N. B. Invenustus est versus qui Cæsura caret; ut,

*Aurēā|carmēnā|lūlī|scrībīs|maximē|vātūm.*

*Urbem|fortem|nūper|cēpit|fortior|hostis.*

2 Synalepha.

2 Synalepha est elisio quædam vocalis ante alteram in diversis dictionibus; ut,

*Serā nī|mīs vī|t est|crāstinā|vīv' bōdī|ē.*

At *heu*, *o*, & *io* nunquam intercipiuntur; ut,

*At hīs|ī|ō' Arē|thūsā, ī|ō Arē|thūsā vō|cāvī.*

Interdum etiam Synalepha negligitur; ut,

*Et sūc|eūs pēcō|rē et|l'ac sūb|dū|vīv' l'agnīs.*

*Ter sūnt cōnā|rē im|pōnērē|Feliō|Ossām.*

Aliquando fit in fine versūs; seu, potius in principio sequentis; ut,

*Omniā|Mercūrē|ō simī|līs vō|cēm|quē cō|lōrēm|quē*

3 Ethlipsis.

*Et crīnēs flāvōs.*

3 Ethlipsis est quoties *m* cum suā vocali perimitur, proximā dictione à vocali exorsā; ut,

*Mōnstr' hōr|rēnd', īn|fōrm' īn|gēns cūī|lūmēn ā|dēmp't est.*

Olim elidebatur *s*, ut,

*Arbōrē|būs vērē|rēs dē|cīdērē|fālci'būs|rāmōs.*

X 3

4 Syna-

5 Synæresis.

4 Synæresis est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio; ut,

Sæu len||rō fū||rīnt \* a||varzā||vīmne||textā.

\* pro alvearia.

Fit autem frequentius in his dictionibus, *Dii, diis, iidem, iisdem, deinde, deinceps, semianimis, semihomo, seminatus, deest, deero, deerit, anteambulo, anteit, cui, & Genitivus nominum in eius; ut, ulisseus, ulissei, cum multis aliis.*

5 Diæresis.

5 Diæresis est ubi ex unâ syllaba dissectâ fiunt duæ; ut,

Debuerant fîsôs evolvîsse sôs. pro evoluisse.

6 Systole.

6 Systole est quæ longam syllabam corripit; ut, Matrî longâ dîcām tûlērunt fastîdiâ mēses.

7 Diastole.

7 Diastole est quæ brevem syllabam producit; ut, In quēm rē dîmûs quîcquîd mōrtalē crēamur.

Atque hæc si reperitur in ultima dictionis syllabâ *Cæsura* frequentius dicitur; ut,

Omniâ||vincit a||môr, et||uôs cē||damûs a||môrî.

Versuum genera 1 Depositionis.

sunt varia pro &amp; ratione 2 Metri.

1 Depositio.

1 Depositio est terminatio scansionis, ex quâ versûs abundantiam, plenitudinem, aut defectum cognoscimus.

Secundùm hanc versus dicitur,

Secundùm  
quam dici-  
tur,

1 Acatalecticis, sive perfectis, cui nihil aut superest aut deest; ut,

Mîse || fôvîs || sînt fî||læ.

1 Acatale-  
cticus.

2 Catalecticis, sive semimutulis, cui in fine deest syllaba; ut,

Mîse || fôvîm || cānēbant. —

2 Catalecti-  
cus.

3 Brachycatalecticis, sive mutilis, cui in fine pes deest; ut,

Mîse || fôvîs || gnate. —

3 Brachyca-  
talecticus.

4 Hyper-

4 *Hypercatalecticus*, sive *exuberans*, in quo una, aut duæ syllabæ superfunt; ut,

*Muse* || *soror* || *res sunt* *Mænæ* ( *ve*,

*Muse* || *soror* || *res* *Palladis* ( *lugens*.

2 *Metrum* est legitimus pedum numerus, qui mensuratur.

Quoad *Metrum* versus dicitur,

1 *Dimeter*,

duobus, estque

1 *Adonius*, sive *Adonicus* qui constat

ex dactylo & spondæo; ut,

*Gaudia* || *pallæ*.

*Pellè* || *morem*.

2 *Archilochius dactyliticus*, qui constat

ex duobus dactylis, & syllabâ; ut,

*Discite* || *iustitiam*.

3 *Alcmanius*, qui constat ex tribus

dactylis & syllabâ; ut,

*Discite* || *iustitiam* *moniti*.

4 *Glyconicus*, qui constat è spondæo,

& duobus dactylis; ut;

*Tandem* || *regem* || *nobilis*.

5 *Pherecratius*, qui constat è spon-

dæo, dactylo & spondæo; ut,

*Nigris* || *equorâ* || *ventis*.

Hic versus aliquando pro priori

spondæo habet trochæum; ut,

*Potest* || *as novâ* || *nupta*.

Aliquando Anapæstum; ut,

*Similis* || *surgit* || *ab ortu*,

6 *Asclepiadeus*, qui constat ex

spondæo, dactylo, & syllabâ lon-

ga, & duobus deinde dactylis;

ut,

*Mate* || *nas arâ* || *vires* || *edire* || *regibus*

7 *Sapphicus*, qui constat ex trochæo

spondæo, et duobus demum trochæis;

ut,

*Jam* || *satis* || *terris* || *nivis* || *atque* || *dire*

4 *Hypercatalecticus*.

2 *Metrum*.

Secundum quod est, 1 *Adonicus*,

2 *Archilochius dactyliticus*.

3 *Alcmanius*.

4 *Glyconicus*.

5 *Pherecratius*.

6 *Asclepiadeus*.

7 *Sapphicus*.



Phalæcius.

4 Pentameter,

Elegiacus.

10 Heroicus.

5 Hexameter,

XX Iambicus.

quinque, estque

qui constat pedibus

Sex, estque

Post tres versus Sapphicos, Adonicus addi solet.

8 Phalæcius, qui constat ex spondæo, dactylo, & tribus tandem trochæis, ut,

Quoquō||diffūgē||ās pā||vēns Mā||bīlī  
Nostmum || non potē||ris la||tere||nasum.

9 Elegiacus, qui constat dactylo vel spondæo, cum syllabâ longâ; & duobus tandem omnino dactylis, cum syllabâ item longâ; ut,

Rēs ēst || sūlīcē || tē || ptenā tē||mōrīs  
(āmōr.

Hēi mīhē || quā dōmī||nō|| nōn lēcēt  
(tē || tūō.

10 Heroicus, qui constat quatuor primis locis è spondæo vel dactylo, quinto dactylo, & sexto spondæo; ut,  
Tyrīē||rūpā||ū||lērēcū||hans sūb tēg.  
(mīnē fāgī.

Sylvē||strēm tēnā || i Mū||sām mēdī-  
(tārīs ā||vēnā.

Reperitur etiam spondæus aliquando in quinto loco; ut,

Chārā Dē||ūm sūbō||lēs māgnī fōvīs|  
(tēcē|mēnūm.

Est & Heroicus Tetrameter qui constat ex quatuor postremis Hexametri pedibus; ut,

Aūt Ephē||ūm bīmārīs vē Cōrīn||thī.

11 Iambicus, qui constat è pedibus iambicis; ut,

Sūīs lēt ip||ā Rō||mā vī||rībūs ||rūū



1 *Purus*, five *Legitimus*, qui constat  
è solis Iambis; ut,

*Phāsēllus il||lē, quēm || vīdē||ēz hō||pē-*  
(tēs

2 *Impurus*, qui aliquot in locis re-  
cipit pedem diversum Iambo; ut,

*Jūs ēst || In ar||mis, op||prēmūt || tēgēs*  
(tīmōr

3 *Scaron*, five *Choliambus*, i. e. clau-  
dicans Iambus, qui in sexto loco  
Spondæum, & in quinto Iambum re-  
tinet; ut,

*Nēc fōn||tē tā||brā prō||lūī || Cābā||ī-*  
(nō.

Est autem hic versus

N. B. Recipit Iambicus interdum (ob ma-  
jorem gravitatem exprimendam) in lo-  
cis imparibus (i. e. primo, tertio, &  
quinto) pro Iambo tribrachum, spon-  
dæum, dactylum, anapæstum; atque in  
locis paribus (i. e. secundo & quarto)  
quandoque tribrachum, spondæum rari-  
us, ultimum verò locum ratio mutat; &  
saltem binos pedes Iambos perpetuò sibi  
servat.

Hic versus etiam dicitur  
in duo genera usitata

1 *Dimetrum*, five *tetrametrum*, qui  
constat ex quatuor pedibus quém-  
que metimur

Per dipodiam; i. e. geminum  
pedem more Græco; ut,

*O cārmīnūm || dū||cēs || nōtē.*

Per monopodiam, i. e. sin-  
gulos pedes more Latino;  
ut,

*O cārmīnūm || dū||cēs || nōtē.*

6 Hepta-

Vel

donicus  
ondæo,  
trochæ-

Mā||bī||  
||nasum.  
tylo vel  
& du-  
lis, cum

||mōr||z  
(āmōr.  
ōn lē cēt  
ē || tāō.  
uor pri-  
actylo,  
dæo; ut,  
||fūb tēg||  
ē fagi-  
n mēdi-  
ā||vērā.  
quando

fōvīs||  
tēmūm.  
ter qui  
is Hex-

riatbī.  
pedibus

is ||rūū

Est

Archilochius Heptameter,

6 Heptameter,

qui constat pedibus

septē, & itque

2 Trimeterum sive senarium, qui senis constat pedibus, quemque merimur,

Per dipodiam; ut,

Qui nōs || damnant || sūnt  
hī str̄ ō || nēs m̄x̄ m̄,

Per monopodiam; ut,

Qui nōs || damnant || sūnt  
hī || str̄ ō || nēs m̄x̄ m̄,

12 Archilochius Heptameter, qui constat quatuor primis pedibus Heroicis & tribus tandem trochæis; ut,

Sōlv̄t̄r̄ || ac̄r̄s h̄y || ēms gra || t̄ā v̄c̄c̄  
(vēr̄s || ēt Fāvōnī.

Plura qui quærit, Autores qui de Arte Poëtica suis scripserunt, otiosior consulat.

28 MK 59

Et discas oportet, & quod didicisti agendo confirmes.  
Sen. Epist.

Dottissimorum enim virorum usus pluris faciendus,  
quàm omnes omnium Grammaticorum Canones.  
Daneſius.

Artifices, solus, qui facit; usus erit. Ovid.

# A Synopsis or short view of the Latine Grammar.

*The Latine Grammar* teacheth the Art or Skill to write or speak Latine aright:  
It is divided into four parts.

I. *Orthographie*, which teacheth how to spell words, *Lib. 1.*

II. *Etymologie*, which treateth of the *Eight parts of Speech*, and their Accidents, *Lib. II.*

I. In General, C. 1.

2 Of Letters, C. 1.

2 Of Syllables, C. 2.

3 Of Right Utterance, C. 3.

4 Of points in Sentences, C. 4.

1 In particular,

1 Of a Noun and

1 Its proper Accidents C. 2. which are

1 Case, C. 3.

1 General,

1 Of Proper, C. 5.

Sub-

Stan-

tives } 2 Common, C. 6.

2 Of Adjectives, C. 10.

2 Special,

Of Nouns } not increasing, C. 7.

increasing } Long, C. 8.

Short, C. 9.

2 Gender, C. 4. the Rules to know which are

Declension

the first, C. 11.

the second, C. 12.

the third, C. 13.

the fourth, C. 14.

the fifth, C. 15.

To which belong the manner of declining Adjectives, C. 16.

4 Comparison, C. 17.

To these variant, C. 18.

belong the Rules of

Hetero-

clits,

which are

Deficient in

Case, C. 19.

Number, C. 20.

Redundant, C. 21.

2 Its kinds, C. 22.

2 Of a Pronoun, C. 23.

3 Of

The Latine Grammar teacheth the Art or Skill to write or speak Latine aright:  
It is divided into four parts.

II. Etymologie, which treateth of the Eight parts of speech, and their Accidents, *Lib. II.*

2 In particular,

1 Of a Noun and

1 Its proper Accidents C. 2. which are

2 Gender, C. 4. the Rules to know which are

Declension

the first, C. 11.  
the second, C. 12.  
the third, C. 13.  
the fourth, C. 14.  
the fifth, C. 15.

To which belong the manner of declining Adjectives, C. 16.

4 Comparison, C. 17.

To these variant, C. 18.

belong the Rules of  
Hetero-

Defici-  
ent in

Case, C. 19.  
Number, C. 20.  
Redundant, C. 21.

2 Its kinds, C. 22.

2 Of a Pronoun, C. 23.

3 Of

# A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

III. *Syntaxis* which reacheth the due joyning words together, *Lib. III. by way of*

		Accidents, <i>cha. 24</i>				
3	Of a Verb and its	Form of the Conjugation	first <i>cha. 25</i>			
			second, <i>cha. 26</i>			
			third, <i>cha. 27</i>			
			fourth, <i>cha. 28</i>			
1	Hither-to be-long	1 The Preter-perfect Tenses	Of Verbs in O	1 Regular	Simple <i>cha. 29</i>	
					Compound <i>c. 30</i>	
1	The Rules to know	2 The Supines	Of Verbs in O	1 Regular	Simple <i>cha. 31</i>	
					Compound, and the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in <i>or, cha. 32.</i>	
				2	Irregular, <i>cha. 33</i>	
					3 Defective, <i>cha. 34</i>	
2 The forming of				Irregular Verbs, <i>cha. 35</i>		
				the Verb <i>Sum, cha. 36.</i>		
3 Impersonals and Derivatives,				<i>cha. 37.</i>		
4	Of a Participle, <i>cha. 38.</i>					
5	Of an Adverb, <i>cha. 39.</i>					
6	Of a Conjunction, <i>cha. 40.</i>					
7	Of a Preposition, <i>cha. 41.</i>					
8	Of an Interjection, <i>cha. 42.</i>					
1	Concordance, <i>c. 1.</i> containing the Rule	Of the	first	second	Concord	Sect. 1
				Case of the Relative.	Sect. 3	Sect. 4
				Sect. 5		
1	Of Nouns	1 Substantives,	<i>c. 2. Sect. 6</i>	Ge.	Da.	Sect. 7
				Ab.	Sect. 9	Sect. 10
				Sect. 11		
2	Of Pronouns, <i>cha. 4.</i>					
3	Of Verbs,	1 Nom.	2 Gen.	3 Dar.	Case,	Sect. 12
				Abl.	Sect. 14	Sect. 15
* Passives, Sect. 17.						

# A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

To	Verbs having divers Constructions.	
which		Sect. 18
also	The Infinitive Mood.	Sect. 19
be-	The Gerunds, Sect. 20	Di, Sect. 21
long	Supines. Sect. 24	Do, Sect. 22
the	Time. Sect. 26	Dum, Sect. 23
Rules	Space.	Sect. 27
of	Place.	Sect. 28
	Impersonals.	Sect. 29
4	Of Participles, C. 6. Sect. 30.	
5	Of Adverbs, { Cases. } Sect. 31.	
	C. 7. with { Moods. }	
6	Of Conjunctions, C. 8. which { Couple Words } Sect. 32.	
		{ Govern Moods }
7	Of Prepositions, C. 9. Sect. 33	
8	Of Interjections, C. 10. Sect. 34	
To	{ Etymologie } belong Figures { Of a Word, C. 11. Sect. 35	
	{ Syntaxis }	Sect. 36
IV. Prosodie, which	Spirits and Tones, C. 1.	
teacheth the right		
Pronunciation of		
Words, Lib. IV.	Quantity of { First and Middle, C. 2.	
by observing their	Syllables { Last, C. 3.	

To Grammar (after a manner) pertaineth that which is said concerning the Order of Words, which is	1 Grammatical, C. 1.	
	2 Rhetorical, C. 2.	
	3 Poetical, C. 3. touching which we consider the sorts of	Feet, C. 4 C. 5 Verses,



## A TABLE of the Heads of the Latine Grammar.

Chap.	Page	Chap.	Page
<b>O</b> F Grammar, and its Parts	16	<b>O</b> f the Declining of Adjec- tives	64
<b>Lib. I</b> Of Orthographic	2	<b>O</b> f Comparison	68
1 Of Letters	4	<b>O</b> f varying Heteroclites	74
2 Of Syllables	8	<b>O</b> f Heteroc. that want case	78
3 Of Right utterance	12	<b>O</b> f Heteroclites that want Number	80
4 Of Points and Sentences	14	<b>O</b> f Redundant Heteroclites	86
<b>Lib. II.</b> Of Etymologic	16	<b>O</b> f the Kindes of Nouns	90
1 Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents	16	<b>O</b> f a Pronoun.	94
2 Of a Noun, and its proper Ac- cidents	20	<b>O</b> f a Verb, and its Accidents	106
3 Of Case }	22	<b>O</b> f the form of the first Con- jugation	112
4 Of Gender }	26	<b>O</b> f the form of the second Con- jugation	116
5 Of the general Rules of Pro- per Names	26	<b>O</b> f the form of the third Con- jugation.	120
6 Of the general Rules of Com- mon Names	28	<b>O</b> f the form of the fourth Con- jugation	124
7 Of the first special Rule	30	<b>O</b> f the Preterperfect tense of Verbs Simple	128
8 Of the second special Rule	34	<b>O</b> f the Preterperfect tense of Compound Verbs	136
9 Of the third special Rule	38	<b>O</b> f the Supines of Simple Verbs	142
10 Of the Genders of Adjectives	42	<b>O</b> f the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect tense	
11 Of the first Declension	44		
12 Of the second Declension	50		
13 Of the third Declension	52		
14 Of the fourth Declension	60		
15 Of the fifth Declension	62		

# A Table of the Heads, &c.

Chap.	Pag.	Chap.	Pag.
<i>tense of Verbs in or</i>	146	II Of the Figures of a Word	274
33 Of certain Verbs Irregular	148	12 Of the Figure of Constructi-	276
34 Of Verbs that want certain	154	on	
Moods and Tenses	154	Lib. IV. Of Prosodie	282
35 Of forming Verbs Irregular	160		
36 Of forming the Verb Sum	170	1 Of Spirits, Tones, or Accents	ib.
37 Of Verbs Impersonals and	172	2 Of the quantity of the first and	288
Derivatives	176	middle Syllables	
38 Of a Participle	182	3 Of the quantity of the last syl-	301
39 Of an Adverb	188	lables.	
40 Of a Conjunction	192	Appendix Grammatices	310
41 Of a Preposition	196		
42 Of an Interjection	198	1 { De ordine } Grammatico	310
Lib. III. Of Syntax	198	2 { Vocum } Oratorio	311
1 Of Concordance	214	3 { Poëtico } Poëtico	313
2, 3 { Of the Government of	224		
4 { Nouns	226	4 De Pedes, & ejus generibus	314
5 { Pronouns	258	5 De Versuum variis generibus	
6 { Verbs	260		
7 { Participles	264		
8 { Adverbs	268		
9 { Conjunctions	272		
10 { Prepositions			
11 { Interjections			



APRAYER to be used every day,  
for Childrens good proceeding at their  
BOOKS.

**O** Almighty Lord and merciful Father,  
maker of Heaven and Earth, which of  
thy free liberality givest wisdom abund-  
antly to all that with faith and full assu-  
rance ask it of thee. Beautifie by the light  
of thy heavenly grace the towardness of our  
wits, the which with all powers of nature  
thou hast poured into us; that we may not  
only understand those things which may  
effectually bring us to the knowledge of  
thee and the Lord Jesus our Saviour, but  
also with our whole heart and will con-  
stantly follow the same, and receive daily  
increase through thy bountiful goodness  
towards us, as well in good life as learning;  
so that thou which workest all things in all  
creatures, maist make thy gracious bene-  
fits shine in us, to the endless glory and  
honour of thine immortal Majesty. Amen.

Pro Puerorum in Studiis  
pio progressu, Precatio  
quotidiana.

**D**omine Pater, Caeli ac Terre  
effector; qui liberaliter tribuis  
sapientiam omnibus tam à te cum  
fiducia petentibus; Exorna (qua-  
sumus) ingenia nostrorum bo-  
nitatem, quam cum ceteris natu-  
ra viribus nobis infudisti, lumine  
divina gratia tua; ut non modo  
qua ad cognoscendum te & Sal-  
vatorem nostrum Dominum le-  
sum valeant, intelligamus; sed  
etiam tota mente, & voluntate  
persequamur, & indes benigni-  
tate tua, tum doctrinâ, tum pietate  
proficiamus; ut qui effici omnia  
in omnibus, in nobis resplendescere  
dona tua facias, ad gloriam sem-  
piternam Majestati tua. Amen.

28 MR 39

**O**ur Father which art in heaven, Hallow-  
ed be thy Name, Thy Kingdome come,  
Thy will be done in Earth as it in Heaven.  
Give us this day our daily bread. And for-  
give us our trespasses, as we forgive them  
that trespass against us. And lead us not  
into temptation. But deliver us from evil,  
For thine is the Kingdome, the Power, and  
the Glory, for ever and ever, Amen.

**P**ater noster, qui es in cælis, san-  
ctificetur Nomen tuum. Adve-  
niat regnum tuum. Fiat Voluntas  
tua, sicut in cælo, sic & in terra.  
Panem nostrum quotidianum da  
nobis hodie. Et dimitte nobis debi-  
ta nostra, sicut & nos dimittimus  
debitoribus nostris: Et ne nos in-  
ducas in tentationem, sed libera  
nos à malo. Quia tuum est Reg-  
num, Potentia, & gloria in seculu-  
la seculorum. Amen.

42

FINIS.



udiis  
atio

c Terra  
tribuis  
te cum  
a (qua-  
rum bo-  
is natu-  
lumina  
in modo  
Sal-  
um le-  
us; sed  
luntate  
enigni-  
a piete-  
omnia  
descere  
in sem-  
imen.

li, San-  
Adve-  
oluntas  
terra.  
um da  
is debi-  
ttimus  
os in-  
libera  
Reg-  
secus